

EL-MOASSER
GUIDE

New Hello!

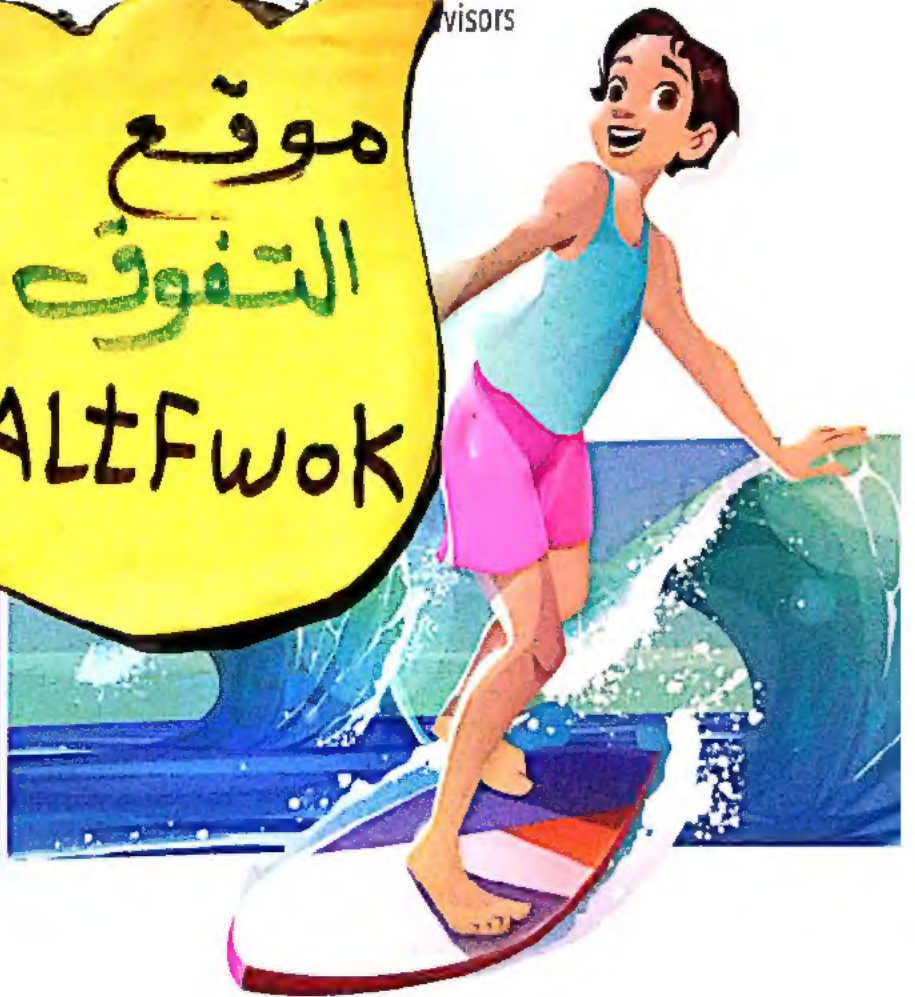
ENGLISH

visors



SECOND TERM

1st
Prep.
2023



تطبيق
التعلم التفاعلي

معك
Ma3ak App

الصف الأول الإعدادي
الفصل الدراسي الثاني

UNIT 7

How was your weekend?

SB pages 2-11 WB pages 70-76

Objectives

• Reading :

A diary entry, Robinson Crusoe



• Speaking :

Talking about your weekend; discussing types of music

• Language :

Past simple time expressions; questions review; responding to past events with although or because

• Life Skills :

Making decisions

• العلامة ALTF : تسيق أسبوك كتاب التفوق
• العلامة ALTF : تسيق أسبوك كتاب التفوق

• تدريبات لطلاب الأهرام الشريف : هي شهادة كل وحدة وفهم
• تدريبات لطلاب الأهرام الشريف : هي شهادة كل وحدة وفهم
• جزء من العلامة البصرية وإشغال الذاكرة (التفوق) (التفوق)

الأسبوك

الأسبوك

الأسبوك

الأسبوك

LESSONS

1 & 2

SB pages 2-5 WB pages 70 & 71

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

aquarium (n)	متحف الأحياء المائية / حوض أسماك	whale (n)	حوت
sports centre (n)	مركز رياضي	statue (n)	تمثال
funfair (n)	مدينة الترفيه	weekend (n)	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
planetarium (n)	القبة السماوية	area (n)	منطقة / مساحة
football stadium (n)	ستاد كرة القدم	exhibition (n)	معرض - عرض
bowling alley (n)	صالة البولينج	diary (n)	مفكرة / يوميات
museum (n)	متحف	school uniform (n)	أثري المدرسة
big wheel (n)	العجلة الدوارة (في مدينة الملاهي)	school canteen (n)	مطعم المدرسة (كافتيريا)
nervous (adj)	متوتر / عصبى		

• **Key Vocabulary** هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطلاب إتقانها



Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي بهدف إتقان المفردات اللغوية

Step 1 Read key Vocabulary

الخطوة الأولى : اقرأ المفردات اللغوية المحددة

Step 2 Practise your Vocabulary

الخطوة الثانية : تدرب على المفردات اللغوية

• يقوم الطلاب بإكمال تدريب تلقائي على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها

• Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

diary - funfair - planetarium - aquarium - stadium

1. I watched the final match between Egypt and Tunisia at the
2. You can see beautiful planets in Helwan
3. Children like to ride on the big wheel at the
4. I saw some colourful fish in the

Lesson 1

SE pages 2 & 3 WB page 71

closed (adj)	مغلق	arrive (d) (v)	يصل
football match (n)	مباراة كرة قدم	bowling (n)	البولينج (اللعبة الكرة - المشقة)
dolphin (n)	دولفين	shark (n)	سمكة القرش

Lesson 2

WB pages 4 & 5 WB page 71

move (d) (v)	ينقل - ينقل	decision (n)	قرار
hope (d) (v)	يأمل - يطمح	exciting (adj)	مثير
swimming pool (n)	حمام سباحة	dark (adj) . (n)	مظلم / الظلام
friendly (adj)	ودود	challenge (d) (v) . (n)	يتحدى / تحدي
fantastic (adj)	رائع	solution (n)	حل
quite (adv)	إلى حد ما - تمامًا	history (n)	تاريخ

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present الحاضر	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
feel يشعر	felt	felt
sit يجلس	sat	sat
know يعرف	knew	known
mean يعني / يقصد	meant	meant
learn يتعلم	learned / learnt	learned / learnt
leave يترك / يرحل	left	left
teach يعلم / يدرس	taught	taught

Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite العكس
correct صحيح	incorrect غير صحيح
regular منتظم	irregular غير منتظم
nervous متوتر / عصبى	quiet / relaxed هادئ / مسترخ
heavy ثقيل	light خفيف
effective فعال / مؤثر	ineffective غير فعال / غير مؤثر
delicious لذيذ	terrible سيء / قبيح

للملاحظة هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

aquarium	an indoor centre where you can look at sea animals and fish living in water
----------	---

bowling alley	a place where you can go bowling	دكة بولينج
canteen	a dining room in an office, building or school	مطبخ / (المطعم / المدرسة)
funfair	a park with fun rides and games	مدينة ملاهي
museum	a building to keep and display important things from the past	متحف
planetarium	an indoor centre where you can learn about stars and planets	مركز فلكي / قبة سماوية
sports centre	a place where you can do sports indoors	مركز رياضي
stadium	a place where you can play or watch sports matches	ستاد رياضي
nervous	worried or frightened about something	متوتر / عصبى

Collocations

مقارنات لفظية

have a maths lesson	لديه حصّة رياضيات	meet my best friend	أقابل صديقي المفضل
have a haircut	يحلل على قصة شعر	watch a football match	يشاهد مباراة كرة قدم
have a fantastic weekend	بضعة ايام رائعة	do different things	يقوم بأشياء مختلفة
go swimming	يذهب للسباحة	do the same things	يقوم بعمل نفس الأشياء
go on the big wheel	يركب العجلة الدوارة	do homework	يقوم بإداء الواجب المنزلي
go to bed early	يذهب للفرش مبكراً	do a sport	يلعب رياضة
go shopping	يتسوق	make a decision	يأخذ قرار
listen to music	يسمع للموسيقى	make things	يصنع أشياء

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 frightened of (inf. + ing) / noun

خائف من

ex.: - He is frightened of the dark.
- She is frightened of crossing the road.

2

نقطة أن جميع أسماء الرياضات لا تأخذ (a, an, the)

ex.: - I played tennis.
- Do you like football?

أما إذا استخدمت تلك الألفاظ الرياضية كصفات (لإيصال اسم) تستخدم (a, an, the) قبلها:

ex.: - I watched a football match yesterday.
- The tennis match I played yesterday was exciting.

2 نقطة

3 sport - sports

• sport (n)

ex: - My favourite sport is football.

• sports (adj)

ex: - Ali is at the sports centre.

4 exhibition - exhibit

• exhibition (n)

ex: - I saw an exhibition of old statues.

• exhibit (n)

ex: - I saw a lot of exhibits in the Egyptian Museum such as coins and statues.

5 go + (activity + ing)

لاحظ غالبًا ما يأتي هذا الفعل مع الأنشطة والرياضات التي تنتهي بـ (ing)

ex: - I went bowling.

- She goes shopping every Friday.

Important expressions & prepositions

talk about	يتحدث عن	in order to + inf. ...	لكي ...
ride on the big wheel	يركب على العجلة الدوارة في مدينة الملاهي	quite nervous	متوتر إلى حد ما
look at the stars	ينظر إلى النجوم	at the end of ...	في نهاية ...
learn a lot about	يتعلم الكثير عن	It was a lot of fun!	كان ممتعًا جدًا!
move to a new house	ينتقل إلى منزل جديد	work with	يعمل / يتعامل مع
It took 3 hours to ...	استغرق ثلاث ساعات لـ ...	decide to ...	يقرر أن ...
drive from ... to ...	يقود من ... إلى ...	on the other side of the town	على الجانب الآخر من المدينة
the best solution for	أفضل حل لـ	eat out	يتناول الطعام بالخارج (في مطعم)
take the bus to the city	يستقل الباص إلى المدينة	like being outside	حُب أن يكون بالخارج
aged five	بائع من العمر خمس سنوات	come home	يعود إلى المنزل

Skills

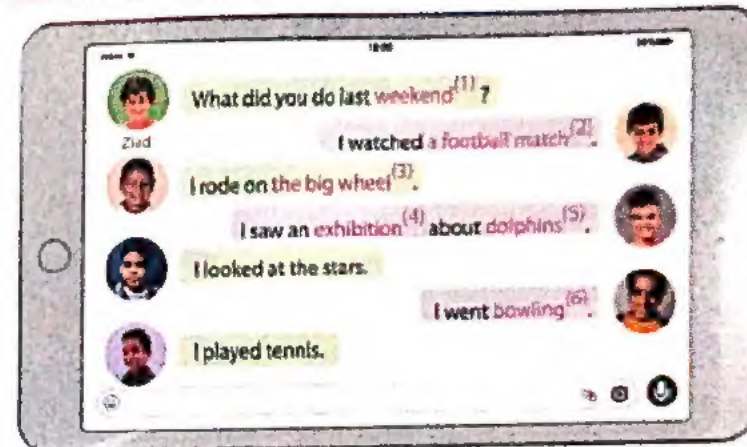
1. Reading and Listening

تدرب على 18 من قطاع المفردات ونصوص الاستماع

Pop Quiz

Reading

• on Lesson 1 SB page 2



Check Vocabulary

• لعبة البيونج (1) | العجلة الدوارة (في مدينة الملاهي) (2) | مباراة كرة قدم (3) | عطلة نهاية الأسبوع (4) | عيشة البيونج (5) | العيشة الدوارة (في مدينة الملاهي) (6) | عيشة البيونج (7) | عيشة البيونج (8) | عيشة البيونج (9) | عيشة البيونج (10)

• on Lesson 2 SB page 4

1 Read Adam's diary⁽¹⁾. What do you think the word nervous⁽²⁾ means and why does Adam feel this?

Sunday 8th May

Yesterday our family moved to⁽³⁾ our new house in Alexandria. It took⁽⁴⁾ three hours to drive from our old house in Cairo.



Check Vocabulary

استغرق (1) | انتقل إلى (2) | متوتر / عصبى (3) | ساعة / يوميات (4)

Monday 9th May

This morning, Mum and I went shopping⁽¹⁾ to buy a new school uniform⁽²⁾ for me. I hope students are friendly⁽³⁾ in my new school!

Tuesday 10th May

Today I went to my new school. I was quite nervous, but I sat next to a boy called Sami and he was friendly. We had lunch together in the school canteen⁽⁴⁾.



Check Vocabulary

المسحوق (1) الذهاب للتسوق (2) الذهاب للمدرسة (3) الذهاب للمدرسة (4) الذهاب للمدرسة

on Lesson 2 SB page 4

2 Read another page from Adam's diary. What is great?

Monday 16th May

What a fantastic⁽¹⁾ weekend! I went to Sami's house on Saturday and we played football in the park. I don't usually like football, but all his brothers wanted to play. It was a lot of fun! On Sunday, Mum helped me with my homework. Then Dad and I went to the sports centre⁽²⁾. It is great, there is a really big swimming pool⁽³⁾.



Check Vocabulary

رائع (1) مركز رياضي (2) مركز رياضي (3) مركز رياضي

on Lesson 2 WB page 71

I had a fantastic weekend! It was my friend Dalia's birthday⁽¹⁾ and her family took us to some exciting⁽²⁾ places. In the morning, we went to the funfair⁽³⁾. I didn't go on the big wheel but I enjoyed my time there.



Check Vocabulary

عيد ميلاد (1) مثير (2) مثير (3) مثير

In the afternoon, we visited a museum⁽¹⁾. We saw some very old statues⁽²⁾. I remembered all the things that our teacher taught us in history⁽³⁾. In the evening, I ate at Dalia's house and I came home very late⁽⁴⁾.

متاحف (1)
تماثيل قديمة جداً (2)
تاريخ (3)
متأخر جداً (4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Extracting information

استخراج المعلومات

- Learn 1. Dalia's family took her to the ... in the morning.
a. aquarium b. stadium c. museum d. funfair
Practice 2. In the afternoon, they visited a ...
a. museum b. stadium c. house d. flat

on Lesson 2 WB page 71

Dad likes sports. He is very good at swimming. Mum loves cooking⁽¹⁾. Her salads are delicious⁽²⁾. Ismail likes being outside⁽³⁾ and he doesn't like the city. Ismail's sister is five. She likes making things⁽⁴⁾.

Check Vocabulary

الطبخ (1) لذيذ (2) بالخارج (3) صنع الأشياء (4)

Listening

on Lesson 1 SB page 3

Dina: It was my birthday last Saturday so I went to the museum with my mum and sister, and we saw some old statues. We learned a lot. In the evening, I wanted to go to the funfair but my brother wanted to go to his favourite restaurant⁽¹⁾. I love my brother so we went to the restaurant. We went there four months ago for his birthday too!



Check Vocabulary

(1) pizza

And two days ago, on Sunday we went to the planetarium² but it was closed³. So we took a bus to the aquanum⁴ on the other side of⁵ town. It was fantastic, I saw a shark⁶!



Check Vocabulary

١. سمكت لورث ٢. الجانب الآخر من ٣. مغلق ٤. متحف الأحياء المائية ٥. على بعد ٦. سمكة القرش

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

- I saw a / an of Islamic monuments in the Islamic Museum in Cairo.
a. exhibition b. decision c. suggestion d. bowling
- Salma is going to the She loves riding on the big wheel.
a. funfair b. planetarium c. sports centre d. aquarium
- You can see many ancient statues from the past in the Egyptian
a. Hospital b. Centre c. Museum d. School
- When you are worried or frightened of something, you are
a. happy b. nervous c. pleased d. content

SB, WB & Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

- SB I had a / an two weeks ago. My hair was so long.
a. statue b. suggestion c. haircut d. activity
- SB On Sunday, we went to the planetarium, but it was
(Sheikh Zayed - Giza 2022)
a. closed b. opened c. moved d. arrived
- We learnt a lot about the Earth and the moon at the
(El Bolyana - Sohag 2022)
a. stadium b. aquarium c. planetarium d. funfair
- I write what happens to me every day in a
(Dokki - Giza 2022)
a. photo b. diary c. dairy d. search
- I'm trying to find a / an to this problem.
(Abdeen - Cairo 2022)
a. alley b. exhibit c. solution d. fair

El-Moassor Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

- At break, we have lunch together in the school
a. laboratory b. music room c. library d. canteen
- All pupils wear a blue with black shoes.
a. form b. farm c. frame d. uniform

Definitions تعريفات

- A/An is an indoor centre where you look at fish living in water.
a. planetarium b. aquarium c. stadium d. funfair
- A/An is a place where you can play or watch sports matches.
a. aquarium b. museum c. planetarium d. stadium

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

- Samar, thirteen, is in prep one this year.
a. age b. aging c. aged d. ages
- I shopping yesterday morning. I bought a lot of groceries بقناة
a. had b. took c. went d. gave

2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

Talking about your weekend

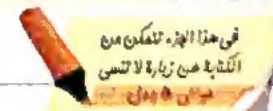
الحديث عن عطلة نهاية الأسبوع الخاصة بك

Stimulus ؟	Response ✓
• When did you go to the funfair ? - متى ذهبت إلى مدينة الملاهي ؟	• I went to the funfair last Saturday at 8 o'clock. ذهبت إلى مدينة الملاهي السبت الماضي في تمام الساعة الثامنة.
• Where did you go last Sunday morning ? - أين ذهبت صباح يوم الأحد الماضي ؟	• I went to the planetarium. ذهبت إلى مبنى القبة السماوية.
• Where did you have your dinner last Monday ? - أين تناولت العشاء يوم الاثنين الماضي ؟	• I had my dinner at a restaurant last Monday. تناولت العشاء يوم الاثنين الماضي في مطعم.

3. Writing

مهارة الكتابة

A visit you never forget



- Last weekend, I went bowling.
- لعبت لعبة البولينج في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع الماضي.
- I rode on the big wheel.
- ركبت لعبة عجلة الملاهي الدوارة.

3. I saw an exhibition about dolphins.
4. I had dinner in a restaurant.
5. I went shopping to buy a new school uniform.

٣. رأيت عرض عن الدلافين.
٤. تناولت العشاء في مطعم.
٥. ذهبت للتسوق لشراء زي مدرسي جديد.

III Language



Review on the Past Simple Tense

Formation التكوين

Affirmative Statements

الجملة الخبرية
المثبتة

(a) Regular verbs :

(أ) الأفعال المنتظمة :

Subject + التصريف الثاني للفعل

e (بعض الأفعال)	+ d	invite → invited
y (حرف ساكن)	+ ied	carry → carried
y (حرف متحرك)	+ ed	stay → stayed
(حرف ساكن بـ s يسهل حرف متحرك)	ed +	stop → stopped
بعض الأفعال لا يضاف الحرف الأخير بها	+ ed	visit → visited

(b) Irregular verbs :

(ب) الأفعال غير المنتظمة :

هناك أفعال غير منتظمة لا تتبع هذه القاعدة (تحفظ) كما هي مثل :

الفعل	الماضي	الفعل	الماضي
cut	cut	put	put
eat	ate	drink	drank
swim	swam	go	went
sleep	slept	ride	rode

How was your weekend ?

١ في حالة اللفي نستخدم الصيغة الآتية :

Subject + didn't + Inf. المصدر

2 Negative Statements

الجملة الخبرية
المنفية

- ex. - He didn't study his lessons yesterday.
- I didn't send an email to my friend last week.
- She didn't go to the beach last summer.

(a) Yes/No question : (أ) السؤال بـ "هل" :

١ في حالة السؤال باستخدام «هل» :

Did + subject + Inf. ?
الفاعل المصدر

ex. - Did you clean the car ?

- Yes, I did. - No, I didn't.

3 Interrogative

صيغة
الاستفهام

(b) Wh-question : (ب) السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام :

١ في حالة السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام نستخدم الصيغة الآتية :

question word + did + subject + Inf. ?
كلمة الاستفهام الفاعل المصدر

ex. - What did you study ?

- Where did she go ?

لاحظ أن : يتم استخدام (verb to be) في زمن الماضي كالآتي :

I / He / She / It → فاعل مفرد → was / wasn't

We / They / you → فاعل جمع → were / weren't

ex. - Mariam was frightened of the cave.

- There weren't any cars on the beach.

Usage الاستخدام

يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن فعل حدث وانتهى في زمن الماضي

ex.: - Maha helped her mother with her work last night.

- She went to school two hours ago.

Past time expressions

التعبيرات الدالة على زمن الماضي

We use past time expressions to say when something happened

نستخدم التعبيرات الدالة على زمن الماضي لنقول متى حدث شيء ما

in the past	في الماضي	last	→ year	السنة الماضية
yesterday	أمس		→ month	الشهر الماضي
this morning	هذا الصباح		→ week	الأسبوع الماضي
in + سنة ماضية + سنة ماضية	في + سنة ماضية		→ Tuesday	الثلاثاء الماضي
in October	في شهر أكتوبر الماضي		→ night	الليلة
		ago	→ an hour	منذ ساعة
			→ three days	منذ ثلاثة أيام
			→ six months	منذ ستة شهور
			→ four years	منذ أربع سنوات

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. SB Yesterday, our family _____ to our new house in Alexandria.

a. moved b. moving c. are moved d. moves

2. SB How did you _____ when you started a new school?

a. feels b. felt c. feel d. feeling

3. Khalid went to the park ten minutes _____.

a. since b. yet c. ago d. next

4. SB _____ you go to the park? - Yes, I did.

a. Have b. Did c. Do d. Were

5. SB We _____ lunch together in the school canteen this morning.

a. is having b. having c. had d. has

6. How _____ your weekend?

a. did b. does c. was d. do

7. Samir _____ a football match two days ago.

a. watches b. watched c. watch d. is watching

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

8. I last _____ my uncle and cousins in Cairo three weeks ago.

a. visit b. visits c. visited d. visiting

9. Today is Sunday, so it _____ Saturday yesterday.

a. is b. was c. has d. were

10. Who did you _____ last night?

a. sees b. seen c. saw d. see

11. My uncle _____ his car in 2002.

a. is buying b. buy c. buys d. bought

2. Read and correct the underlined words:

SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. SB I sit next to a boy called Sami and he was friendly. (_____)

2. SB This morning, mum and I go shopping. (_____)

3. WB When did your last English lesson? (_____)

4. WB I didn't went on the big wheel last weekend. (_____)

5. WB It's Wednesday today, so it was Tuesday today. (_____)

6. SB What did you did last weekend? (_____)

7. Tamer don't happy yesterday. (Kaf El Dawwar - Beheira 2022) (_____)

8. There didn't any cars in ancient Egypt. (Tema - Sohag 2022) (_____)

9. How long did it took to complete the palace? (Edku - Beheira 2022) (_____)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

10. I had a maths lesson two days last. (_____)

11. What places do you visit last weekend? (_____)

12. Last week, I see an exhibition about elephants. (_____)

General Exercises

On

LESSONS 1 & 2

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اسمع الى مكالمة واختر الاجابة الصحيحة المتوفرة في القائمة في نهاية الملف

1. Dad likes
a. sports b. salad c. cooking d. fishing
2. Mum's are delicious.
a. foods b. cookies c. salads d. cakes
3. My likes making things.
a. dad b. mum c. sister d. brother
4. Dad is good at
a. swimming b. football c. riding d. basketball

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Asem is asking Omar about his visit to a sports centre last weekend.

Asem : Did you enjoy your last weekend ?

Omar : (1)

Asem : Where did you spend it ?

Omar : (2)

Asem : (3) ?

Omar : I went with my friends.

Asem : What did you enjoy doing there ?

Omar : (4)

Asem : (5) ?

Omar : Yes, there is a swimming pool.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I hope students are in my new school !
a. nervous b. friendly c. frightened d. ugly
2. There are very old at the Egyptian Museum.
a. pyramids b. temples c. statues d. centres
3. Let's go to the I want to go on the big wheel. (Charafat - Minto 2022)
a. aquarium b. stadium c. planetarium d. funfair

How was your weekend ?

4. I will go to the to watch the football match. (Bassant 2022)
a. park b. stadium c. museum d. funfair
5. Adults usually good decisions.
a. deliver b. spend c. make d. do
6. We buy candies and chips from the school
a. box b. canteen c. factory d. library
7. A is a place where you can learn about stars and planets.
a. funfair b. stadium c. sports centre d. planetarium
8. A year ago, my father me with him to visit our farm. (Hana - Elwan - Elwan 2022)
a. takes b. took c. take d. will take
9. We in the swimming pool last month.
a. swim b. swam c. was swimming d. are swimming
10. What did you for lunch yesterday ? (Hana - Elwan - Elwan 2022)
a. ate b. eating c. eats d. eat

4 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Did he hurts himself ? (Ali - Elwan - Elwan 2022) { }
2. WB What year is it four years ago ? { }
3. We climbed the mountain next month. { }
4. I have a wonderful time at the zoo this morning. { }

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on : (موضوعك في نهاية الملف)

"How was your weekend ?"

AltFwd.com موقع التفوق



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

musician (n)	موسيقيار	rocks (n)	مذوور
island (n)	جزيرة	trumpet (n)	آلة البوق
sailor (n)	بحار	interview (ed) (v), (n)	يجري حوار / مقابلة رسمية (شخصية)
storm (n)	عاصفة	opinion (n)	رأي
coconut (n)	دور الهند	interviewer (n)	محاوور (من يقوم بتوجيه الأسئلة في المقابلة الشخصية)
cave (n)	كهف		
jungle (n)	أدغال - غابة		

تنويه = Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.



Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات المكتوبة

6 Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

rocks - coconut - sailor - storm - musician

- The ship sank because of a big
- I want to be a in a famous orchestra.
- He climbed the to reach the top of the mountain.
- She couldn't open the as it has hard shell.

Types of music

jazz	موسيقى الجاز	opera	أنواع الموسيقى
classical	الموسيقى الكلاسيكية	pop	الابورا (أغاني وحوار)
rock	موسيقى الروك (العاشقة)	traditional music	موسيقى البوب
			الموسيقى التقليدية

Lesson 3

SB pages 8 & 9 WB page 72

type (n)	نوع	share (d) (v)	يشارك
sound (ed) (v), (n)	يبدو - صوت (أشياء)	stress (ed) (v)	يؤكد الحرف (على كلمة أو مقطع)
voice (n)	صوت (بشري)	band (n)	فرقة موسيقية

Lesson 4

SB page 8 WB page 73

adventure (n)	مغامرة	rain (ed) (v), (n)	تمطر / مطر
terrible (adj)	رهيب / فظيع	through (prep)	خلال
alone (adj), (adv)	وحيد / بمفرده	nut (n)	جذعة مكسرات - بندق
entry (n)	دخول - مقدمة	glass (n)	زجاج

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المصارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
rise يرتفع / يعلو	rose	risen
fall يسقط / ينخفض	fell	fallen
sink يغرق	sank	sunk
find يجد	found	found
swim يسبح	swam	swum

Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite العكس
rise يعلو	fall ينخفض
end نهاية	beginning / start بداية
sink يغرق	float يطفو
nearby قريب	far away بعيد
dead ميت	alive على قيد الحياة / حي

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

alone	without any other people	بمفرده
classical music	a type of serious music played by people like Mozart and Bach	موسيقى كلاسيكية
coconut	a large hard nut that grows on a palm tree	دور الهند

jazz	a type of music first played by black Americans	موسيقى الجاز
opera	a type of music where actors sing the words of a story	الوبرا
pop music	a type of popular music	موسيقى البوب
rock music	a type of popular music usually played with electric guitars	موسيقى الروك
sailor	a person who sails or works on a boat or a ship	بحار
sink	go down into water	يغوص (الشباب)
terrible	very bad	رهيب / قطع
traditional	using ideas or ways that people first used a long time ago	تقليدي

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 learn - teach

• learn (v) to + inf. / noun.

ex.: - He **learned** to play the piano.
- He **learned** English at school.

• teach (v)

1. teach + (noun) اسم

ex.: - He **teaches** maths at Cairo Prep School.

2. teach + (obj) مفعول to + inf. / how to + inf.

ex.: - He **teaches** me to play the piano.

- He **teaches** me how to play the piano.

يتعلم

يُعلم - يُدرّس

2

جميع الأفعال الموسيقية تسبق بـ the بعد الفعل play بمعنى يعرف

ex.: - He **learned to play the piano** when he was 8.

3 What kind ... ? = What type ... ?

ex.: - What **type** of music do you like?

4 alone - lonely

• alone (adv)

ex.: - His wife died and he lived **alone**.

• lonely (adj)

ex.: - I feel **lonely**.

بفردته

وحيد

SB page 6

Important expressions & prepositions

an interview with ...	مقابلة شخصية مع	on the beach	على الشاطئ
write ...	يكتب (ملاحظات)	walk ...	يمشي / يمشي
in each question	في كل سؤال	walk (the ...)	يمشي (البحر)
the island	على الجزيرة	start with ...	يبدأ بـ
share ...	يتشارك مع	write a diary	يكتب يوميات
have different opinions about ...	لديه آراء مختلفة عن	write songs	يكتب أغاني
go down into	ينخفض / يهبط إلى	sleep on a bed	ينام في الفراش
it is good for you	إنه جيد بالنسبة لك	without any people	بدون أي أشخاص
it is difficult to + inf. ...	إنه من الصعب أن ...	want to + inf.	يريد أن ...
What happened ... ?	ماذا حدث	all over the world	في جميع أنحاء العالم
remember to + inf.	يتذكر أن	look for	يبحث عن
make sure	يتأكد	work on a boat	يعمل على متن قارب



Skills

1 Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تخرب على 1A من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Listening

• on Lesson 3 SB page 6

Listen to an interview with the musician Marvin Allstar.

Interviewer: Marvin Allstar is a famous⁽¹⁾ musician⁽²⁾. He writes songs and plays in a band⁽³⁾. Hello, Marvin, what type of music do you like?

Marvin: Hello. Well, I like jazz music⁽⁴⁾ best. I play the trumpet⁽⁵⁾ in a jazz band.

Interviewer: The trumpet? When did you learn to play the trumpet?



Check Vocabulary

1. مشهور 2. موسيقار 3. فرقة موسيقية 4. موسيقى الجاز 5. آلة النفخ

3. The lion is the king of the
a. island b. jungle c. cave d. storm

SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كُتاب الطالب والطلبة والمعلمين السابقة

4. What's your _____ of your new science teacher?
a. text b. map c. discuss d. opinion

5. I'm going to go trekking across Sinai. It's going to be a good
a. term b. novel c. adventure d. party

6. When something _____, it goes down into water.
a. sinks b. floats c. swims d. flies

7. I don't like this story. I thought the writing was
a. exciting b. terrible c. amazing d. funny

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كُتاب المعاصر

8. Hadeer has a beautiful _____, she'll be a singer one day.
a. sight b. site c. voice d. sound

9. A: What _____ of music do you like? B: Jazz.
a. game b. sport c. type d. hobby

10. In our new house, I _____ a room with my brother.
a. divide b. spend c. share d. walk

Definitions تعريفات

11. "Terrible" means very "____".
a. good b. relaxed c. bad d. relaxing

12. A/An _____ is a piece of land in a sea, a river or an ocean.
a. valley b. island c. oasis d. mountain

13. A/An _____ is the person who asks questions during an interview.
a. customer b. interviewee c. interviewer d. waiter

Language Notes, Expressions and Prepositions

14. When the car stopped, I walked _____ the jungle for 3 hours.
a. through b. over c. during d. forward

15. Crusoe wrote a _____ of what happened to him on the island.
a. dairy b. diary c. jungle d. type

2. Speaking

1. Asking about the type of music someone likes :

السؤال عن نوع الموسيقى التي يحبها شخص ما

Questions	Answers
• What type of music do you like? ما نوع الموسيقى التي تحبها ؟	- I like jazz, but I don't like opera. أحب موسيقى الجاز ولكن لا أحب موسيقى الأوبرا
• When did you learn to play the piano? متى تعلمت العزف على البيانو ؟	- When I was ten. عندما كنت في سن العاشرة

2. Asking and answering questions about your activities and abilities :

السؤال عن الأنشطة والقدرات الخاصة بك

Questions	Answers
• When did you go to the sports centre? متى ذهبت إلى المركز الرياضي ؟	- I went there four days ago. ذهبت إلى هناك منذ أربعة أيام
• Did you go shopping at the weekend? هل ذهبت للتسوق في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع ؟	- Yes, I went with my mum. نعم ذهبت مع والدتي
• Can you play chess? هل تستطيع لعب الشطرنج ؟	- No, I can't. لا أستطيع

3. Talking about what Robinson Crusoe can and can't do :

التحدث عن ما يستطيع روبنسون كروزو فعله وما لا يستطيع فعله

Questions	Answers
• What can Crusoe do? ماذا يستطيع كروزو أن يفعل ؟	- He can walk on the beach. يستطيع المشي على الشاطئ
• What can't Crusoe do? ما الذي لا يستطيع كروزو فعله ؟	- He can't sleep on a bed. لا يستطيع النوم على الفراش

لاحظ تغيير الضمائر والأفعال عند التحويل من السؤال للجمل والمكس

I, We ^{تحويل} you
my, our ^{تحويل} your
We are / I am ^{تحويل} are you
We were / I was ^{تحويل} were you

Question words

Whose ...?	ملك من ؟	How many ...?	كم للعدد ...؟
When ...?	متى ...؟	How high ...?	كم للارتفاع ؟
What ...?	ما - ماذا ...؟	How deep ...?	كم للعمق ...؟
Who ...?	من (الفاعل العامل) ...؟	How wide ...?	كم للعرض ...؟
Whom ...?	من (المفعول العاقل) ...؟	How far ...?	كم للبعد ...؟
Why ...?	لماذا ...؟	How tall ...?	كم للطول ...؟
Where ...?	أين ...؟	How heavy ...?	كم للوزن ...؟
Which ...?	أيها / أيهم ...؟	How long ...?	كم للمدة/للطول ...؟
How ...?	كيف ...؟	How old ...?	كم للعمر ...؟
How much ...?	كم للثمن / للكمية ...؟	How fast ...?	كم للسرعة ...؟
How often ...?	كم مرة ...؟	Who ... with ?	مع من ...؟

Examples :

- What is he doing now ? * He is reading a story.
- Who will you go to the club with ? * I will go to the club with Ali.
- When did you see Nadia ? * I saw Nadia last week.
- How does she go to school ? * She goes to school by bus.
- Why do you go to the cinema ? * I go to the cinema to see a film.
- How much did you pay for the watch ? * I paid 200 pounds for it.
- How often do they go to the circus ? * They go to the circus twice a month.
- Whose book is it ? * It is mine.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- SB, WB and previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة
1. SB What music he like ? - He likes pop music. (El Dugour - Menoufia 2022)
- a. did b. is c. do d. does

How was your weekend ?

2. SB Did you ... to the park ?
a. went b. go c. gone d. going
3. WB ... go shopping last weekend ?
a. Are you b. Do you c. Have you d. Did you
4. SB Have you got a new jacket ? - No, I
a. don't b. do c. haven't d. did
5. WB ... do you like fruit ?
a. Which b. Who c. What d. Why

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. How ... do you go swimming ? - Twice a week.
a. often b. much c. many d. old
7. ... there a cinema in your town ?
a. Is b. Are c. Were d. Did
8. ... watch do you like, the red or the blue ?
a. Why b. Where c. When d. Which
9. ... your friend got a computer ?
a. Has b. Have c. Is d. Does
10. ... shirt is that ? - It's mine.
a. When b. Where c. Whose d. Which

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB, WB and previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. SB A : Can she swim ?
B : Yes, we can. ()
2. WB A : Where do you come to school ?
B : By bus. ()
3. SB Do you likes jazz ? ()
4. SB Are you happy ? - No, I am. ()
5. WB Yes, I haven't got two sisters. ()
6. WB Does you play chess ? ()

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

7. Why old are you ? - 12 years old. ()
8. Who's car is yours ? - The black one. ()
9. How many is the blue jacket ? - 150 LE. ()
10. How colour do you like ? - Blue. ()

General Exercises

LESSONS

& 4

1. Read the following dialogue:

Hani and Sara are talking about music.

Hani: Hi! Sara. What type of music do you like?

Sara: Hi! Hani! (1)

Hani: Do you like another type of music?

Sara: (2)

Hani: (3) ?

Sara: Yes, I like listening to songs. And you?

Hani: (4)

Sara: The piano! (5) ?

Hani: My dad taught me to play the piano.

Sara: That's fantastic!

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- "Robinson Crusoe" is a/an _____ story by Daniel Defoe. It's exciting.
a. adventure b. comic c. historical d. horror
- Jazz is a type of _____.
a. music b. subject c. material d. metal
- There are a lot of _____ on this beach. It is dangerous to swim here.
a. jungles b. trees c. rocks d. forests
- Coconuts are large brown _____.
a. glasses b. pots c. nuts d. cells
- Good students always _____ down the most important points in the lesson.
a. give b. write c. eat d. cut
- In my _____, Ali is a clever boy.
a. think b. opinion c. address d. weekend
- A/An _____ is someone who plays a musical instrument or write music.
a. engineer b. farmer c. sailor d. musician

How was your weekend?

B. are their future jobs? - They will be doctors.

a. Why b. Who c. What d. When

9. spoke to the doctor yesterday? - Sameh.

a. What b. Who c. When d. Why

10. there any banks in this street?

a. Was b. Is c. Are d. Does

3. Read and correct the underlined words:

- He learned play the piano when he was four. (.....)
- Do you play chess? - No, I can't. (.....)
- Did you studied hard yesterday? (.....)
- Has your brother got a pencil case? - Yes, he does. (.....)

4. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A story you read"





Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

concert (n)	حفلة موسيقية	barbecue (n)	دفل شواء
olives (n)	زيتون	include (d) (v)	يشمل - يتضمن
theatre (n)	مسرح	emotion (n)	عاطفة / انفعال
peppers (n)	فلفل	hotel (n)	مندق
hope (d) (v), (n)	أمل - أمل	kind (n), (adj)	نوع - عطوف
thoughts (n)	أفكار		

تنويه Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها

5

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف للإتقان المفردات اللغوية

3 Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

concert - olives kind - theatre - include

1. What _____ of person is Heba ? - She's friendly.
2. I played the trumpet in the school _____.
3. Mona went to the _____ to watch a play.
4. We use _____ to make a healthy oil.

Lesson 5

SB page 9 WB page 74

person (n)	شخص	writer (n)	كاتب
contrast (n)	تباين	really (adv)	حقاً
happen (ed) (v)	حدث	team (n)	فريق

Lesson 6

SB page 10 WB page 75

writing tips (n)	نصائح / إرشادات للكتابة	journey (n)	رحلة طويلة
full stop (.)	نقطة	windy (adj)	عاصف
exclamation mark (!)	علامة التعجب	try (led) (v)	يحاول / يجرب

How was your weekend ?

(interesting (adj))	رائع / شيق	tired (adj)	مُعب
surprising (adj)	مدهش	doodles (n)	شذوطة (رسومات بسيطة)

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	المضارع	Past	الماضي	P.P.	التصريف الثالث
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up		woken up	
break	يكسر	broke		broken	
show	يبين / يوضح	showed		shown	
understand	يفهم	understood		understood	

Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite	العكس
great / fantastic	رائع / عظيم	terrible	سيئ / مطع
loud	عال الصوت	quiet	هادئ
beautiful	جميل	ugly	قبيح

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study this definition

ادرس هذا التعريف

windy when the wind blows, the weather is windy

عاصف

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 remember - remind

* remember يتذكر (من تلقاء نفسه)

ex.: - What do you remember about your weekend ?

* remind (v) يذكر (لشخص آخر بشي ما)

ex.: - My mom reminded me of my homework.

2 because

لأن (تستخدم لإعطاء سبب أو مبرر لشي ما)

ex.: - It was great because I went to the bowling alley.

3 Although

بالرغم من / ومع ذلك (تستخدم للتعبير عن التناقض)

ex.: - Although I was very hungry, I didn't want to eat another dead fish!

- The pizza was really good although it was cheap.

4 Ordinary & strong adjectives

Ordinary adjectives

صفات ذات معنى عادي

good	جيد
old	قديم
small	صغير الحجم
tired	متعب
bad	سئى

Strong adjectives

صفات ذات معنى قوي

fantastic / wonderful	رائع
ancient	عتيق / قديم جدا
tiny	ضئيل الحجم
exhausted	متعبك
terrible	مظيع / سئى جدا

لاحظ أن : الصفات القوية لا يمكن أن تسبق بـ (very) في حين أنها يمكن أن تسبق بـ (really).

- It was **very** terrible. (X)

- It was **really** terrible. (✓)

Page 9

Important expressions & prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

do maths homework	يؤدي واجب مدة الرياضيات	have a barbecue	يقوم حفل شواء في الهواء الطلق
stay on the beach	يبقى / يمكث على الشاطئ	plan to	يخطط لـ
take a selfie	يلقط صورة بالكاميرا الذاتية للمحمول	happy about	سعيد بشأن
give a reason for	يعطي سببا لـ / يبرر	get in	يدخل
look around	يتجول / يلقي بصره	get a ticket for	يحصل على تذكرة لـ
go on holiday	يذهب في أجازة	stop working	يتوقف عن العمل

Skills

1. Reading and Listening

تدرب على 18 من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Pop Quiz

Listening

• on Lesson 5 SB page 9

Listen to three people talking about their weekend. Match the person to the photos.

Narrator : One

Woman : Hi, Lina. How was your weekend ?

Lina : Oh, it was terrible.



How was your weekend ?

Woman : Oh dear, what happened ?

Lina : I watched a football match at the stadium . It was terrible because my team⁽¹⁾ lost⁽²⁾ 5 - 2. Then I took a selfie⁽³⁾ but I dropped my mobile phone and it broke.

Woman : Oh dear !

Narrator : Two

Man : Hi Hisham. How was your weekend ?

Hisham : It was great because I went to the bowling alley with my cousins. Then we went to a pizza restaurant. I had a pizza with olives⁽⁴⁾ and pepper⁽⁵⁾. The pizza was really good, although it was expensive.



Narrator : Three

Woman 2 : Hi Judy. How was your weekend ?

Judy : It was OK on Saturday, although I had lots of homework. But I went to the theatre⁽⁶⁾ in the evening.



Check Vocabulary

(1) سعاد رياضي	(2) شريك	(3) خسر	(4) التفت صورة باستخدام الكاميرا الذاتية للمحمول
(5) زيتون	(6) فلفل	(7) مسرح	

• Lesson 5 WB page 74

Narrator 1

Judy : I went to my cousin's house last weekend. It was fantastic because we played all my favourite games!

Narrator 2

Khaled : I read a book by my favourite writer last week. It was OK, although it was not her best book.

Narrator 3

Marwa : My father drove us to the park on Saturday. It took an hour to go two kilometres ! It was terrible because there were so many cars.

Narrator 4

Hany : We read an English book at school today. It was very good, although I didn't understand every word!

موقع التفوق AltFwd.com

Reading

on Lesson 6 SB page 10

Dalia's diary Sunday 13th August

Today was a terrible day! My baby brother woke me up at 5 am! I am so tired now. I didn't have time for breakfast but we had no milk or bread. So Mum asked me to go to the shop but it was closed because it was only 6:30 am!

Then I tried to do my maths homework but I lost all my work because my laptop was broken. Although we planned to have a picnic in the afternoon, it was very windy. We could not have it!

I hope tomorrow is a better day!



Check Vocabulary

- (1) يوم سيئ
- (2) أيقظ
- (3) متعب
- (4) ذهب إلى المطبخ
- (5) مغلق
- (6) حاولت
- (7) جعل واجبي الرياضيات
- (8) توقف عن العمل
- (9) دخل شواء
- (10) عاصف
- (11) يأمل

Critical thinking questions.

ممارسة التفكير النقدي

Answer the following questions:

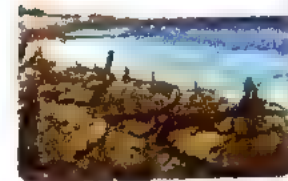
1. Do you think that Dalia finished her maths homework? Why?
I don't think so, because her laptop stopped working.

2. Why do you think Dalia's day was terrible?

on Lesson 6 WB page 75

Saturday 30th July

Today was a fantastic day. First, I got up at 5 am and had breakfast. Then I got in the car with my family and we drove to Siwa. Although it was a very long journey.



I enjoyed reading my favourite book in the car. We arrived very late but it is a beautiful place. We planned to go 'around', but we stayed in the hotel because we were all very tired. I think tomorrow will be very interesting.

Important Expressions or prepositions

يدخل يدخل في

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

1. My mother puts _____ on food to make it tasty.
a. peppers b. papers c. ice d. oil
2. Last summer, we stayed in a nice _____ in Hurghada.
a. funfair b. hotel c. theatre d. concert
3. His head is full of good _____ about life.
a. thoughts b. stones c. eyes d. books
4. _____ is useful. We use it for its oil.
a. Pepper b. Journey c. Olive d. Jam
5. We went to the _____ where we enjoyed the new play.
a. hotel b. funfair c. park d. theatre

SB, WB and Previous Exams

6. 11 My little brother _____ me up at 5 a.m.
a. drove b. gave c. played d. woke
7. 12 I read a book by my favourite _____ last week.
a. reader b. leader c. writer d. lighter

8. 13 What _____ of person was Robinson Crusoe? - Clever.
a. kind b. time c. age d. size

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

9. Our weekend was We didn't enjoy it.
a. interesting b. great c. fantastic d. terrible
10. My bedroom a bed and a cupboard.
a. includes b. does c. makes d. takes
11. After a hard day's work, he was
a. relaxed b. tired c. excited d. interested

Definitions تعريفات

12. When the wind blows, the weather is
a. funny b. nice c. windy d. good

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. I went a holiday with my family last week.
a. out b. in c. on d. at
14. My laptop stopped , so I lost all my work.
a. living b. working c. dying d. trying
15. We planned to a barbecue in the afternoon.
a. do b. have c. work d. open
16. Dad got a ticket the final match yesterday.
a. with b. about c. on d. for

2. Speaking

Asking and responding to past events

Questions	Response	الرد
How was your weekend? كيف كانت عطلة نهاية الاسبوع الخاصة بك؟	It was great/fantastic! كانت رائعة!	It was (really / very) interesting. كانت (حقاً / جداً) ممتعة
	It was OK. كانت على ما يرام	It was (really / very) good. كانت (حقاً / جداً) جيدة
What was the (food) like? كيف كان الطعام؟	It was terrible! كان سيئاً جداً!	It was (really) bad. كان (حقاً) سيئاً.

Writing

مهارات الكتابة

Punctuation marks

علامات الترقيم

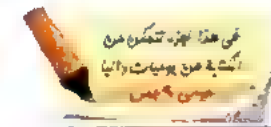
1. You can end a sentence with an exclamation mark (!) to show strong emotion.
يمكنك أن تنتهي الجملة بعلامة تعجب (!) لتبين أو توضح المشاعر القوية
2. Use an exclamation mark (!) after interesting or surprising information.
استخدم علامة التعجب (!) بعد معلومات يدعو للدهشة أو الإثارة
3. A capital letter follows both a full stop (.) and an exclamation mark (!).
بعد النقطة أو علامة التعجب، تبدأ الجملة بحرف كبير.

Writing a diary

كتابة مذكونة يومية

1. Use the past tense (most of the time).
استخدم زمن الماضي (معظم الوقت)
2. Use the 1st person (I or We).
استخدم ضمير المتكلم (أنا أو نحن)
3. Write things in the order that they happened.
اكتب الأشياء بترتيب حدوثها
4. Talk about your feelings, hopes, thoughts and opinions.
تحدث عن مشاعرك، آمالك، أفكارك وآرائك
5. Include pictures and doodles.
أدرج صور وشخطة (رسومات بسيطة)

Dalia's diary يوميات داليا



Sunday 13th August

Today was a terrible day⁽¹⁾! My baby brother woke me up at 5 a.m.⁽²⁾ I am so tired now⁽³⁾. I went to the kitchen for breakfast, but we had no milk or bread⁽⁴⁾. So mum asked me to go to the shop but it was closed because it was only 6:30 a.m.⁽⁵⁾ I then I tried to do my maths homework but I lost all my work because my laptop stopped working⁽⁶⁾. Although we planned to have a barbecue in the afternoon, it was very windy⁽⁷⁾. We could not have it⁽⁸⁾! I hope tomorrow is a better day⁽⁹⁾!

General Exercises

LESSONS 5 & 6

1

استمع إلى مكالمة واختار الإجابة الصحيحة (اختر) اسم الشخص في هذه المكالمة

1. Who drove you to the park?
a. My father b. My brother c. My uncle d. My mother
2. When did you go to the park? - On
a. Monday b. Sunday c. Saturday d. Friday
3. My father took _____ to go two kilometres!
a. three hours b. two hours c. five hours d. an hour
4. It was _____ because there were so many cars.
a. great b. fantastic c. terrible d. quiet

2

Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed and Ali are talking about music.

Ahmed: Do you like music, Ali?

Ali: (1) _____

Ahmed: (2) _____?

Ali: I like pop music.

Ahmed: (3) _____?

Ali: Yes, I can play musical instruments.

Ahmed: What musical instrument do you play?

Ali: (4) _____

Ahmed: Who taught you how to play it?

Ali: (5) _____

(1) (2) (3) (4) (5)

3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. _____ oil is used in some meals.
a. Olive b. Lemon c. Orange d. Apple
2. I _____ tomorrow will be a better day.
a. hate b. hope c. enjoy d. give

How was your weekend?

3. As it was _____, we couldn't stay on the beach.
a. funny b. windy c. holiday d. nice
4. He is a _____ man, so all people like him.
a. difficult b. lazy c. scary d. kind
5. Yesterday, we had a / an _____ at school.
a. theatre b. stadium c. concert d. aquarium
6. We _____ in the hotel because we were all very tired.
a. took b. stayed c. thought d. wrote
7. Please, _____ me of the next meeting.
a. remember b. remind c. mind d. mend
8. It was OK on Sunday _____ I had lots of homework.
a. although b. then c. or d. for
9. The last weekend _____ really fantastic.
a. is b. was c. will be d. can be
10. It _____ an hour to go to school yesterday.
a. takes b. took c. taking d. take

4

Read and correct the underlined words:

1. How is your last weekend? ()
2. Have you get a new school bag? ()
3. Tomorrow was very hot. ()
4. I last go to the concert in 2010. ()

5

Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A fantastic day"

AltFwd.com موقع التفوق

Review

Speaking

1. Talking about your weekend.

When did you go to the funfair?
I went to the funfair last Sunday.

Language

1- Keywords

in the past
yesterday
this morning
in (1000)
in (X) years

at the weekend
last night
last week
last month
last year
last Sunday
last Monday
last Tuesday
last Wednesday
last Thursday
last Friday
last Saturday
last Sunday

Salma bought a new bag last year.

2- Yes/No questions

Did you go to the zoo?

- Yes, I did.

Were you happy?

- Yes, I was.

3- Wh-questions

What did you do yesterday?

When did you go to the cinema?

Page 11

Page 76

What type of music do you like?

- I like jazz but I don't like opera.

Skills

Speaking

تعلم معارة التحدث مع الآخرين بشكل انفعالي على تكوين اسئلة ومعرفة كيفية الرد عليها.

Stimulus

1. What did you do last weekend?
2. How was your weekend?
3. Where did you have your dinner last Monday?
4. What type of music do you like?
5. When did you learn to play the piano?

Response

- I watched a football match.
- It was a fantastic weekend.
- I had my dinner at a restaurant last Monday.
- I like pop music. It's fantastic.
- When I was nine.

التحدث عن علة
معرفة المصروف
التحدث عن
الوقت الذي
تحدثت فيه

الوقت الذي
تحدثت فيه
الوقت الذي
تحدثت فيه

Writing Skill

لحتم معارة الكتابة من المعارف الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وصيغ مترابطة قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على حل سؤال المفكرة المنشورة في الورقة الملتصقة (28 جملة)

1 "My last holiday"

Last Sunday, I went to the museum. I went with my mum and sister. We saw some old statues. We learned a lot there. In the evening, I wanted to go to the funfair but my brother wanted to go to his favourite restaurant. Because I love my brother, we went to the restaurant. We went there four months ago for his birthday too. And two days ago, on Sunday we went to the planetarium but it was closed. So we took a bus to the aquarium on the other side of the town. I saw a shark. It was fantastic.

AltFwd.com موقع التفوق

1 "A terrible weekend I had"

Last weekend was terrible. I woke up too late so I missed my favourite cartoon. In the evening, I went to the stadium. I watched a football match at the stadium. It was terrible because my team lost 5-2. Then I took a selfie but I dropped my mobile phone and it broke down. I was so sad. I had to say sorry for my dad. I started to save money to buy a new one.

2 "My last weekend"

Last week, I spent a really nice weekend. I went to my friend's house and we played in the garden. It was a lot of fun. I went to the stadium with my father. I watched a football match and my team won. I took lots of selfies. After the match, I went to a restaurant to have pizza with olives and peppers. Next weekend, I will go to the museum or the funfair.

A week is enough



موقع التتويج AltFwd.com

TEST

on unit 7

• Create

A. Listening

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع إلى ملفات ونكر الدالة الصحيحة (اختر الإجابة الصحيحة من أ، ب، ج، د).

- Mum doesn't like

a. watching sports	b. playing chess
c. eating pizza	d. driving cars
- Dad likes

a. English	b. science	c. history	d. French
------------	------------	------------	-----------
- Nadia is _____ years old.

a. 15	b. 50	c. 5	d. 51
-------	-------	------	-------
- Dad is always _____.

a. sad	b. happy	c. angry	d. busy
--------	----------	----------	---------

B. Language Functions

2. Complete the following dialogue:

Heba and Hala are talking about music.

Heba : I like music very much, and you ?

Hala : (1) _____

Heba : (2) _____ ?

Hala : I prefer jazz.

Heba : (3) _____ ?

Hala : Hakim is my favourite singer.

Heba : Do you want to play music in a band ?

Hala : (4) _____

Heba : I will help you.

Hala : Really ! (5) _____

C. Reading Comprehension

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

Cinderella is a fantastic imaginary children's story. After her mother's death, her father soon married another woman with three daughters. When she married Cinderella's father, Cinderella had to live

with them. The woman was so wicked and cruel. She made Cinderella work hard day and night and left her own daughters play. Her father was so weak and he couldn't prevent his new wife from being cruel to his sad daughter. Luckily, the prince invited all girls to his palace to choose his future wife. All girls went in best clothes. Cinderella had nothing to fit into the party. But with the help of a magician woman, she got the best dress, later on she married the prince.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. All girls went to the prince's palace so he can choose his future

- a. girl b. friend c. wife d. enemy

2. What do you think the word "prevent" means?

- a. Stop b. Increase c. Open d. Choose

3. The underlined word "She" refers to

- a. Cinderella b. Cinderella's mother
c. the new wife d. one of the girls

b. Answer the following questions:

4. What is the main idea of the passage?

5. Do you think Cinderella lived happily after her father's marriages? Why? Why not?

6. How did Cinderella marry the prince?

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When you put a stone in water, it
a. floats b. thinks c. sinks d. thanks
2. I always
a. take b. buy c. sell d. read

1. We had a / an weekend. I broke my left arm.

- a. terrible b. fantastic c. interesting d. wonderful

4. " " means using ideas or ways that people first used a long time ago.

- a. Terrible b. Traditional c. Amazing d. Popular

5. Wise people make good

- a. shopping b. decisions c. fun d. equipment

6. In the Science , I saw an exhibition about reptiles.

- a. Factory b. Museum c. Company d. Library

7. I on the big wheel at the funfair yesterday.

- a. drove b. read c. climbed d. rode

8. I a football match two days ago.

- a. watching b. watched c. watch d. am watching

9. What you do last Sunday? - I studied geography.

- a. did b. do c. are d. were

10. It was a terrible day my team lost 5 - 2.

- a. although b. because c. so d. however

5. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. What day is yesterday? ()

2. Last weekend, we go to the club. ()

3. I like jazz and I don't like opera. ()

4. Have you got a new jacket? - No, I don't. ()

E. Writing

6. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A terrible weekend you had"

AltFwdi.com موقع التفوق

Stop here !

1 Mini-Test on unit 7 for Al-Azhar students

1

A. Omar : How was your weekend ?

Ab :

B. Salma :

Salma : No , I don't like pop music .

2

Write a paragraph of five sentences about :

"Your last weekend"

2 Use your brain, think smart

طبق ما تعلمناه واختر ذكائك

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- She is frightened home in the dark alone.
a. walks b. of walking c. walk d. walking
- A: What of sport do you like ? B: Football.
a. stress b. tip c. type d. entry
- Mr Mohamed me to read English well,
a. learned b. taught c. found d. rose
- This diary me of my journey to the island.
a. remembered b. reminded c. tried d. forgot
- I don't like going out at night.
a. lonely b. alone c. loner d. owner

February assessment

الامتحان شهر فبراير

A. Listening

1

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

استمع الى التسجيل واختر الجواب الصحيح من ا، ب، ج، د

- They went to the museum by
a. car b. train c. plane d. bus
- Basant is years old
a. ten b. twenty c. twelve d. twenty-two
- They saw in the museum.
a. stairs b. statues c. tips d. studies
- They went to the in the evening.
a. museum b. home c. funfair d. aquarium

B. Language Functions

2

Complete the following dialogue :

Hamdy is telling Atef about his visit to Al Azhar Park.

Atef : Where did you go yesterday ?

Hamdy : (1)

Atef : (2) ?

Hamdy : I went with my family.

Atef : (3) ?

Hamdy : We saw trees and flowers.

Atef : Did you see any fountains ?

Hamdy : (4)

Atef : Did you enjoy your time there ?

Hamdy : (5)

C. Reading Comprehension

3

Read the following, then answer the questions

Doctors are important because they care about people. Doctors are the people who help others get better when they get sick. They find out what is wrong with people when they are sick. Doctors help sick people

by giving them the right medicine. They work in hospitals and clinics. Doctors are very helpful. To be a doctor, you have to go to university. You should be good at science. You also should like helping others. You should be kind and helpful. If you are not kind and patient, people will not love you.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "They" refers to
a. doctors b. patients c. nurses d. universities
2. If you aren't a kind doctor, people will you.
a. love b. hate c. admire d. respect
3. The opposite of the underlined word "better" is
a. normal b. serious c. worse d. well

b. Answer the following questions:

4. Give a suitable title to the passage.
5. What should you do to be a doctor?
6. Why do you think doctors are very important?

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We can see the stars when we go to the
a. museum b. laboratory c. aquarium d. planetarium
2. There are many people in this city, it is
a. empty b. free c. hard d. crowded
3. Gold is expensive than silver.
a. most b. more c. as d. least
4. Which is more difficult, English or maths?
a. hobby b. subject c. language d. interest

- 5 The is a dangerous sea animal.
a. shark b. dolphin c. seal d. elephant
6. The ship sank and all the died.
a. pilots b. fires c. sailors d. statues
7. A: you worried about the exams? B: Yes, I was.
a. Did b. Were c. Can d. Do
8. Who is the person in the world?
a. rich b. richer c. richest d. as rich
9. He won the prize when he took part in the art
a. match b. goal c. fight d. competition
10. I asked my mother to remind me my homework.
a. with b. by c. for d. of

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. She didn't arrived early last meeting. (.....)
2. He is best than his friend. (.....)
3. This film is the less interesting. (.....)
4. There didn't any cars in ancient Egypt. (.....)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"How was your weekend?"



UNIT

8

The amazing world around us

موقع
التفوق
ALTfwok

• Reading :

A text about the Tanya Masr Bridge, the Grand Egyptian Museum

• Writing :

A paragraph on a museum about the twenty first century a fact for a review of places giving your opinion

• Listening :

Facts and figures, a quiz

• Speaking :

Talking about measurements, making comparisons

• Language :

Comparative and superlative adjectives

• Issues :

Loyalty and belonging

• Life Skills :

Respecting different opinions

• العلامة ٥٠ : يشرح مسئلة ذات اختيار
• العلامة ٥٠ : يشرح مسئلة ذات اختيار
• تدريب لطلاب الفهم الفهم في وحدة واحدة
• التدريب شخصية : ل ذات الفهم
• دورة للمراجعة الفهم وإشراك الفهم في الفهم الفهم

العلامة
العلامة

العلامة
العلامة

1 & 2



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

crowded (adj)	مزدحم	country (n)	دولة
population (n)	تعداد السكان	bridge (n)	جسر
measurement (n)	وحدة قياس / قياس	desert road (n)	طريق صحراوي
building (n)	مبنى	tower (n)	برج
tunnel (n)	نفق	forest (n)	غابة

تدريب : Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.

5

Pop Quiz

تدريب لتقاني بهذه المفردات اللغوية

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

population - country - measurements - tunnel - Bridge

1. They built a big under the sea.
2. The underground goes through a long
3. The of Cairo is about 20 million people.
4. China is a big in Asia.

Famous places

اماكن مشهورة

Luxor Temple	معبد الكرنك	Al Hamra Tower	برج الحمراء الكوبية
Tahya Masr Bridge	جسر نوحا مصر	Bangkok	مدينة بانكوك (تايلاند)
Cairo - Alexandria desert road	طريق القاهرة - الإسكندرية الصحراوي	The Library of Alexandria	مكتبة الإسكندرية
Abraj Al-Balt (Clock Tower)	أبراج البيت (برج الساعة) في المملكة العربية السعودية	The Shanghai Tower	برج شنغهاي
The Pyramids of Giza	أهرامات الجيزة	The Gotthard Tunnel	نفق جوتهارد (في سويسرا)
the Pyramid of El Castillo	هرم كاستيلو	Lake Baikal	بحيرة بيكال (في روسيا)
		Switzerland	دولة سويسرا

Brasilia	مدينة برازيليا (في البرازيل)	Mount Everest	جبل إفرست
The Red Pyramid	الهرم الأحمر (في دهبور)	Mount Kilimanjaro	جبل كلمنجارو
The 6 th October Bridge	جسر 6 أكتوبر	Qasr El-Nil Bridge	جسر قصر النيل
Thailand	دولة تايلاند	The Leaning Tower of Pisa	برج بيزا المائل
The Cairo Tower	ج. القاهرة		

Lesson 1

SE pages 12 & 13 WB page 77

ground (n)	أرض	research (ed) (v), (n)	يبحث / بحث
river banks (n)	شواطئ النهر	fact file (n)	ملف حقائق
linked (v)	يرتبط	guess (ed) (v)	يظن
exact (adj)	دقيق - محدد	daily (adj), (adv)	يومي / يوميًا

Lesson 2

SE pages 14 & 15 WB page 78

centre (n)	وسط	compare (d) (v)	يقارن
describe (d) (v)	يصف	across (adv)	عبر / خلال
quiz (n)	خبر مسرع / مسابقة	rules (n)	قوانين / قواعد
capital (n)	عاصمة	tourists (n)	سياح
correctly (adv)	بطريقة صحيحة	traffic (n)	المرور
market (n)	سوق تجاري	visitors (n)	زوار

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المصارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
build	built	built
hit	hit	hit

Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite العكس
wide	narrow ضيق
crowded	empty فارغ
modern	old / ancient قديم
noisy	quiet هادئ
better	worse أسوأ
high	low منخفض

The amazing world around us

تدوين هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس القاموس (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions

اقرأ هذه التعريفات

bridge	something used for people and cars to cross a road or river	جسر
city	a large town	مدينة كبيرة
crowded	where there are many people	مزدحم
depth	measuring water from the top to the bottom	عمق
empty	without any people or things in it	فارغ
low	not far from the top to the bottom of something	منخفض
modern	relating to the present; not old	حديث
narrow	not far from one side of something to the other; not wide	ضيق
noisy	making a lot of noise, not quiet	صاخب
pyramid	a large building that is square at the bottom with four triangular sides forming a point at the top	هرم
quiet	without making much noise; not noisy	هادئ
tower	a tall, narrow building	برج
wide	far from one side of something to the other; not narrow	واسع
farther	at a bigger distance, the comparative of far	أبعد
tall	more than usual height; not short	طويل
tunnel	something you can go through to travel under the sea or through a mountain	نفق



General Notes on Reading & Listening.

1 How + صفة ? = What + اسم ?

ex.: - 58 How wide is Tahya Masr Bridge ?

= What width is Tahya Masr Bridge ?

ex.: - 59 How old are the Pyramids ?

= What age are the Pyramids ?

How		What	
deep	كم عمق	depth	ما عمق
long	كم طول	length	ما طول
old	كم عمر	age	ما عمر
high / tall	كم ارتفاع / طول ؟	height	ما ارتفاع
much	كم ثمن / كمية	price / quantity	ما سعر / كمية
many	كم عدد	number	ما العدد
wide	كم عرض	width	ما العرض

▶ لاحظ : استخدام صفة غير مضاف إليها أى إضافات بعد التعريفات التى من على التقييم.

ex: - It's 146 metres high.

- It's about 25,000 metres long.

SB page 30

2 which + is + مقاربة (1) مقاربة (2) or طرف المقارنة الأول (1) مقاربة مقاربة (2) مقاربة الثاني (2) مقاربة المقارنة بين شيئين تستخدم التركيب السابق.

ex: - Which animal is faster, a horse or a donkey?

- Which thing is heavier, a book or a pencil?

▶ ملحوظة : عند عدم التأكد من العدد أو الكمية، نعطف تستخدم بعض التعريفات التالية مثل :
حوالى ... about / أقل من just under / أكثر من more than

ex: - Mr Ayman may be more than 40 years old.

- Mr Ashraf has got about 50 students in his class.

SB page 13

▶ ملحوظة : بعض الاختصارات لوحيات القياس :

- centimetre = cm

- kilometre = km

- metre = m

- kilogram = kg

SB page 13

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

under the ground	تحت الأرض	crowded with	مزدحم بـ
the centre of Cairo	وسط القاهرة	make it noisier or quieter	يجعلها أكثر إزعاجاً أو أكثر هدوءاً
(be) better	يكون أفضل حالاً / أفضل	easy for	سهل لـ
(be) worse	يكون أسوأ حالاً / أسوأ	go	يهر من فوق النيل
better for	أفضل لـ	over the Nile	يهر من تحت البحر
give an exact number	يعطى رقم دقيق	under the sea	يسير فى ذلك الطريق
has worse traffic	بها ازدحام مرورى أسوأ	down that road	أيضاً أكثر عصرية (حديثاً) ؟
Which one is more modern?			



Skills

Reading and Listening

تدرب على 18 من صق الفهم وموضوع الاستماع Pop Quiz

Listening

on Lesson 1 SB page 13



a : The Pyramid of El Castillo in Chichen Itza is 30 metres high.

b : The Tahya Masr Bridge is about 540 metres long.

c : More than 37,500,000 people live in Tokyo, Japan.

d : The Leaning Tower of Pisa is just under 850 years old.

e : The Gotthard Tunnel in Switzerland is 2.3 kilometres under the ground.

2

Narrator : 1

A : How long is the Cairo-Alexandria desert road?

B : It's 220 kilometres long.

Narrator : 2

A : How deep is Lake Baikal in Russia?

B : It's 1,642 metres deep.

Narrator : 3

A : How high is Abraj Al-Balt Clock Tower in Saudi Arabia?

B : It's 601 metres high.

Narrator : 4

A : How old is the Luxor Temple?

B : It's just under 3,500 years old.

Narrator : 5

A : How many people live in Cairo?

B : More than 20 million people.

AltFunki.com موقع التفوت

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات ألعاب المعاصر

9. About 500,000 visited Egypt last April.
a. tourists b. towers c. tools d. tours
10. Many ... came to visit the museum today.
a. visitors b. centres c. statues d. objects
11. The Suez Canal ... the Mediterranean Sea to the Red Sea.
a. describes b. lifts c. links d. builds

Definitions تعريفات

12. ... is measuring water from the top to the bottom.
a. Size b. Depth c. Width d. Weight
13. Something you can go through to travel under the sea or through a mountain is called a
a. bridge b. pyramid c. tower d. tunnel

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. Can you ... me a/an exact number of daily visitors?
a. have b. leave c. give d. make
15. English is easier ... me to study than maths.
a. from b. for c. of d. to

2. Speaking

Talking about measurements

Questions	Answers
How long is the Cairo - Alexandria Desert Road? كم ساع طول طريق القاهرة - الإسكندرية الصحراوي؟	It's about 220 kilometres long. يبلغ طوله حوالي ٢٢٠ كيلومتر.
How old is Luxor Temple? كم عمر معبد الأقصر؟	It's just under 3500 years old. أقل من ٣٥٠٠ عامًا.
How deep is Lake Baikal in Russia? كم يبلغ عمق بحيرة بيكال في روسيا؟	It's 1,642 m deep under the water. يبلغ عمقها ١,٦٤٢ متر تحت الماء.
How high is Abraj Al-Bait (Clock Tower) in Saudi Arabia? كم يبلغ ارتفاع أبراج البيت (برج ساعة) في المملكة العربية السعودية؟	It's about 601 metres long. يبلغ ارتفاعها ما يقرب من ٦٠١ متر.

The amazing world around us

How many people live in Cairo?

كم عدد الناس الذين يعيشون بالقاهرة؟

More than 20 million people live in Cairo.

أكثر من ٢٠ مليون إنسان يعيش بالقاهرة.

Writing

Exciting places in Egypt

أماكن شيقة في مصر

في هذا الجزء، نتكلم عن الكثرة من أماكن شيقة في مصر.

1. We live in an amazing world.
١. نحن نعيش في عالم مذهل.
2. There are many exciting places to visit in Egypt.
٢. هناك الكثير من الأماكن الممتعة لزيورها في مصر.
3. In Egypt, there are many pyramids.
٣. هناك العديد من الأهرامات في مصر.
4. The Great Pyramid is more crowded than the Red Pyramid.
٤. الهرم الأكبر أكثر ازدحامًا من الهرم الأحمر.
5. The Great Pyramid is taller than the Red Pyramid.
٥. الهرم الأكبر أطول من الهرم الأحمر.

III Language

Comparative adjectives المقارنة بين اثنين في صفة

1 What's an adjective? ما هي الصفة؟

An adjective is a word that describes a noun and precedes it or it follows verb to be.

الصفة هي كلمة تصف الاسم وتسبقه أو تأتي بعد (verb to be)

- He is a tall man.

- This mobile is expensive.

موقع التفوق AltFwd.com

Comparative of adjectives

We use comparative adjectives to compare two things, people or places.
نستخدم صفات المقارنة عند المقارنة بين شيئين. شخصين أو اثنين من الأماكن.

Short adjectives الصفات القصيرة

هي الصفات التي تتكون من مقطع واحد مثل :

fast / big / sad /
happy ... etc.

تتحول الصفات القصيرة إلى صيغة المقارنة

adj + صفة + er + than

fast → faster / old → older

وبصيغة (than) بعد الصفة القصيرة.

يضاف (er) فقط نهاية الصفة القصيرة
المنتهية بـ (e)

large → larger / close → closer

يضاف الحرف الساكن الأخير إذا كان مسبوقاً
بصوت متحرك قصير لم يضاف (er) المنتهية
الصفة القصيرة

- big → bigger - thin → thinner

الصفات المنتهية بحرف (y) تتحول (y)
إلى (i) ثم تضاف (er)

- easy → easier

- lazy → lazier

ex. - An elephant is bigger than
a camel.

Long adjectives الصفات الطويلة

هي الصفات التي تتكون من أكثر من مقطع مثل :

interesting / fantastic /
beautiful / dangerous ... etc.

تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلى صيغة المقارنة
كالتالي :

more + صفة + adj. / أقل less +

- beautiful

- more/less beautiful than

أكثر / أقل جمالاً من

ex. - The dolphin is more enormous
than the turtle.

هناك بعض الصفات غير المنتظمة (تختلف كما هي) عند المقارنة بين اثنين :

Adjective	الصفة	Comparative	عند المقارنة بين اثنين
bad	سيئ	worse	أسوأ
far	بعيد	further / farther	أبعد
good	جيد	better	أفضل
late	متأخر	later	في وقت لاحق
little	قابل الكمية	less	أقل من
many	كثير العدد	more	أكثر
much	كثير الكمية	more	أكثر

ليس بالضرورة استخدام (than) بعد صفة المقارنة عندما يكون الطرف الثاني للمقارنة
مفهوم من سياق الكلام :

- Ma ak is tall, but Mariam is taller. (Not: taller than)

- This car is expensive. I want a less expensive one. (Not: less expensive than)

Stop here! on Language (Answered & Explained)

في هذا الجزء نقدم للطلاب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عنه ومصحوب بشرح
أسباب اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Zip lining is dangerous than swimming.
a. the most b. the more c. most d. more
- Playing sports is than playing video games.
a. best b. good c. better d. more
- My father is than my uncle.
a. old b. older c. oldest d. as old

الاجابة الصحيحة هي (b) لأن Zip lining أكثر خطورة من التزلج على الكابلات.	4
الاجابة الصحيحة هي (c) لأن ممارسة الرياضة أفضل من لعب الفيديو.	2
الاجابة الصحيحة هي (b) لأن والدي أكبر من عمي.	1
Answer + Explanation	NON

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطلاب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

- The museum is usually on Saturday than on Sunday.
a. crowded b. most crowded
c. more crowded d. the most crowded

2. **SB** Which bridge is the 6th October Bridge or the Qasr El Nil Bridge
a. long b. longest c. longer d. the longest
3. **SB** Mount Everest is _____ than Mount Kilimanjaro
a. high b. highest c. the highest d. higher

4. Ammar is a _____ player than Adel.
a. good b. best c. better d. bad
5. The old car is _____ than the new car.
a. noisy b. more noisy c. noisier d. noisiest
6. Cairo is bigger _____ Tanta.
a. than b. then c. as d. more

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

7. Books are _____ than computer games.
a. useful b. more useful c. useful as d. the useful
8. Today the weather is _____ yesterday.
a. as colder as b. as cold than c. coldest d. colder than
9. Yesterday was warm, but today is _____.
a. warmer than b. warmer c. warmest d. the warm
10. Gold is more expensive _____ silver.
a. thin b. then c. than d. this
11. The post office is _____ to my house than the park.
a. near b. nearest c. as near d. nearer

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطلاب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. **SB** The Pyramids of Giza are easy for tourists to visit than the Red Pyramid. (.....)
2. **SB** The Nile River is longest than the Amazon. (.....)
3. **WB** Adel is tall, but Rami is tallest. (.....)
4. He was good than his brother at playing football. (.....)

5. Osman is strong than Hassan. (.....)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. This car is very nice but that one is nicest. (.....)
7. Sara is most careful than Mona. (.....)
8. The new museum is far than the old museum. (.....)
9. Which place is most modern A or B? (.....)
10. The library is quieter then the funfair. (.....)

General Exercises



LESSONS 1 & 2

• Understand • Apply • Create

1. Complete the following dialogue :

Omar and Ali are talking about famous places around the world.

Omar : Can I ask you some questions ?

Ali : (1) _____

Omar : (2) _____ ?

Ali : The Great Pyramid is 146 metres high.

Omar : (3) _____ ?

Ali : About 37,500,000 people live in Tokyo.

Omar : What is the longest river in the world ?

Ali : (4) _____

Omar : Good !! I think you are very clever.

Ali : (5) _____

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Mount Everest is _____ mountain in the world.
a. high b. higher c. the highest d. highest
2. " _____ " is a tall, narrow building.
a. Pyramid b. Tower c. Tunnel d. City
3. The traffic is _____ in a city than in the countryside.
a. worse b. bad c. worst d. the worst
4. **SB** The Great Pyramid of Giza is _____ than the Red Pyramid.
a. tall b. taller c. tallest d. the tallest
5. The _____ in Cairo is very busy.
a. traffic b. food c. drink d. pollution
6. The policeman asked the woman to _____ the thief.
a. give b. deliver c. prove d. describe
7. How _____ people live in Cairo ? - More than 20 million people.
a. long b. many c. much d. deep

AltFreak.com موقع التوثيق

8

- 8. There are many visiting the museum today.
 - a. builders
 - b. engineers
 - c. tourists
 - d. animals
- 9. There were a lot of people in the market. It was very big.
 - a. quiet
 - b. crowded
 - c. clean
 - d. bigger
- 10. Which is longer the Nile or the Amazon? - The Nile.
 - a. taller
 - b. older
 - c. longer
 - d. higher

3 Read and correct the underlined words :

- The cinema is empty than the metro.
- Aswan is hot than Alexandria.
- Which building is tall the Cairo Tower or the Great Pyramid?
- She is beautiful than her cousin.

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Famous places in Egypt"



3 & 4



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

suspension bridge (n)	جسر معلق	view (n)	منظر طبيعي ، رؤية
sunset (n)	غروب الشمس	mountain climbing (n)	رياضة تسلق الجبال
ice skating (n)	تزلج على الجليد (باستخدام حذاء التزلج)	insect (n)	حشرة
skiing (n)	تزلج على الجليد (باستخدام لوح التزلج)	achievements (n)	إنجازات
		proud (adj)	معتز

تدريب Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها

5 min

Pop Quiz

تدريب تفقني يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

skiing - insect proud sunset view

- I am proud of my parents.
- People can practise skiing in very cold areas.
- The "bee" is a very useful insect.
- The view of the Nile during sunset is fantastic.

Lesson 3

SB pages 16 & 17 WB page 79

finally (adv)	أخيراً	Nile's Warraq Island	جزيرة الوراق في النيل
probably (adv)	من المحتمل	social studies (n)	مادة الدراسات الاجتماعية
protect (ed) (v)	يحمي	popular (adj)	مشهور
glass floor (n)	أرضية زجاجية	the express train (n)	المقطر السريع

Lesson 4

SB page 18 WB page 80

school subject (n)	مادة دراسية	price (n)	سعر / ثمن
holiday places (n)	أماكن لقضاء الإجازة	Dahab (n)	مدينة دهب السياحية (في جنوب سيناء)

TV show (n)	عرض تلفزيوني	sports club (n)	نادي رياضي
travels (n)	سفرات - رحلات	Etruscan shrew (n)	سحلية (حيوان يشبه الفأر)
right now (adv)	الآن		
politely (adv)	بأدب / بتهذيب		

Words and Opposites

Word	الكلمة	Opposite	العكس
dangerous	خطير	safe	آمن
agree	وافق	disagree	يرفض / يوافق

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتب لطلب وكتاب التدرجات ومجموعات التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدرجات.

Study these definitions

achievement	a result to be proud of	إنجاز
dangerous	able to cause harm; not safe	خطير
safe	not in a dangerous situation or position	آمن
sunset	the time when the sun disappears from the sky	غروب الشمس
suspension bridge	a long bridge that has thick metal wires to hold it up	جسر معلق
ugly	not nice to look at; not beautiful	قبيح

General Notes on Reading & Listening

- It takes / took + (وقت) + to + inf.
ex.: - It ~~took~~ five years to build the bridge.
 - It ~~takes~~ me half an hour to go home from school. (SB page 16)
- cross - across
 • cross (v)
ex.: - The bridge ~~crosses~~ the Nile's Warraq Island.
 • across (adv)
ex.: - It's the best time to walk ~~across~~ the bridge. (SB page 16)

3 proud of - proud to

- proud of + (inf. + ing) / (noun)
ex.: - He is **proud of** his uncle.
 - They are **proud of** being Egyptian teachers.
- proud to + inf.
ex.: - He is **proud to** be Egyptian.

4 afraid

- I'm afraid .. = I'm sorry ...
ex.: - A : Can you lend me your bike, please ?
 B : I'm **afraid**, I can't. I need it.
- afraid of = frightened of
ex.: - Rahma is **afraid of** dogs.

5 way

- way
ex.: - On my **way** to school, I met Mr Ali.
- way
ex.: - I don't like his **way** of thinking.
- No way
ex.: - A : Can you ride a bike ?
 B : What ? No **way** !

Important expressions & prepositions

the best time to	أفضل وقت لـ	I feel the same as you about that.	أشعر مثلك تمامًا تجاه ذلك
In my opinion	في رأيي	You are wrong !	أنت مخطئ !
It's Important to be polite.	من المهم أن تكون مهذب	the same size as	بنفس الحجم مثل
show on TV	عرض في التلفزيون	I don't have the same opinion.	ليس لدي نفس الرأي
What's your opinion of .. ?	ما رأيك في .. ؟	means of transport	أوسيلة مواصلات
live on the island	يعيش على الجزيرة	I'm not sure about that.	لنا غير متأكد من ذلك
disagree with someone	لا يتفق مع شخص		

Reading and Listening

الدرج على 18 من قطاع الأهم وخصوص السليم

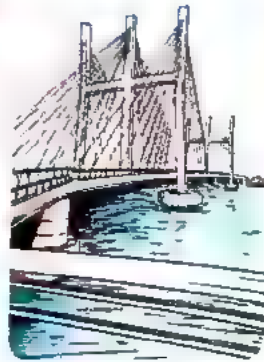
Reading

on Lesson 3 SB page 16

The Tahya Masr Bridge

The world's widest suspension bridge opened in Cairo in May 2019. It is 67.36 m wide and 540 m long.

More than 4,000 people helped to build it. They started building it in 2016. They finished it in 32 months. The bridge crosses⁽¹⁾ the Nile's Warraq Island⁽²⁾. More than 100,000 people live on the island.



Many people enjoy walking across⁽³⁾ the bridge. It has a glass floor⁽⁴⁾, so you can see the river under your feet! The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset⁽⁷⁾, for a beautiful view⁽⁵⁾ of the city.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Extracting information.

② Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Learn 1. The Tahya Masr Bridge was finished in about ...

- a. one year b. four years
c. two years d. three years

Practice 2. The best time to cross the bridge is at for a beautiful view of the city.

- a. sunrise b. morning
c. evening d. sunset

Important Expressions and Prepositions

- (1) جسر التعليق
(2) جزيرة وراق
(3) يعبر
(4) أرضية زجاجية
(5) منظر
(6) فوق الجزيرة
(7) غروب الشمس
(8) منظر طيب

استخراج معلومات

Listening

on Lesson 3 SB page 16

1

Voice: In front of us, you can see the world's widest suspension bridge! It opened in Cairo in May 2019. It is 67.36 metres wide and 540 metres long. More than 4,000 people helped to build it. They started building it in 2016 and they finally finished it 32 months later. The bridge crosses the Nile's Warraq Island. More than 100,000 people live on the island. Many people enjoy walking across the bridge. It has a glass floor, so you can see the river under your feet! The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset, for a beautiful view of the city.

2

- The express train⁽¹⁾ to Aswan is the fastest one.
- Cairo streets are the busiest in Egypt.
- Do you think that Tahya Masr Bridge will be the most popular place in Cairo in the future?
- Some people believe⁽²⁾ that buses inside Cairo are the least expensive means of transport⁽³⁾.
- This red smartphone⁽⁴⁾ is the most expensive one.
- I think Mohamed Salah is the best player in Egypt.

Check Vocabulary

1. القطار السريع 2. يعلق / يركب 3. وسائل المواصلات 4. الهاتف الذكي

Lesson 4 SB page 18

3

Girl 1: Which subject do you think is more difficult, English or science?

Girl 2: In my opinion⁽¹⁾, science is the most difficult of all.

Boy 1: I think Dahab has the most beautiful beach in Egypt. Do you?

Boy 2: I agree⁽²⁾. It's also the least crowded.



Important Expressions and prepositions

- هي رأيي (1) أوافقك الرأي (2)

Girl 3: What's your opinion of ice skating? Do you agree that it's more dangerous than mountain climbing?

Girl 4: I'm afraid I don't agree.

Boy 3: What do you think about the new TV show?

Boy 4: I think it's the funniest show on TV right now.

Important Expressions and prepositions

الشيء من عوض الشيء 4

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

- Egypt has made great in education. We are proud of that.
a. achievements b. islands c. pairs d. mistakes
- Mountain is the most dangerous sport at all.
a. watching b. climbing c. weighing d. skating
- There is a beautiful of the city from Cairo Tower.
a. review b. revision c. view d. preview

SB, WB and previous Exams

- The Tahya Masr Bridge is the world's widest bridge.
a. information b. suspension c. evaporation d. condensation

(El-Marg - New Cairo - Cairo 2022)

- Remember that it is important to be when you give your opinion.
a. cross b. impolite c. safe d. polite

- The bridge has a glass so you can see the river under your feet.

(Mulholland Highway - Everest - Ismailia 2022)

El-Moasser Exercises

- A honey bee is a/an that produces honey.
a. system b. animal c. insect d. achievement
- Most modern cars are They are not cheap.
a. narrow b. expensive c. empty d. ugly

- The bridge is 67.36 metres
a. wide b. width c. heavy d. old

Definitions

- The is the time when the sun disappears at the end of the day.
a. sunrise b. sunset c. sun cream d. sunshine
- means able to cause harm.
a. Dangerous b. Cheap c. Polite d. Safe
- means not nice to look at; not beautiful.
a. Beautiful b. Ugly c. Wide d. Long

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

- Many people enjoy walking the bridge in the evening.
a. cross b. across c. between d. next
- I disagree you. English is the most important subject.
a. of b. at c. to d. with
- I'm proud my father. He does his best to make us happy.
a. off b. from c. to d. of

2. Speaking

مشاركة التحدث

1. Talking about comparatives & superlatives:

التحدث عن المقارنة (بين اثنين في صفة) والتفصيل (المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين):

Stimulus	Response
<p>• Which city is older, Bangkok, the capital of Thailand or Brasilia, the capital of Brazil?</p> <p>أيهما أقدم مدينة بانكوك (عاصمة تايلاند) أو مدينة برازيليا (عاصمة البرازيل)؟</p>	<p>- Bangkok is older.</p> <p>مدينة بانكوك هي الأقدم</p>
<p>• Which subject do you think is the most difficult: English, science or Arabic?</p> <p>أي المواد الدراسية تعتقد أن تكون الأكثر صعوبة باللغة الإنجليزية أم العلوم أم اللغة العربية؟</p>	<p>- I think science is the most difficult of all.</p> <p>اعتقد مادة العلوم هي أكثر المواد صعوبة على الإطلاق.</p>

2. Giving opinions; agreeing and disagreeing : إعطاء الآراء بالموافقة وعدم الموافقة

Asking for opinions السؤال عن الرأي	Giving إعطاء الآراء
What is your opinion of / about ? ما رأيك في ؟	In my opinion, في رأيي أنا أعتقد
What do you think of / about ? ماذا تعتقد في / ما رأيك في ؟	I think / believe أعتقد / أؤمن
Do you agree that ? هل توافق أن ؟	- Yes, I agree. نعم . أوافق. - No, I don't agree. لا . أوافق.

Agreeing with someone الموافقة على الرأي مع شخص ما
Disagreeing with someone عدم الموافقة على الرأي مع شخص ما

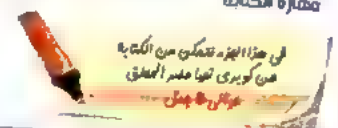
I agree. أوافق.	- I disagree. - I don't agree. - I'm afraid / I'm sorry, but أخشى / يؤسفني ولكن ... أوافق.
I think so. أعتقد ذلك	- I don't have the same opinion. ليس لدي نفس الرأي. - I don't feel the same as you about that. لا أشعر مثلك تمامًا بشأن ذلك. - I'm not sure about that. لست متأكدًا بشأن ذلك. أعتقد ذلك
That's what I think. هذا ما أعتقد.	- You are wrong! - What? No way! أنت مخطئ! ماذا؟ هذا مستحيل! نست متأكدًا بشأن ذلك.

3. Discussing your country's achievements : مناقشة إنجازات بلدك :

• How do you feel about your country's achievements? كيف تشعر تجاه إنجازات بلدك ؟	- I feel very proud. - It makes me happy. أشعر بالفخر الشديد. تجعلني أشعر بالسعادة.
• Do you want people from other countries to like and respect your country? هل تريد أن الأشخاص من الدول الأخرى تحب وتحترم بلدك ؟	- Of course / Yes, I do. نعم، بالطبع / نعم، أريد ذلك.
• What other Egyptian achievements are you proud of? ما هي الإنجازات المصرية الأخرى التي تكون فخورًا بها ؟	- I think the new Administrative Capital and Galala City projects. أعتقد مشروع العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة ومشروعات مدينة الجلالة

Writing

The Tahya Masr suspension Bridge
كوبرى تحيا مصر المعلق



1. It's the world's widest suspension bridge.
هو أكبر كوبرى معلق في العالم
2. It opened in Cairo in May 2019.
تم افتتاحه في القاهرة في مايو ٢٠١٩
3. The bridge crosses the Nile's Warraq Is and.
يمر الكوبرى فوق جزيرة الورق النيلية.
4. You can see a beautiful view of the city over the bridge.
يمكنك أن ترى منظر جنت المدينة من أعلى الكوبرى.
5. The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset.
الوقت الأفضل لعبور الكوبرى عند غروب الشمس

III Language

The Superlative of adjectives صفات التفضيل

We use superlative adjectives to compare more than two things.
نستخدم صفات التفضيل عند المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين.

1 Short adjectives الصفات القصيرة	2 Long adjectives الصفات الطويلة
• تتحول الصفات القصيرة إلى صيغة التفضيل كالتالي : 1. يضاف (the... + est) إلى الصفة القصيرة : - fast → the fastest - old → the oldest 2. يضاف (the... + st) إلى الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ (e) : - large → the largest - close → the closest	• تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلى صيغة التفضيل كالتالي : + الأقل / الأكثر the least / the most صفة adj. - the most/the least beautiful الأكثر / الأقل جمالا - the most/the least dangerous الأكثر / الأقل خطورة

١ يضاف الحرف الساكن الذكور إذا كان مسوفاً
يصوت متحرك قصير لم يضاف
إلى (the... + est)

- big → the biggest
- thin → the thinnest
- hot → the hottest
- fit → the fittest

٢ الصفات المنتهية بحرف الـ y تتحول إلى (che... + est)

- easy → the easiest
- happy → the happiest
- lazy → the laziest
- healthy → the healthiest

- ex. - This bridge is the longest one.
- Heba is the oldest student in her class.

- ex. - The whale is the most enormous animal.
- I think maths is the most difficult subject.
- This T-shirt is the least expensive one in the shop.

Irregular Comparative and Superlative Forms

١ صيغ المقارنة و التفضيل غير المنتظمة
٢ هناك بعض الصفات غير المنتظمة (تُحفظ كما هي) عند المقارنة بين اثنين أو المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين

1 Adj.	2 Comparative	3 Superlative
bad	worse than	the worst
far	farther than	the farthest
good	further than	the furthest
late	better than	the best
little	later than	the latest
many	less than	the last
much	more than	the least
		the most

A text with the superlative form (WB page 79)

You probably know that whales are the biggest animals in the world, but did you know that they are also the noisiest? A whale can hear another whale 160 km away. Did you know that the fastest animal in the world is a bird? It can fly at more than 300 km/h. Insects are the most dangerous animals in the world. They make more people ill than any other animal. Finally, the smallest land animal is the Etruscan shrew. It looks like a mouse and is the same size as a bee!

Check Vocabulary

نظف ١، نسي احمد ٢، بقية ٣، دابة التروسكان (حيوان يشبه الفأر) ٤، خرافات ٥، دوس

ملاحظات عامة على صفات التفضيل

١ لاحظ استخدام صفة التفضيل بدون (the) بعد الأعداد الترتيبية

(first/second/third/fourth ... etc.)

- ex. - Cairo is the first largest city in Africa.

٢ نستخدم (the) قبل التفضيل عندما يسبقها (s) الملكية أو صفة ملكية :

- my - his - her - your - our - their - its - ... 's

- ex. - Naguib Mahfouz is Egypt's best novelist.

- Is Ahmed your youngest brother?

٣ لاحظ استخدام حروف الجر (in - of) بعد صفات التفضيل :

(a) نستخدم (in) غالباً قبل الأماكن :

- ex. - He is the best player in the team.
- Everest is the highest mountain in the world.

(b) نستخدم (of) غالباً قبل الأشخاص :

- Sama is the cleverest of her sisters.

(c) نستخدم (of) قبل السنوات :

- The death of my uncle is the worst event of 2016.

Stop here! on Language (Answered & Explained)

في هذا الجزء نقدم الطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مع الجواب ومصحوب بشرح
السبب اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Who got the grades in your class?
a. better b. best c. worse d. more
- Which is , Egypt or England?
a. hot b. hottest c. hotter d. hotter than

Answer + Explanation	2	1
	q	p

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريب من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

- The world's suspension bridge opened in Cairo.
a. widest b. wide c. wider d. the widest
- Whales are animals in the world.
a. big b. bigger c. the biggest d. biggest
- Some people think that maths is subject of all.
a. difficult b. more difficult
c. most difficult d. the most difficult
- We bought house in the city. (11 Khalifa & Cairo 11 Mokattam 2022)
a. expensive b. more expensive than
c. as expensive d. the most expensive
- What is the town in your country? (11 Za'atou - Cairo 2022)
a. larger b. large c. largest d. more large

The amazing world around us

- Tennis is less popular football.
a. this b. than c. then d. that

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

- No one is taller than Ali. Ali is the boy in the class.
a. taller b. tallest c. tall d. tall as
- This is film I've ever seen.
a. boring b. as boring c. more boring d. the most boring
- Which city do you think is city in the world?
a. exciting b. more exciting
c. most exciting d. the most exciting
- I have the family in the world.
a. better b. best c. good d. well

2. Read and correct the underlined words:

SB, WB and previous Exams تدريب من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

- Cairo streets are busiest in Egypt. ()
- Tennis is least dangerous than football. ()
- What is the better place to play tennis near here? ()
- Insects are the more dangerous animals in the world. ()
- She is tall girl in our country. ()
- A plane is fast than a train. ()
- Sally is the shorter girl in the class. ()

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

- The blue car is most expensive car here. ()
- The Red Pyramid is the further monument in my city. ()
- She is the young daughter. ()

General Exercises

LESSONS 3 & 4

• Understand • Apply • Create

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع إلى معلق وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة (الطوبى السماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. Tahya Masr Bridge is the world's suspension bridge.
a. highest b. longest c. widest d. biggest
2. It opened in 2019.
a. May b. January c. March d. April
3. It's 67.36 metres ...
a. high b. tall c. wide d. long
4. The bridge crosses the Nile's Warraq ...
a. City b. Oasis c. Island d. Lake

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mountain climbing is the most ... sport. Many people may fall and die.
a. beautiful b. safe c. cheap d. dangerous
2. It's important to be polite when you ... your opinion.
a. make b. take c. give d. ask
3. I ... with you, you're completely right.
a. describe b. agree c. cross d. disagree
4. This is the ... company in the world. (Zena Al Zaharna 2022)
a. more big b. biggest c. bigger d. big
5. Ahmed is ... intelligent than Samy. (El Rahmani u Beheira 2022)
a. as b. most c. more d. least
6. Many people enjoy walking on the glass ... of Tahya Masr Bridge. (Harshout Qena 2022)
a. flower b. flour c. floor d. fire
7. Are you proud ... be Egyptian?
a. of b. at c. to d. with
8. My youngest brother looks ... my dad.
a. like b. angry c. some d. alike

The amazing world around us

9. What's your ... of doing a sport every week?
a. dream b. thought c. opinion d. think

10. We must ... our environment.
a. fall b. lose c. protect d. damage

3. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. What's the more difficult subject at school? ()
2. How much people helped to build the bridge? ()
3. Salma is the more active girl. ()
4. He is good at English than me. ()

4. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on: ...
"The Tahya Masr Bridge"



A week is enough



مراجعة المنهج بالكامل والتمكن

منه في أسبوع واحد فقط

المعاصر في

اللغة الإنجليزية

أمنح نفسك لمن يستحق

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

variable (adj)	غالي دو قيمة	fountain (n)	نافورة
competition (n)	مسابقة / منافسة	hieroglyphics (n)	الكتابة الهيروغليفية
public (adj)	عام	treasure (n)	كنز
guidebook (n)	كتاب إرشادي	display (ed) (v), (n)	يعرض - معرض
collection (n)	مجموعة	entrance (n)	مدخل
column (n)	عمود	motorbike (n)	دراجة بخارية
design (ed) (v), (n)	يصمم / تصميم	century (n)	قرن (100 عام)

تنويه: Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها

5

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

competition - entrance - valuable - fountain - columns

- I searched for the _____ to get in the museum.
- I want to take part in the school _____ for poetry.
- Gold is an expensive material because it's _____.
- The _____ of my house are strong. They carry the roof.

Lesson 5

SB page 15 WB page 81

statue (n)	تمثال	city centre (n)	وسط المدينة
square (n)	مربع (الشكل)	objects (n)	أشياء
article (n)	مقال	move (d) (v)	ينقل / ينتقل
space (n)	مساحة / فراغ	plan (ned) (v), (n)	يخطط / خطة
welcome (d) (v)	يرحب	glass room (n)	غرفة زجاجية

Famous places and monuments

اماكن واثار مشهورة

the Grand Egyptian Museum (n)	المتحف المصري الكبير	The Valley of the Kings (n)	وادي الملوك
Karnak Temple (n)	معبد الكرنك	Rosetta Stone (n)	حجر رشيد
Habu Temple (n)	معبد حابو	Ramses II Statue	تمثال رمسيس الثاني
The Great Court (n)	الساحة الكبرى	the British Museum	المتحف البريطاني
Hypostyle Hall (n)	قاعة هيوسثيل	Al Azhar Park (n)	حديقة الأزهر

Lesson 6

SB page 20 WB page 82

website review (n)	مقال نقدي على موقع إلكتروني	writer (n)	كاتب
stone (adj), (n)	حجري - حجر	prefer (red) (v)	يفضل
parks (n)	حدائق (عامة)	café (n)	مقهى
		lake (n)	بحيرة

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المصارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
write يكتب	wrote	written
put يضع	put	put
spend يقضي	spent	spent
choose يختار	chose	chosen

Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite العكس
different مختلف	similar متشابه
famous مشهور	unknown غير معروف
top قمة	bottom قاع
stronger أقوى	weaker أضعف
near قريب	far بعيد

تنويه: هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

column	a tall structure that holds up part of a building	عمود
competition	an event, often followed by a prize, in which people try to be the best at something	مسابقة / منافسة

entrance	the way into a building, such as a door or gate	مدخل
museum	a building to keep and display important objects from the past	متحف
treasure	a quantity of valuable metals, jewels, etc.	كنز

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 space

• space

- There is no **space** for me here. The room is crowded.

• space

- My little brother dreams of travelling into **space**.

2 design

• design (v)

- My elder brother **designed** a machine for making coffee.

• design (n)

- There are about 1,557 **designs** from different countries.

3 on display = on show

ex: - Many statues are **on display** in the museum.

4 similar to / the same as

• similar to

- Salma is **similar to** her mother.

• the same (as)

- They are twins. They are **the same**.

- Hoda is **the same as** Nouran.

5 reason

• reason (for) + [inf. + ing] / noun

- What's the **reason** for coming late?

• reason why + فعل + فعل

- Tell me the **reason why** you have come late.

Important expressions & prepositions

one of the ..	واحد من	In the twenty-first century	في القرن الواحد والعشرين
refer to	يشير إلى	have a wonderful holiday	بفضل اجرة رائعة
get busier	يزداد ازدحاما / يشغل أكثر	for longer	لمدة أطول
space for	مساحة لـ	my favourite part	جزئي المفضل
(be) able to + (inf.)	قادر على	the main idea of	الفكرة الرئيسية لـ
a collection of	مجموعة من	show opin on	يعرض رأي
allow to + inf.	يسمح بـ	for the first time	لأول مرة
at the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	part of	جزء من
during the day	أثناء اليوم	spend a lot of time	بفضل وقتا طويلا
5,000 - square - metre room	حجرة مساحتها ٥٠٠٠ متر مربع	It is expected to ...	من المتوقع أن ..
special about	مميز في		

Skills

Reading and Listening

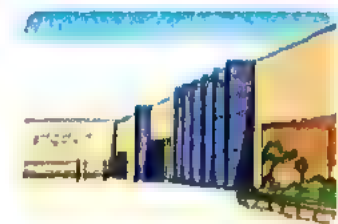
Pop Quiz
أجرب على 10 من قطع الفهم وبخصوص الاستماع

Reading

• on Lesson 5 SB page 19

The Grand Egyptian Museum

1. The oldest museum in Cairo opened in 1835. There were more than 160,000 of Egypt's most **valuable** **treasures** **on display**. However, the museum did not have **space** for 100,000 other **objects**. In 2002, there was a **competition** to **design** a bigger and more modern museum. The competition had 1,557 designs from more than 80 different countries.



Check Vocabulary

يقيم (١) ، متحف (٢) ، المساحة (٣) ، القيمة (٤) ، التصميم (٥) ، المعرض (٦) ، القاهرة (٧) ، ذو قيمة (٨)

AltFuski.com موقع التوظيف

- The Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM) welcomed⁽⁸⁾ its first visitors⁽⁹⁾ in 2019. It is farther from the city centre⁽¹⁰⁾ than the old museum, but only two kilometres from the Pyramids at Giza. It has more space for valuable objects, more people can see them and it is able to look after⁽¹¹⁾ the objects really well.
- One of the most beautiful parts of the museum is the entrance⁽¹²⁾, with its big plants⁽¹³⁾ and statues⁽¹⁴⁾. The biggest statue is that of Ramses II, which is 12-metres high.
- Moving these objects from the old museum in Tahrir to the Grand Egyptian Museum is not easy. It is expected to take many years of hard work.

Check Vocabulary

1. يرحب 2. زائر 3. أبعد 4. مركز المدينة 5. يفتتح 6. مركز 7. نباتات 8. مدخل 9. تماثيل 10. المركز 11. يفتتح 12. مدخل 13. نباتات 14. تماثيل

on Lesson 6 SB page 20

We had a wonderful holiday⁽¹⁾ in Egypt. These are my opinions about three of the most interesting places. The Valley of the Kings⁽²⁾ in Luxor is one of the most popular places⁽³⁾ for tourists⁽⁴⁾ to visit. We went early because that is the quietest time. My brother said, "This is fantastic⁽⁵⁾!" I am sure it gets busier⁽⁶⁾ later on during⁽⁷⁾ the day.



The biggest place we went to was the Karnak Temple⁽⁸⁾. My favourite part was the Hypostyle Hall⁽⁹⁾, a 5,000-square-metre "room" with 134 stone columns⁽¹⁰⁾. I think it was more crowded than the Valley of the Kings.



In my opinion, the best and quietest place we visited was Habu Temple⁽¹¹⁾. It has columns similar to⁽¹²⁾ those at Karnak, but because it is less crowded, you can study them for longer.



Check Vocabulary

1. عطلتنا 2. وادي الملوك 3. أماكن مشهورة 4. سياح 5. رائع 6. مزدحم 7. خلال 8. معبد 9. قاعة / بهو 10. أعمدة حجرية 11. معبد حابو 12. مشابه لـ

on Lesson 5 WB page 81

The British Museum

- The British Museum⁽¹⁾ in London is the oldest public⁽²⁾ museum in the world. It opened in 1759 and now has more than 13 million objects. About six million visitors go there every year.
- The museum has the biggest collection⁽³⁾ of Egyptian objects outside Egypt. One of its most important objects is the Rosetta Stone⁽⁴⁾. This arrived at the museum in 1802. The writing on the stone is in three different languages. This allowed⁽⁵⁾ people to understand ancient Egyptian hieroglyphics⁽⁶⁾ for the first time.
- In my opinion, the most beautiful part of the museum is the Great Court⁽⁷⁾. Its big glass room makes it the largest covered square in Europe. It opened in 2000 so it is also the most modern part of the museum.



Check Vocabulary

1. المتحف البريطاني 2. عام 3. مجموعة 4. حجر رشيد 5. سمح 6. لغة الهيروغليفية 7. الساحة الكبيرة

Critical thinking skill.

Learn

1. Why do you think the Rosetta stone was very important?
- Because it allowed people to understand ancient Egyptian hieroglyphics for the first time.

Answer

the following questions:

Practise

2. Why do you think the British Museum in London is the oldest public museum in the world?

on Lesson 6 WB page 82

Al Azhar Park⁽¹⁾ is the largest and most beautiful park in Cairo. It is much larger than the small park near my house. That park has a few trees and plants and I enjoy going there after school. You can spend an hour or two in that park, but you can spend a lot of time at Al Azhar Park.



Check Vocabulary

جديقة العز

The trees there are taller and it has more plants. It also has a lake and a lake and too I like going there because there is a big family to have a big at the weekends! My sister always says, "I love it here!"

Check Vocabulary

البحر - البحر - البحر - البحر

Videoscript on Lesson 6 SB page 20

Do you know about the seven wonders of the ancient world? People thought that they were the most fantastic buildings in the world. Many of them were in or near Egypt.

For many centuries, this Lighthouse of Alexandria was the tallest building ever made.

The sea was dangerous for boats because there were a lot of rocks near Alexandria. The lighthouse warned boats about the rocks. This was a very important invention.

We use similar technology today. We still use lighthouses to warn boats about rocks. Boats are safer now, thanks to the work of the ancient Egyptians.

The hanging Gardens of Babylon were probably in modern day Iraq.

These were beautiful gardens around a huge palace.

The Statue of Zeus was in ancient Greece. This was believed to be the biggest statue in the world. Another wonder of the world was the Colossus of Rhodes. This was another big statue in ancient Greece.

The Ancient Greeks also built the Temple of Artemis... and the Tomb of Mausolus.

Time and earthquakes destroyed most of these wonders of the world. After an earthquake in Alexandria, they built Fort Qaitbay at the same place as the Lighthouse of Alexandria and used many stones from the same building.

Today, only the Great Pyramid of Giza remains. Experts believe that this was the first ancient wonder because it is older than the others.

Every year, millions of people come to see the Pyramids of Egypt. They are some of the most visited tourist attractions anywhere.

For many people, the Great Pyramid of Giza is also a wonder of the modern world.

Which building do you like the best? Why?

Check Vocabulary

البحر - البحر - البحر - البحر

SB on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

- There are valuable in the Egyptian Museum.
a. centuries b. plans c. treasures d. picnics
- Al Azhar Park is a/an place.
a. unknown b. private c. stone d. public
- We give tourists a to help them know the famous places to visit.
a. plane b. guidebook c. flag d. review
- Museums help us to our historical objects for other people.
a. play b. apply c. display d. pay

SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

- The Grand Egyptian Museum its first visitors in 2019.
a. came b. left c. hit d. welcomed
- Ramses II is the biggest stone in the museum.
a. entrance b. space c. article d. statue
- The old museum didn't have for 100,000 ancient objects.
a. spice b. space c. time d. treasure

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات ألعاب المعاصر

- The kind woman made a in her garden to let the birds drink clean water.
a. gate b. fence c. fountain d. entrance
- I read good about the new film on the internet.
a. viewers b. interviews c. reviews d. reasons
- "Famous" is the opposite of "
a. dangerous b. crowded c. unknown d. modern

Definitions تعريفات

11. A/An _____ is the way into a building, such as a door or gate.
a. display b. column c. entrance d. century
12. The _____ is a building to keep and display important objects from the past.
a. park b. museum c. hospital d. garden

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. What is the _____ for your coming late?
a. season b. reason c. cause d. expression
14. The teacher allowed us _____ have our breakfast.
a. to b. from c. in d. at
15. Tell me the reason _____ you were absent yesterday.
a. why b. where c. when d. how

2. Speaking

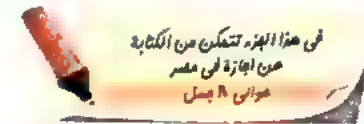
Asking and answering questions about museums :

أسئلة من المتاحف والإجابة عليها :

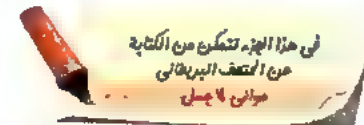
Questions ؟	Answers ✓
• Why do we have museums ? لماذا لدينا متاحف ؟	• We have museums to protect historical objects. لدينا متاحف لكي نحمي القطع الأثرية التاريخية
• Who is your favourite historical character ? من هي شخصيتك التاريخية المفضلة ؟	• My favourite historical character is Ramses II. شخصيتي التاريخية المفضلة هو رمسيس الثاني.
• What objects are in the museum ? ما هي الأثار الموجودة في المتحف ؟	• Statues and valuable treasures. التمائيل والكنوز القيمة.
• What do you think about the Karnak Temple ? ما رأيك في معبد الكرنك ؟	• I think it is fantastic but more crowded than the Valley of the Kings. أعتقد أنه رائع ولكنه أكثر ازدحاماً من وادي الملوك.
• When should we go to the museum ? متى يجب علينا أن نذهب إلى المتحف ؟	• We should go there early because that is the quietest time. علينا أن نذهب إلى هناك مبكراً لأنه أكثر الأوقات هدوءاً

Writing

مهارة الكتابة

A holiday in Egypt
أجازة في مصر

1. I went to Egypt to spend my holiday. ١. ذهبت إلى مصر لقضاء عطلة.
2. My family and I went to the Egyptian Museum. ٢. أنا وعائلتي ذهبنا إلى المتحف المصري.
3. We saw statues and treasures. ٣. لقد رأينا تماثيل وكنوز.
4. We went to Luxor and visited the Valley of the kings. ٤. ذهبنا إلى الأقصر وقمنا بزيارة وادي الملوك.
5. The Karnak Temple was really crowded. ٥. معبد الكرنك كان مزدحماً حقاً.
6. Habu Temple has many columns. ٦. معبد حابو لديه الكثير من الأعمدة.
7. Egypt has a long and ancient history. ٧. مصر لديها تاريخ طويل وقديم.
8. It was a great holiday. ٨. لقد كانت أجازة رائعة.

The British Museum
المتحف البريطاني

1. The British Museum is in London. ١. يوجد المتحف البريطاني في مدينة لندن.
2. It is the oldest public museum in the world. ٢. هو أقدم متحف علم في العالم.
3. It opened in 1759. ٣. فتح المتحف أبوابه سنة ١٧٥٩.
4. It has more than 13 million objects. ٤. يوجد به أكثر من ١٣ مليون قطعة فنية.
5. About six million visitors go there every year. ٥. حوالي ١٣ مليون زائر يذهب إليه سنوياً.
6. One of the most important objects is the Rosetta Stone. ٦. حجر رشيد هو أحد أهم القطعة الفنية في المتحف.
7. In my opinion, the most beautiful part of the museum is the Great Court. ٧. أحد أجمل الأجزاء في المتحف من رأيي هو الساحة الكبيرة.

General Exercises

LESSONS 5 & 6

• Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع إلى معلك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة من بين الخيارات

- The Valley of the _____ is in Luxor.
a. Queens b. Kings c. Pupils d. People
- It is one of the most popular places for _____ to visit.
a. tourists b. farmers c. engineers d. architects
- We went early because that is the _____ time.
a. busiest b. quietest c. cleanest d. noisiest
- It gets busier _____.
a. soon b. earlier c. later d. late

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- _____ was the language of the ancient Egyptians.
a. Spanish b. English c. Arabic d. Hieroglyphics
- The museum has more than 13 million _____.
a. people b. objects c. mountains d. fountains
- 5 In 2002, there was a _____ to design a bigger and more modern museum.
a. competition b. race c. composition d. park
- 4 A _____ is a book that gives tourists information about a place.
a. guidebook b. notebook c. magazine d. newspaper
- 5 You should wear a helmet when you ride a _____.
a. bus b. ferry c. motorbike d. car
- 6 3 My uncle is the _____ person in my family. No one is older than him.
a. youngest b. tallest c. oldest d. deepest
- 7 There are many _____ objects in the museum.
a. dirty b. valuable c. cheap d. ugly
- 8 This lesson is the _____ one.
a. difficult b. most difficult c. more difficult d. as difficult

The amazing world around us

- This problem is easy. It's the _____ one I've ever solved.
a. easiest b. easier c. more easy d. easy
- Everest is _____ mountain in the world.
a. high b. the highest c. higher d. as higher

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

- 5 The Karnak Temple is most crowded than the Valley of the Kings. ()
- WB Trains are fast than cars. ()
- Luxor is the better place to visit in winter. ()
- We went early because that is the quieter time. ()

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on: _____

"The Grand Egyptian Museum"



Vocabulary	Language	Speaking
suspension bridge tower tunnel desert road forest crowded population sunset ice skating view achievements proud opinion glass floor museum entrance treasure historical column statue	<p>1- Comparative adjectives: المقارنة بين اثنين - A dog is bigger than a cat. more/less + adjective + than - English is more interesting than history.</p> <p>2- Superlative adjectives: المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين the + adjective + est The elephant is the biggest land animal. the most / least + adjective This T-shirt is the most expensive one in the shop.</p>	<p>1. Talking about measurements - How long is the Cairo-Alexandria Desert Road? It's 220 km long.</p> <p>2. Talking about comparatives. - Which pyramid is taller, the Great Pyramid or the Red Pyramid? - I think the Great Pyramid is taller.</p> <p>3. Asking for & giving opinions - What's your opinion about the film? - Do you agree that the match is boring? - I agree. / I don't agree.</p>

Speaking

تعتمد معارة التحدث مع الآخرين بشكل أساسي على تكوين أسئلة ومعرفة كيفية الرد عليها.

Stimulus	Response	نموذج الاستجابة
1. How long is the Cairo-Alexandria Desert Road?	- It's about 220 kilometers long.	السؤال عن الطول بالكيلو
2. How deep is Lake Baikal in Russia?	- It's 1,642 m deep under the water.	السؤال عن العمق
3. Which pyramid is taller, the Great Pyramid of Giza or the Red Pyramid?	- I think the Great Pyramid of Giza is taller.	السؤال عن الاختيار (بين شيئين)
4. Which subject do you think is the most difficult English, science or Arabic?	- In my opinion, science is the most difficult of all.	السؤال عن الاختيار
5. How do you feel about your country's achievements?	- I feel very proud.	السؤال عن المشاعر
6. What is your opinion about Ancient Egypt?	- I think Ancient Egypt had a fantastic history.	السؤال عن الرأي
7. What objects are there in the museum?	- There are many statues and valuable treasures.	السؤال عن الأشياء الموجودة في المتاحف
8. When should we go to the museum?	- We should go there early because that is the quietest time.	السؤال عن أفضل وقت للذهاب إلى المتاحف

مهارات الكتابة

2 Writing Skill

المعلم مهارات الكتابة من المعارف الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة، قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على حل سؤال الفقرة الإلهامية في الورقة الإمتحانية (٩٩ جملة)

1 Tahya Masr Bridge

The world's widest suspension bridge opened in Cairo in May 2019⁽¹⁾. It is 67.36 m wide and 540 m long⁽²⁾. More than 4000 people helped to build it⁽³⁾. They started building it in 2016⁽⁴⁾. They finished it in 32 months⁽⁵⁾. The bridge crosses the Nile Warraq Island⁽⁶⁾. More than 100,000 people live on the island. Many people enjoy walking across the bridge⁽⁸⁾. It has a glass floor, so you can see the river under your feet⁽⁹⁾. The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset to have a beautiful view of the city⁽¹⁰⁾.

2 The Grand Egyptian Museum

There was a competition in 2002 to design a bigger and more modern museum⁽¹¹⁾. The competition had 1,557 designs from more than 80 different countries⁽¹²⁾. The Grand Egyptian Museum welcomed its first visitors in 2019⁽¹³⁾. It is farther from the city centre than the old museum⁽⁴⁾. However it is two kilometres from the Pyramids at Giza⁽¹⁵⁾. It has more space for valuable objects, so more people can see valuable objects there⁽¹⁶⁾. It is able to look after the objects really well⁽¹⁷⁾.

3 Al Azhar Park

Al Azhar Park is the largest and most beautiful park in Cairo⁽¹⁸⁾. You can spend a lot of time at Al Azhar Park⁽¹⁹⁾. There are tall trees and plants⁽²⁰⁾. It also has fountains, a lake and cafés, too⁽²¹⁾. I like going there because there is space for all our family to have a big picnic at the weekends⁽²²⁾.

4 A wonderful holiday

Last month, we had a wonderful holiday⁽²³⁾. We went to Luxor⁽²⁴⁾. We visited the most interesting places in Luxor⁽²⁵⁾. We went to the Valley of the Kings⁽²⁶⁾. It is one of the most popular places to visit in Luxor⁽²⁷⁾. Also we visited the Karnak Temple⁽²⁸⁾. It was my best holiday⁽²⁹⁾.

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع إلى مكالمة وختار الإجابة الصحيحة (انصت للاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)



- When did the British Museum open? - In
a. 1777 b. 1999 c. 1759 d. 1888
- How many visitors go there every year?
a. 600 b. 6,000 c. 60,000 d. 6,000,000
- Where is the British Museum? - In
a. London b. Cairo c. Bristol d. Paris
- How many objects does it have?
a. 13 billion b. 13 million c. 13 hundred d. 13 thousand

And Super Shakes 2022

B. Language Function

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Fadi and Helmy are talking about Tahya Masr Bridge.

Fadi : Where did you go last week?

Helmy : (1)

Fadi : Where is Tahya Masr Bridge?

Helmy : (2)

Fadi : (3)

Helmy : No, it isn't old. It is new.

Fadi : (4)

Helmy : It opened in 2019.

Fadi : What is its floor made of?

Helmy : (5)

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

We have a lot of great projects and achievements in Egypt so we should be proud of our great country. One of the newest and greatest achievements is the Tahya Masr Bridge. It's the world's widest suspension bridge. More than 40,000 people helped to build it.

Work began in May 2016. It opened in May 2019. It is 67.36 m wide. It's 540 m long. It crosses the Nile's Warraq Island. More than 100,000 people live on the island. Many people enjoy walking across the bridge. It has a glass floor, so you can see the river under your feet. The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset, for a beautiful view of the city. It's really a great project.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined word "It" refers to
a. The bridge b. Warraq c. Egypt d. Helwan
- The bridge has a _____ floor.
a. plastic b. stone c. brick d. glass
- More than 100,000 people live on the Nile's _____ Island.
a. Wardan b. Warraq c. Dahab d. Helwan

(Bilal & Dukhila 2022)

b. Answer the following questions:

- Give a suitable title for this passage.
- When is the best time to cross the bridge?
- Why do you think we should be proud of Egypt?

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The Tahya Mass _____ goes over the Nile in Cairo. (F) (Borhan & Ghazi 2022)
a. Pyramid b. Tunnel c. Tower d. Bridge
- Cairo streets are very _____. It takes a long time to go to any place.
a. easy b. far c. crowded d. high
- It's a/an _____ scene / مشهد to have all this rubbish in the street.
a. cheerful b. exciting c. wonderful d. ugly

- "_____." means without making much noise; not noisy.
a. Quite b. Quiet c. Tunnel d. Crowded
- You can put all these books on the desk. There's enough _____.
a. wood b. money c. space d. time
- The museum has a lot of valuable _____.
a. numbers b. competitions c. pyramids d. treasures
- The bridge was built on stone _____ to stay strong.
a. shows b. valleys c. columns d. lines
- Toka is _____ than Rokaya.
a. quiet b. quieter c. quietest d. more quieter
- I think Siwa is _____ place in Egypt.
a. nice b. nicer c. nicest d. the nicest
- I think science is _____ maths. (Hilwa & Shukri 2022)
a. easy b. easier c. easiest d. easier than

5. Read and correct the underlined word:

- Mount Everest is high than Mount Kilimanjaro. (_____)
- SB The Nile is long river in the world. (_____)
- WB Which building is the older? (_____)
- Who is tal.est, Nabil or your brother? (_____)

E. Writing

6. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on: موقع التتوق في مدينة القاهرة

"A wonderful holiday"

الموقع التتوق ALT Fwdk.com

Stop here !

1. Mini-Test on unit 8 for Al-Azhar students

اختبار مصغر لطالب الأزهر الشريف

1. Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-tests :

A. Ahmed : Which subject do you think is more exciting, science or maths ?

Hafez :

B. Soha :

Mai : Luxor Temple is just under 3500 years old.

2. Write a paragraph of five sentences about :

"The Grand Egyptian Museum"

2. Use your brain, think smart

طبق ما تعلمته واختبر ذكائك

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- What is the new metro line ?
a. wide b. higher c. length d. long
- Doing a research is the best to know more information.
a. away b. way c. road d. line
- Dr Magdy Yacoub is one of Egypt's heart surgeons.
a. the best b. better c. better than d. best
- Tell me the reason for late.
a. coming b. come c. came d. comes
- He isn't tall enough., he is good at basketball.
a. So b. Because c. However d. When

Quiz

on units

7 & 8

اختبار تراكمي على الوحدات (٧ و ٨)

- يقوم المعلم باختيار اختبار مصغر (واحد) من (A) or (B) لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمعلومات الواردة في الوحدات

Model A

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- We a fantastic weekend in the museum.
a. made b. did c. had d. moved
- Brasilia is a city.
a. few modern b. modern as c. most modern d. modern
- You can go through the to travel to the other side.
a. road b. tunnel c. bridge d. tower
- The Tahya Masr Bridge the Nile's Warraq Island.
a. crosses b. believes c. opens d. cuts
- She frightened of the clowns at the circus yesterday.
a. is b. were c. did d. was



Model B

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Al Azhar Park is park in Cairo.
a. more beautiful b. the most beautiful
c. least beautiful d. less beautiful
- The ship because there was a terrible storm.
a. arrived b. found c. sank d. dead
- I didn't like the pizza it was fresh.
a. because b. although c. so d. and
- How is the Cairo Tower ?
a. deep b. long c. age d. tall
- You can go to the to learn more about sea animals.
a. alley b. planetarium c. sports centre d. aquarium



UNIT

9

Adventure

موقع
التفوق
ALTFwok

Objectives

- Reading :
Holiday plans; a postcard; Around the World in 80 Days
- Writing :
A paragraph about an adventure sport;
an email planning a trip
- Listening :
Discussing adventure sports; a game;
a presentation about a trip to the desert;
a conversation about choosing activities
- Speaking :
Discussing activities and travel plans; describing the weather
- Language :
going to / for plans; reflexive pronouns
- Life Skills :
Negotiating; respect the opinions of others

- العلامة (1) تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب
- العلامة (2) تسبق أسئلة كتاب التلميذات
- تدريبات لطلاب الزهر الشريف مع نهاية كل وحدة والمعلم
- اختبارات شخصية داخل كتاب المدرس
- جزء للمراجعة اليومية وإسكان المفردات اللغوية (التسوية) مع نهاية كتاب

1 & 2

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

water sport (n)	رياضة مائية	sailing (n)	البحار
mountain sport (n)	رياضة جبلية	kayaking (n)	رياضة التجديف بالزورق
adventure (n)	مغامرة	rock climbing (n)	رياضة تسلق الصخور
guide (n)	مرشد	zip lining (n)	رياضة التزللق بالجدال
experience (n)	تجربة حياتية - خبرة	windsurfing (n)	رياضة ركوب الأمواج
diving (n)	الغطس	tent (n)	خيمة
mountain biking (n)	رياضة ركوب الدراجات على الجبال	trekking (n)	الترتجال / الترحال
			(رياضة السير على الأقدام لمسافات طويلة)

• **Key Vocabulary** هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.

5 min

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

climbing - tent - water - trekking - diving

1. Going in the mountains is my favourite hobby.
2. I'm good at swimming under water with equipment, so I like
3. The Red Sea coast is full of sports.
4. Rock is the most dangerous sport.

Famous places

أماكن مشهورة

Mount Catherine	جبل سانت كاترين	Serabit el Khadem	منطقة سرباط الخادم
Sinai	سيناء	Ein Kidd	منطقة عين كيد
Dahab	مدينة دهب	the Red Sea	البحر الأحمر
Ras Shetan	منطقة رأس شيطان		

Lesson

SB pages 22&23 WB page 84

How high ... ?

كم ارتفاع

scary (adj)

مخيف - مرعب

1. to go on a holiday (to go on a vacation)
 1. to go on a holiday (to go on a vacation)
 2. to go on a holiday (to go on a vacation)
 3. to go on a holiday (to go on a vacation)
 4. to go on a holiday (to go on a vacation)
 5. to go on a holiday (to go on a vacation)
 6. to go on a holiday (to go on a vacation)
 7. to go on a holiday (to go on a vacation)
 8. to go on a holiday (to go on a vacation)
 9. to go on a holiday (to go on a vacation)
 10. to go on a holiday (to go on a vacation)

How to write the date

No. 1
 1st March
 2nd March
 3rd March
 4th March
 5th March
 6th March
 7th March
 8th March
 9th March
 10th March
 11th March
 12th March
 13th March
 14th March
 15th March
 16th March
 17th March
 18th March
 19th March
 20th March
 21st March
 22nd March
 23rd March
 24th March
 25th March
 26th March
 27th March
 28th March
 29th March
 30th March
 31st March

Study these definitions

diving
 a sport where a swimmer goes deep under water to look at fish, sea animals, etc.
 (diving)

1. to go on a holiday (to go on a vacation)
 1. to go on a holiday (to go on a vacation)
 2. to go on a holiday (to go on a vacation)
 3. to go on a holiday (to go on a vacation)
 4. to go on a holiday (to go on a vacation)
 5. to go on a holiday (to go on a vacation)
 6. to go on a holiday (to go on a vacation)
 7. to go on a holiday (to go on a vacation)
 8. to go on a holiday (to go on a vacation)
 9. to go on a holiday (to go on a vacation)
 10. to go on a holiday (to go on a vacation)

Ordinal Numbers

1 st first	12 th twelfth	23 rd twenty-third
2 nd second	13 th thirteenth	24 th twenty-fourth
3 rd third	14 th fourteenth	25 th twenty-fifth
4 th fourth	15 th fifteenth	26 th twenty-sixth
5 th fifth	16 th sixteenth	27 th twenty-seventh
6 th sixth	17 th seventeenth	28 th twenty-eighth
7 th seventh	18 th eighteenth	29 th twenty-ninth
8 th eighth	19 th nineteenth	30 th thirtieth
9 th ninth	20 th twentieth	31 st thirty-first
10 th tenth	21 st twenty-first	
11 th eleventh	22 nd twenty-second	

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 • m + (month, year)

ex: His journey is going to start in April.

• on + date

ex: He is going to visit Ras Shetan 14th March.

• on + days of the week

ex: We don't go to school on Friday.

2 Compound nouns

• water sport رياضة مائية

• team sport رياضة جماعية

• mountain sport رياضة جبلية

• school library مكتبة مدرسية

• football match مباراة كرة قدم

• shoe shop محل أحذية

3 scary - scared

• scary = frightening

ex: Mountain biking looks scary.

• scared = afraid = frightened

ex: Basem was scared when he saw the snake.

4

• لاحظ الأفعال الآتية واستخدمها مع الرياضات والنشطة حسب

play	do	go
football	karate	swimming
basketball	boxing	windsurfing
tennis	judo	diving
volleyball		trekking
squash		

5 help + فعل + to + فعل

ex: I'm going to have a guide to help me find / to find the way.

6 arrive in / arrive at

• arrive in + مكان كبير (بشكل عام)

• She arrived in Cairo at 7 p.m.

• arrive at + مكان صغير (محدد)

• He arrived at school late.

Important expressions & prepositions

look scary يبدو مخيفاً

took fun يبدو ممتعاً

so much to do الكثير لافعل

arrive on يصل في (تاريخ)

travel from يسافر من (مكان)

leave on يغادر في (تاريخ)

plan for the future يخطط للمستقبل

do anything scary يفعل أي شيء مخيف

come home on يعود إلى المنزل في (تاريخ)

travel home by يسافر إلى وطنه بواسطة

I'd love to ... أود أن

wake up in a tent يستيقظ في خيمة

try rock climbing يجرب رياضة تسلق الصخور

across Sinai عبر سيناء

across the desert عبر الصحراء

stay with يقيم مع

help me find the way يساعدني في إيجاد الطريق

take me 43 days يستغرق مني ثلاثة وأربعين يوماً

get the best ideas يحصل على أفضل أفكار

See you then أراك في ذلك الوقت

there is no time لا يوجد وقت كاف

sleep in a tent ينام في خيمة

the best place to shop أفضل مكان للتسوق

sleep by a pool ينام بجانب حمام سباحة

II

Skills

1 Reading and Listening

تدرب على 10 من قطع الفهم وخصوص الاستماع

Pop Quiz

Listening

• on Lesson 1 SB page 23

1 Imad : What are you looking at, Hassan ?

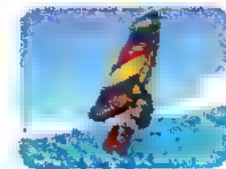
Hassan : Hi Imad. It's an article ¹ about adventure sports ² in Egypt.

Imad : Oh yes! Last year, I went diving ³ in the Red Sea. It was amazing ⁴!

Hassan : I'd love to do that. I'd like to try windsurfing ⁵, too.

Imad : What about rock climbing ⁶?

Hassan : I don't know. I think rock climbing is a bit dangerous ⁷, but I like trekking in the mountains.



Check Vocabulary

خطر شديد • تسلق الصخور • رياضة ركوب الموج • مدهش • الغطس • رياضات المغامرة • مثل 1

Imad : Me, too! I like the mountains. I'm going to visit Sinai with my family in the holidays.



Hassan : Are you going to try ... Imad ?

Imad : No, I'm not going to do anything ... It is very difficult to ride a bike in the mountains.



Hassan : I think you're right. ... looks scary, too.

Imad : I think it looks fun! I'm going to try it one day!



Hassan : Really ? Anyway ...

Check Vocabulary

...

on Lesson 1 SB page 23

2 Mustafa : I'm going to go to the mountains.

Hazem : OK. Are you going to go trekking ?

Mustafa : No, I'm not.

Hazem : Are you going to go rock climbing ?

Mustafa : Yes, I am.

Hazem : Your bag is ... D

Mustafa : That's right.

Hazem : My turn. I'm going to the beach.

Mustafa : Are you going to go kayaking ?

Hazem : No, I'm not.

Mustafa : Are you going to go diving ?

Hazem : Yes, I am.

Mustafa : Your bag is ... B



D



B

Reading

on Lesson 1 SB page 23

Hi Eman!

I'm in Dahab with my family 😊 There's so much to do here! This afternoon, we're going to go trekking¹ in the mountains. I'm not going to try rock climbing. It's too scary! 😨

Tomorrow, we're going to try windsurfing² in the morning and in the afternoon, we're going to go diving! 😄 We're not going to go kayaking³. There is no time! 😞

Love, Reem

Check Vocabulary

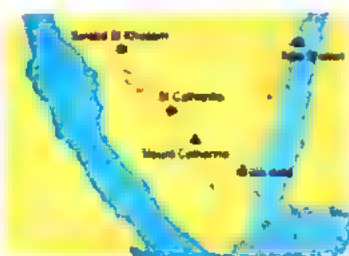
...

on Lesson 2 SB page 24

My Trekking Adventure

By Ahmed

Next year, I'm going to go trekking across Sinai¹. It's going to be a big adventure². I'm going to travel nearly³ 500 kilometres through mountains⁴ from Ras Shetan to Serabit el Khadem. I'm going to sleep in a tent⁵ and stay with Bedouin families⁶. I'm going to have a guide⁷ to help me find the way and a camel to carry food and water. The journey is going to take me 43 days.



Check Vocabulary

...

Here's my plan:
3rd March
leave Ras Shetan
14th March
arrive at Ein Kidd
30th March
arrive at St Catherine
1st April
climb Mount Catherine
15th April
arrive at Serabit el Khadem



استخرج المعلومات

Answer
the following
questions:

Extracting information.

Listen 1 Where is Ahmed going to sleep?
- He is going to sleep in a tent.

Practice 2 How long is Ahmed going to travel through mountains?

Listening

• on Lesson 2 SB page 25

1 Voice:

The first of April.
The second of May.
The third of August.
The fourteenth of September.
The twenty first of December.
The thirtieth of January.

• on Lesson 2 SB page 25

2 Mariam:

Next year, I'm going to go sailing
down the Nile with my family.
We're going to travel from Aswan to
Luxor. We're going to leave Aswan on
28th December. We're going to arrive
in Luxor on 4th January.



• on Lesson 2 WB page 85

3 Listen and write the dates:

Girl: This summer, I'm going on holiday with my family. On 25th July, we're going to drive to the Red Sea. On 30th July, we're going to go on a boat trip. On 3rd August, my cousins are going to visit us. On 6th August, we're going to have a picnic. We're coming home on the tenth. See you then!



• on Lesson 2 SB page 25

- It is important to negotiate when you need to decide something important with other people.
أ. إنه من المهم أن تتفاوض عندما تحتاج إلى أن تقرر شيء ما معًا مع أشخاص آخرين.
- Remember, negotiation is not about winning or losing an argument.
ب. تذكر أن المفاوضة لا تعني الفوز أو الخسارة في المناقشة.
- Listen carefully to what other people say.
ج. استمع بعناية إلى ما يقوله الآخرون.
- You should try to get the best ideas from and for each other.
د. ينبغي عليك أن تحاول الحصول على أفضل الأفكار سواء منك أو من بعضكم البعض.

Exercise on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

• Key vocabulary

- When we go camping, we sleep in a
a. castle b. hotel c. tent d. hut
- Many tourists like to go on a board when they go on a journey to the Red Sea.
a. windsurfing b. diving c. driving d. trekking
- is one of the most dangerous mountain sports.
a. Diving b. Kayaking c. Rock climbing d. Sailing

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والملاحظات السابقة

SA, WB and Previous Exams

4. In Dahab, we're going to go ^{in the mountains}
a. diving b. trekking c. windsurfing d. kayaking

5. All you need to go ^{is a boat and some wind}
a. sailing b. trekking c. diving d. zip lining

6. I love ^{because I'm good at swimming under water.}
a. zip lining b. diving c. kayaking d. windsurfing

7. I'm going to go trekking across Sinai. It's going to be a big
a. party b. adventure c. novel d. term

El-Moasser Exercises

8. I don't like ^{firms because they make me feel frightened.}
a. comedy b. scary c. drama d. happy

9. What are your ^{for the next weekend?}
a. planes b. plans c. plays d. plants

10. ^{are people who live in the desert.}
a. Bedouins b. Runners c. Beginners d. Villagers

Definitions

11. A/An ^{is a person who shows a place to tourists.}
a. guide b. musician c. interviewer d. pilot

12. The movement of air is called
a. journey b. hill c. wind d. mountain

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. Imad ^{diving last year.}
a. made b. went c. gave d. took

14. Hassan would like to ^{mountain biking. He has never practised it before.}
a. make b. try c. achieve d. take

15. ^{sixth of August, we're going to travel to Hurghada.}
a. Of b. On c. In d. At

Speaking

Discussing activities and travel plans

مناقشة الأنشطة وخطط السفر

Questions

Answers

1. What are you going to do this weekend?

١. ماذا ستفعل في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع؟

- I am going to visit Sinai.

- سأزور سيناء.

2. Are you going to try rock climbing?

٢. هل ستجرب رياضة تسلق الصخور؟

- Yes, I am.

- No, I am not.

3. Where are you going to go next year?

٣. أين سوف تذهب العام القادم؟

- I'm going to go sailing on the Nile.

- سوف أذهب إلى الإبحار في النيل.

4. Who are you going to go sailing on the Nile with?

٤. مع من سوف تذهب إلى الإبحار في النيل؟

- With my family.

- مع عائلتي.

5. When are you going to leave Aswan?

٥. متى سوف تغادر أسوان؟

- On 28th December.

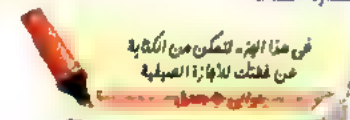
- في الثامن والعشرين من شهر ديسمبر.

Writing

مهارات الكتابة

Your plan for a summer holiday

خطتك للجازة الصيفية



في هذا الجزء، تتمكن من الكتابة عن ففكك للجازة الصيفية.

1. I am going to go trekking across Sinai.

١. سأموم برحلة سيراً على الأقدام عبر سيناء.

2. It's going to be a big adventure.

٢. سيكون مغامرة كبيرة.

3. I am going to try zip lining

٣. سوف أجرب رياضة التزلج بالخيال.

4. It looks fun.

٤. يبدو ممتعاً / شيقاً.

5. I am going to have a guide to help me find the way.

٥. سيكون لدى مرشد لمساعدتي أن أجد الطريق.

Language

Future with "going to"

Form **۱۰۰**

Affirmative Statements → I → am
He, She, It → is
you, we, They → are
going to + Inf.

ex. I'm going to visit Alexandria next week.

2 Negative Statements → Subject + am / is / are + not + going to + (inf.)
 النفي الجزم الفاعل المفعول

ex. - They are not going to visit Alexandria.
- He is not going to eat fish.

(السؤال بـ هل :)
 Yes / No question :
 Am
 Is + subject + going to + (inf.)
 Are
 الفعل
 الفعل
?

ex. • Is she going to **play** tennis?

- Yes, she is.

- No, she isn't.

ب) السؤال، باستخدام كلمة استفهام :

question word + am + subject + going + (inf.) + to + ...
كلمة السؤال + am + الفاعل + to + مصدر الفعل + ...

ex. What are you going to eat for lunch?

المجلس الأعلى للمعاهد العليا

تستخدم هذه الصيغة في الحالات الآتية :

Plans & Intentions :

(1) *عند التوقيع على بيان*

- He is going to spend a week in Alexandria.

- I'm going to visit Ali tomorrow.

- لاحظ أن التدخّلات الموسّعة أو البنية تأتي مع كلمات مثل

intend نیت / **plan** پخت / **make a decision** تصمیم

af. - We're going to fly to London next week. We've decided that

2 Prediction with evidence :

(٢) التَّوَكُّلُ بِالْمُسْتَقْبَلِ مع وجود دليل على ذلك :

☝ - Look at those dark clouds ! It's going to rain.

ها دليل قري على أن الماء شطر (السحب السوداء)

① **Actions which are about to happen.**

(٢٦) أحداث على وشك الوقوع.

ex. - Watch out ! Your car is going to crash.

Stop here! on Language (Answered & Explained)

في هذا الجزء نقدم لطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عليه ومصحوب بشرح أسباب اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ahmed will visit his uncle tomorrow. It's his intention.

a. will visit b. is visiting c. is going to visit d. visits

2. Look out ! The baby is going to

a. falling b. falls c. fell d. fall

No.	Answer + Explanation	gizoging dajla
1	c	(intention) قصد (intention) قصد
2	d	قصد (intention) قصد (intention) قصد

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

📌 SB, WB and Previous Exams , تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1.  We *celebrate* visit Sinai. I've decided.

a. go to b. going to c. are going to d. went to

1. *Chelidonium majus* L. (Papaveraceae) - Golden Poppie

2. Tomorrow, we're going to try windsurfing in the morning.
a. goes b. going c. went d. go
3. What are you going to wear tomorrow?
a. do b. have c. are d. were
4. Is Reem going to go trekking this afternoon?
a. going b. goes c. went d. go
5. Who is going to cook your meal this evening?
a. going to b. is going to c. will go d. would go
6. Is Ahmed going to spend the summer holiday in Alexandria?
a. go b. going c. going to d. goes

El-Moasser Exercises تدریبات كتاب المعاصر

7. There are dark clouds in the sky. It is going to rain.
a. will rain b. rains c. is going to rain d. won't rain
8. We are going to go trekking. It's our intention.
a. are going b. are going to go c. will go d. would go
9. Sama will take the train to Aswan next week. She made her decision.
a. going to b. will c. is going to d. won't
10. I am not going to try rock climbing. It's very dangerous!
a. is b. am c. are d. do

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB, WB and Previous Exams تدریبات من كتاب الطالب والتدریبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. He is going to sleeping in a tent. (.....)
2. What are you go to do next Saturday? (.....)
3. We're going to try windsurfing yesterday. (.....)
4. The journey has going to start in March. (.....)
5. Is she going trying rock climbing? (.....)
6. Tamer is going to bought a new car. (Tanta - Gharbia 2022) (.....)
7. I'm going visit Sinai. (Hayada - Qena 2022) (.....)

El-Moasser Exercises تدریبات كتاب المعاصر

8. I don't going to travel this week. (.....)
9. Will you going to visit your grandmother? (.....)
10. I going to paint my room tomorrow. I have decided that. (.....)

General Exercises



LESSONS 1 & 2

• Understand • Apply • Create



Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلّمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (الموضوع المستمع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. Where is Eman?
a. In Dahab b. In Aswan c. In Ras Mohamed d. In Cairo
2. Who is Eman going to go trekking with?
a. With her father b. With her friends
c. With her family d. With a cousin
3. What's Eman going to try?
a. Mountain climbing b. Rock climbing
c. Cycling d. Zip lining
4. When are they going to go trekking?
a. This afternoon b. This morning
c. This evening d. This night

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Mostafa and Ayman are talking about their plans.

Mostafa : Where are you going next weekend?

Ayman : (1)

Mostafa : The desert ! (2)

Ayman : To go trekking in the mountains.

Mostafa : (3)

Ayman : No, I don't think it is tiring.

Mostafa : What things will you take with you?

Ayman : (4) What about you?

Mostafa : (5)

Ayman : That's great ! I like diving, too.

AltFutuk.com موقع التتويج

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- We are going to go across Sinai.
a. trekking b. tricking c. swimming d. fishing
- _____ is a kind of water sport.
a. Mountain climbing b. Sailing
c. Zip lining d. Trekking
- "Adventure" means a(n) _____ experience when something unusual or dangerous happens.
a. boring b. tiring c. exciting d. funny
- In _____, you start high, but you finish it on the ground.
a. kayaking b. zip lining c. trekking d. diving
- _____ families live in the desert.
a. Ancient b. Bedouin c. Village d. City
- ☒ We're going to go _____ in the Red Sea.
a. nding b. trekking c. windsurfing d. climbing
- ☒ They took four days to cross the desert. It was a difficult _____.
a. trip b. journey c. lesson d. tent
- I _____ abroad. It's my plan.
a. 'm going to travel b. 'll travel
c. travelled d. would have travelled
- This afternoon, we _____ to try rock climbing. It's too scary!
a. won't b. will c. going d. are not going
- _____ you going to travel to Hurghada in August?
a. Is b. Are c. Am d. Will

4 Read and correct the underlined words:

- We're going to try mountain biking last month. (.....)
- He's going sleeping for 10 hours. (.....)
- His birthday is on the third from May. (.....)
- ☒ Is she go to go kayaking? (.....)

3 & 4



1 Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

weather (n)	طقس	transport (n)	مواصلات
railway line (n)	خط سكة حديد	dark clouds (n)	سحب ملبدة بالظلمة
challenge (n)	تحدي	newspaper article (n)	مقال صحفي (في جريدة)
towel (n)	مشفة / فوطة		

Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.



Pop Quiz

لتدريب تفقدي بعض المفردات اللغوية

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box:

ra lway lines - clouds - transport - challenges - articles

- There are dark _____ in the sky. It's going to rain.
- Buses, cars and trains are means of _____.
- Deaf people have many _____ when they communicate with others.
- Trains and the underground go on _____.

Lesson 3

SB pages 26 & 27 WB page 98

postcard (n)	كارت بريد	protect (ed) (v)	يحمي
presentation (n)	عرض - تقديم	top (n)	قمة / أعلى
fire (n)	نار - مدفأة	frightened (adj)	خائف
eagle (n)	نسر	dry (ied) (v), (adj)	يجفف - جاف
mirror (n)	مرآة	trek (ked) (v), (n)	رحلة شاقة - يمشي في رحلة شاقة
sunglasses (n)	نظارة شمسة		

Famous cities and countries

مدن ودول مشهورة

Egypt	مصر	San Francisco	مدينة سان فرانسيسكو في (الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية)
South Africa	دولة جنوب أفريقيا	The USA	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية
Oman	دولة سلطنة عُمان		

London	مدينة لندن	Hong Kong	هونغ كونغ
Japan	دولة اليابان	South America	أمريكا الجنوبية
India	دولة الهند	Kolkata	كولكاتا (مدينة الهند الجديدة)
Mumbai	مدينة ممبئي الهند	New York	نيويورك
England	إنجلترا		

Weather words

نوع	صفة	Adjective	اسم
rain	مطر	rainy	مطر
sun	شمس	sunny	شمس
cloud	سحابة	cloudy	سحابة
snow	ثلج	snowy	ثلج
storm	عاصفة	stormy	عاصفة
wind	رياح	windy	رياح
fog	ضباب	foggy	ضباب

Forms of transport

cars	السيارات	planes	الطائرات
ships	السفن	trains	القطارات

Lesson 4

SB page 25 WB page 6

mistake (n)	خطأ	introduction (n)	مقدمة
complete (d) (v)	يكمل / يهيئ	character (n)	شخصية
Brush (adj)	بريطاني / للبحرية	chart (n)	رسم بياني
return (ed) (v)	يعود	support (ed) (v)	يدعم / يؤيد

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

Present	Past	P.P.
hurt	hurt	hurt
speak	spoke	spoken
tell	told	told

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite
dark	light
east	west
wet	dry

للمهمة هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب المصطلح وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

cloud / cloudy	a cloud is a white object that floats in the sky. When there are clouds in the sky, the weather is cloudy.	سحابة / غائم / سحابي
fog / foggy	fog is a very low cloud, when it becomes difficult to see very far. When there is fog, the weather is foggy.	ضباب / غائم بالغيوم
rain / rainy	rain is water that falls from the sky. When it rains, the weather is rainy.	مطر / ممطر
snow / snowy	snow is like cold, soft, white rain and falls from the sky. When it snows, the weather is snowy.	ثلج / جليدي
wind / windy	wind is the movement of air. When the wind blows, the weather is windy.	رياح / عاصف
storm / stormy	a storm is very bad weather, with a lot of wind and rain or snow. When there is a storm, the weather is stormy.	عاصفة / عاصف
sun / sunny	The sun is what gives us light. When the sun shines, the weather is sunny.	الشمس / مشمس
protect	look after, keep safe.	يحمي
railway line	the metal that a train travels on	خط سكة حديد
challenge	a difficult task or problem.	تحدي

Collocations

مكتزمات لفظية

make	a salad a cup of tea a mistake breakfast	يجهز السلطة يجهز كوب من الشاي يرتكب خطأ يجهز الإفطار
take	a photo a challenge the ship back to	يأخذ صورة - يصور يخوض تحدي يرجع بالسفينة إلى

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 by

* by + شخص
- This room was painted by Ali.

الخط الزمني المثلثة لكلمة (by)
بواسطة

- **by** + مكان
- He's sitting **by** the fire.
- **by** + وقت
- By 2025, we will have built a new house.
- **by** + وسيلة مواصلات
- We went to Cairo **by** bus.

2 a bit (a little) = much

- توضع كلمة (a bit / little) امام الصفة لتشير ان الصفة موجودة بدرجة قليلة
- I'm a **bit** frightened of dogs.
يتم وضع (much) امام الصفة لتشير ان الصفة موجودة بدرجة كبيرة
- I'm **much** frightened of dogs.

Important expressions & prepositions

do an activity	بشور بسلطة	return to	يعود الى (مكان)
at the top of the mountain	في اعلى الجبل	tell a story	يخبر قصة
on the way down	في طريق النزول (الاسفل)	protect ... from	يحمي ... من
fall over	يسقط	get dressed	يرتدى ملابس
sit by the fire	يجلس بالقرب من الصفاة	across India	عبر الهند
put on a hat	يرتدى قبعة	This sounds easy	هذا يبدو سهلا
come out of	يخرج من	keep warm	يحتفظ بالدفء
at the start of the trip	في بداية الرحلة	one day earlier	يوما مبكرا
put in the correct order	مع في الترتيب الصحيح	cook (meal) on a fire	يطهو (وجبة) على النار
ride on a camel	يركب على دمل	take the ship back to	يستقل سفينة عائدا الى
complete the challenge	يكمل التحدي	go around	يتجول
give a great idea for	يعطي فكرة جيدة لـ	in just 80 days	في خلال ثمانون يوما فقط
travel around the world	يسافر حول العالم	travel on the sea	يسافر في البحر
return on	يعود في ... (تاريخ)		

Skills

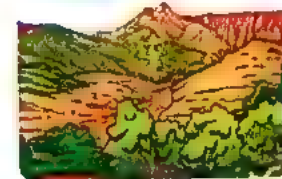
1. Reading and Listening

تدرب على 18 من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع
Pop Quiz

Reading

on Lesson 3 SB page 26

Dear Grandma,
We're really enjoying ourselves
on holiday in South Africa⁽²⁾. It's beautiful
here and there's a lot to do.
Yesterday was an adventure⁽³⁾. We went
trekking in the mountains. It was sunny⁽⁴⁾
when we started, but when we got to the top
of the mountain⁽⁵⁾,



we saw dark clouds⁽⁶⁾. On the way down, the rain⁽⁷⁾ started! Then there was
a storm⁽⁸⁾. The rocks⁽⁹⁾ were wet and Tamer fell over⁽¹⁰⁾ and hurt himself. But
it's OK-his leg is better today.

Tomorrow the weather is going to be better, so we're going to try
zip lining! I'm a bit frightened, but I'm excited⁽¹¹⁾, too.

See you soon,
Dalia

Check Vocabulary

(1) في اجرة	(2) دولة جنوب افريقيا	(3) مغامرة	(4) مشمس	(5) قمة الجبل	(6) سحابة سوداء / ملبدة بالغيوم
(7) مطر	(8) عاصفة	(9) صخور	(10) سقط	(11) متحمس / متفعل	

Listening

on Lesson 3 SB page 26

A : It's very sunny and there aren't any clouds⁽¹⁾ in the sky. I think it's
a very hot day.

B : There are lots of clouds and they're very dark. I think that there's going
to be a storm⁽²⁾.

Check Vocabulary

(1) سحابة	(2) عاصفة
-----------	-----------

- C: It's a sunny day, but there are some clouds in the sky above the mountain. I think it's quite hot
D: It's very foggy¹. I think it's raining. It looks cold and wet.

Check Vocabulary

1. sunny - مشمس - مشرق
2. cloudy - غائم - غائم

on Lesson 3 SB page 27



Nader: My trip to the desert¹, by Nader.
Last weekend, we went on a trip² to the desert. I woke up early and made myself breakfast³. Then I got dressed⁴. I put on my clothes and looked at myself in the mirror⁵. I put on a hat and sunglasses⁶ to protect⁷ myself from the sun. At the desert, we met our guide and we rode with him on our camels. My sister took this photo of herself with her camel. That night, we cooked ourselves dinner on a fire. After dinner, when it got cold⁸, we sat by the fire to keep ourselves warm⁹.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) الصحراء
(2) رحلة قصيرة
(3) جعلت إفطاراً لنفسي
(4) ارتديت ملابس
(5) نظرت إلى نفسي في المرآة
(6) نظرة شمسي
(7) يحمي
(8) أصبح الجو بارداً
(9) خلعت زبدتي أجسامي

Answer the following questions:

- Giving the main idea and guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context.

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.
- Nader's trip to the desert.

2. What does the underlined word protect in the text mean?

Reading

on Lesson 4 SB page 28

Around the world in 80 Days by Jules Verne

In 1872, the writer Jules Verne read a newspaper article⁽¹⁾ about a new railway line⁽²⁾ across India. It gave him a great idea⁽³⁾ for a book. He wrote a story about a British⁽⁴⁾ man called Phileas Fogg. He takes a challenge⁽⁵⁾ to travel around the world in just 80 days. This sounds easy today, but at that time, there were no cars or planes.

London to Suez, Egypt	train and ship	7 days
Suez to India	ship	13 days
India to Hong Kong	train and ship	16 days
Hong Kong to Japan	ship	6 days
Japan to the USA	ship	22 days
Across the USA	train	7 days
USA to London	ship	9 days
Leave on 2 nd October	Return on 21 st December	



When Phileas Fogg takes the ship back to London from the USA, there is a big storm⁽⁶⁾ at sea and he arrives in London one day late, on 22nd December. But he made a mistake⁽⁷⁾ because he travelled east⁽⁸⁾ around the world. It is one day earlier than he thought. So he completes⁽⁹⁾ his challenge on time!

Check Vocabulary

- (1) مقال في جريدة
(2) خط سكة حديد
(3) فكرة رائعة
(4) بريطاني الجنسية
(5) تحدى
(6) عاصفة
(7) خطأ
(8) شرقاً
(9) يكمل / يهبط

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

1. The Egyptians are designing a line that leads to
the New Administrative Capital العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة
a. car b. railway c. bike d. motor

2. Today, the weather is sunny, but it is nice.
a. weather b. leather c. whether d. feather
3. I read a lot of information about pollution in a newspaper.
a. article b. note c. notebook d. capital

58. WB and Previous Exams
4. We sat by the fire to keep ourselves warm.
a. fire b. snow c. wild d. line
5. Phileas Fogg takes a challenge to travel around the world in just 80 days.
a. mirror b. challenge c. railway line d. presentation

6. There is snow at the top of the mountain. Look! It's white.
a. air b. storm c. sun d. snow
7. I looked at myself in the mirror.
a. glasses b. mirror c. door d. picture
8. We can't sail because there is no wind.
a. sun b. snow c. wind d. fog

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات المفردات

9. You shouldn't drive your car in sunny weather as you won't see well.
a. sunny b. funny c. foggy d. hot
10. Sara took a mistake when she answered the questions without reading them well.
a. took b. did c. made d. gave
11. I bought a new jacket to keep me warm.
a. take b. do c. keep d. dry

Definitions تعريفات

12. When the sun shines, the weather is sunny.
a. foggy b. sunny c. rainy d. cold

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. After Sami came out of the sea, he dried himself with a towel.
a. made b. gave c. came d. put
14. It is important to put on a hat in the desert as it protects you from the sun.
a. make b. put c. give d. cut
15. Today, it is easy to travel around the world in less than 80 days.
a. tastes b. takes c. sounds d. leaves

2. Speaking

مهارات التحدث

Describing the weather

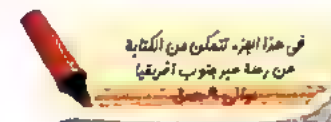
وصف حالة الطقس

Questions	Answers
What is the weather like today? How is the weather today? كيف تكون حالة الطقس اليوم؟	There is fog, the weather is foggy. يوجد ضباب. الطقس ضبابي.
How was the weather yesterday? كيف كان الطقس بالأمس؟	The weather was sunny. كان الطقس مشمساً.
How will the weather be tomorrow? كيف سيكون الطقس غداً؟	The weather will be windy tomorrow. سيكون الطقس عاصف غداً.

3. Writing

مهارات الكتابة

A journey across South Africa
رحلة عبر جنوب أفريقيا



1. Last month, I saw some beautiful photos about South Africa on Facebook.
الشهر الماضي، رأيت بعض الصور الجميلة عن جنوب أفريقيا على الفيسبوك.
2. I went to South Africa by plane.
ذهبت إلى جنوب أفريقيا بالطائرة.
3. I had a nice time there.
قضيت وقتاً رائعاً هناك.
4. On Saturday, I went trekking in the mountains.
يوم السبت، ذهبت للتجسس في الجبال.
5. The weather was sunny.
كان الطقس مشمساً.
6. On Sunday, I got to the top of the mountain.
يوم الأحد، صعدت إلى قمة الجبل.
7. I saw dark clouds at the top of the mountain.
رأيت سحب ملبدة بالغيوم على قمة الجبل.
8. There was a big storm, but it finished.
كان هناك عاصفة قوية ولكنها انتهت.
9. I tried zip lining and it was exciting.
ذهبت للتجسس رياضة الانزلق بالحبل وكانت تجربة رائعة.

Language

Reflexive Pronouns

- ex. We use reflexive pronouns for emphasis :

استخدموا الضمير المنعكس في حوار بعد على صيغة المفعول بنفسه باستخدام ضمير على في الفعل لا يتم
بجمل الفعل بنفسه، وإنما ما يلي هذه الصيغة في صيغة الفعل

ex. polished the shoes myself.

Subject المفعول	Reflexive pronoun الضمير المنعكس	Subject المفعول	Reflexive pronoun الضمير المنعكس
I	myself	You	yourself
He	himself	You	yourselves
She	herself	We	ourselves
It	itself	They	themselves

ex. - She taught herself to speak German.

- We must cook the food ourselves.

- ex. When the object is the same as the subject of the verb,
we use the reflexive pronouns.

عندما يكون المفعول هو نفسه المفعول في الجملة نستخدم الضمير المنعكس

ex. - He will hurt himself.

- She saw herself in the mirror.

ونلاحظ أن في الجملة الأخيرة إذا كان المفعول هو نفسه المفعول في الجملة نستخدم الضمير المنعكس

ex. Spend a few minutes preparing yourself / yourselves for exercise.

يستخدم الضمير المنعكس بعد (by) بمعنى «بفرد» أو «بشكل منفرد»

by myself = on my own = alone = without any help

ex. - I went shopping on my own (alone).

- He lives on his own (alone / by himself).

- Did Ali paint that picture on his own (without any help) ?

ex. after / for / on after / for / on

The girls looked after themselves

Always depend on yourself

والتي لا تستخدم الضمير المنعكس مع أدوات مثل (with) واستخدام الضمير المنعكس بدلاً منها

Bring your jacket with you. (Not : with yourself)

ex. نستخدم الضمير المنعكس في الجملة

ex. - Enjoy yourself = استمتع بوقتك

- Take care of yourself = اهتم بنفسك

- Help yourself (to) = ساعد نفسك / تفعل بأخذ

- Make yourself at home = تعرف وكأنك في منزلك

- Behave yourself = تصرف بآداب / تأدب

Stop here! on Language (Answered & Explained)

في هذا الجزء نقدم لطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مع أمثلة ومصحوب بشرح أسباب اختيار
الجابة الصحيحة.

- ex. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Do Mona and Sara paint the room ?

a. herself b. himself c. themselves d. yourselves

2. She washed the dishes

a. himself b. herself c. myself d. itself

2	b	(She) Mona and Sara paint the room.
1	c	She washed the dishes.
No.	Answer + Explanation	

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

ex. SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريب من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. ex. We enjoyed when we went sailing.

a. himself b. themselves c. ourselves d. myself

2. ex. The birds sleep in caves to protect from eagles.

a. herself b. itself c. yourselves d. themselves

ex. New Exercise the bottom of the page

3. I made some salad for lunch.
a. himself b. itself c. herself d. myself
4. So a has a jacket to keep warm.
a. himself b. themselves c. herself d. yourself
5. Would you like to make a cup of tea?
a. yourself b. himself c. herself d. itself
6. He puts on a hat to protect
a. himself b. ourselves c. themselves d. itself
7. She did her homework
a. himself b. herself c. myself d. yourself

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

8. You both can see in a mirror.
a. yourself b. ourselves c. yourselves d. themselves
9. The teacher told the students to behave
a. ourselves b. themselves c. yourself d. yourselves
10. She taught to speak English.
a. himself b. herself c. themselves d. itself
11. Did you enjoy at the funfair?
a. yourself b. himself c. herself d. myself
12. I cleaned the kitchen alone. This means I cleaned it by
a. myself b. herself c. itself d. themselves

2. Read and correct the underlined words:

SR, WB and Previous Exams تدرّيات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. We cooked yourself dinner on a fire.
(...)
2. I didn't buy this cake. I made it on myself.
(...)
3. She took a photo of themselves.
(...)
4. The cat is cleaning myself.
(Ain Shams - Cairo 2022) (...)
5. Ali, do homework by herself.
(Hindia - Minya 2022) (...)
6. The children made these toys itself.
(South Giza - Giza 2022) (...)

El-Moasser Exercises تدرّيات كتاب المعاصر

7. Mona drew himself a picture.
(...)
8. Heba and Mona cleaned up with themselves.
(...)
9. Did you take the photo by himself?
(...)
10. I bought themselves a cold drink.
(...)

General Exercises

On

LESSONS 3 & 4

1. Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع إلى مكالمة هاتفية بين الزبائن والخدمة العملاء في متجر الملابس

1. When did you go trekking in the mountains?
a. Yesterday b. Today c. Last week d. Last month
2. What was the weather like when you started?
a. Cloudy b. Rainy c. Sunny d. Snowy
3. Did you get to the top?
a. Yes, we did. b. No, we didn't.
c. Not in the text. d. I don't know.
4. What did you see at the top?
a. Rain b. The sun c. Dark clouds d. A plane

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I didn't buy this cake. I made it
a. myself b. himself c. herself d. yourself
2. Did you hurt ... ?
a. ourselves b. yourself c. himself d. myself
3. I'm sure, Samira made this cup of tea by
a. itself b. herself c. myself d. himself
4. I woke up early and myself breakfast.
a. dried b. made c. hurt d. started
5. When there's , we can see ice on the ground.
a. sun b. storm c. snow d. rain
6. The ground was very after the rain yesterday.
a. windy b. wet c. dry d. high
7. She a mistake and apologised.
a. did b. made c. took d. sold

- her leg and she couldn't walk
 a. heard b. mended c. hurt d. cleaned
 9 My friends say that climbing the mountain is not safe, but I decided
 take the a. challenge b. change c. trip d. top
 in the newspaper about modern inventions.
 10 I read a/an a. novel b. article c. adverb d. app

3 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. I'm sorry Tamer hurt itself.
2. Did you write this passage by herself?
3. You don't need to drive this car. It drives herself.

(East Tanta - Gharbiya 2022)

4. We bought themselves a new car.

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"A trip with your friends"



1 Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

email	بريد الكتروني	grandad (n)	الجد
suggestion (n)	اقتراح	album (n)	البوم (صور)
introduction (n)	مقدمة	chess (n)	الشطرنج
letter	خطاب	magazine (n)	مجلة
circle (d) (v), (n)	دائرة / دائرة	station (n)	محطة

تدريب = Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها

5 min

Pop Quiz

تدريب لتفاني بهدف إلقاء المفردات اللغوية

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

magazine - album - suggestions - station - circle

1. My father put his photos in an _____.
2. Making _____ is a good habit among friends.
3. I wrote about smoking in the school _____.
4. The train to Alexandria left the _____ on time.

Lesson 5

SB page 29 WB page 88

prefer (red) (v)	يفضل	park (n)	حديقة عامة
both	كلا من	stick (n)	عصا
respond (ed) (v) (n)	يرد - رد	respect (ed) (v) , (n)	يحتترم - احترام
sound (ed) (v)	يسمى	hobby (n)	هواية
basketball (n)	كرة السلة	underline (d) (v)	يضع خطاً تحت

Lesson 6

SB page 30 WB page 89

dear (adj)	عزيز / غالي	advantages (n)	مزايا / مميزات
ending (n)	نهاية	online (adv), (adj)	متصل بالإنترنت
reply (ied) (v) , (n)	يرد - رد	station (n)	محطة

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 look forward to + noun / (Inf. + ing)

EX: - I'm looking forward to visiting Aswan.
- We're looking forward to the summer vacation.

2 would (d) rather + Inf.

EX: - I'd rather do sport.
- I'd rather play chess.

3 would (d) prefer + to + Inf.

EX: - I'd prefer to play chess.

make	يكون / يلاحظ
- notes	يخدم / يلاحظ
- suggestions	يكون دمه
- a sentence	يصنع هدبة خاصة
- a special present for	يصنع اليوم صور
- a photo album	يظهر عرض
- a presentation	

لاحظ التراكيب اللغوية الآتية للتعبير عن الاقتراح.

Making Suggestions

1. Let's + Inf.

- Let's play tennis.

2. How / What about + (Inf. + ing) ... ?

- How / What about playing basketball?

3. Why don't we + Inf.

- Why don't we go windsurfing?

4. Shall we + Inf.

- Shall we go diving?

Important expressions & prepositions

forms of transport	وسائل المواصلات	I'm really excited.	أنا متحمس حقاً.
the most dangerous	الخطر خطورة	by the beach	بجوار الشاطئ
good at	جيد في	have tennis lessons	يأخذ دروس في التنس
give a presentation	يقدم عرض	would like ...	يغفل / يود

respect other people's opinions

يحلزم آراء الآخرين

write to me soon

راسلني قريباً

put in order

يرتب

end an email

يختم رسالة بريد إلكتروني

respond to suggestions

يرد على المقترحات

See you soon!

أراك قريباً / قريباً

reply to

رد

plan for ...

يخطط لـ



Skills

1. Reading and Listening

تدرب على 1A من قطع الفهم وخصوص الاستماع Pop Quiz

Listening

on Lesson 5 SB page 29

Ola : I'm really enjoying myself on our holiday. I love being by the sea⁽¹⁾. What shall we do this afternoon?

Lamia : Why don't we go swimming?

Ola : I'm not sure. Swimming is fun⁽²⁾, but we can do that at home. I'd rather⁽³⁾ do something more exciting.

Lamia : OK. How about going windsurfing?

Ola : I don't know. I'm not very good at windsurfing and it isn't very windy today.

Lamia : OK, not swimming and not windsurfing. I know! Let's go kayaking.

Ola : Good idea! I love kayaking.



Check Vocabulary

(1) بجوار البحر (2) ممتع (3) أفضّل

Videoscript

on Lesson 5 SB page 29

There are many sports that people enjoy today, such as hockey⁽¹⁾, athletics⁽²⁾, and archery⁽³⁾. But did you know these sports, and many others, were first played in Ancient Egypt⁽⁴⁾? Very old drawings and paintings⁽⁵⁾ show people playing a lot of different sports.

Check Vocabulary

لوحات / رسومات (1) لعبة الهوكي (2) ألعاب القوى (3) لعبة الرماية (4) مصر القديمة (5) لوحات / رسومات

This picture in the Temple of Ramses III shows people fencing with sticks⁽¹⁾. In fencing today, two people fight each other with swords⁽²⁾. The Ancient Egyptians also liked running. During the time of King Taharka, there was a race⁽³⁾ of 100 kilometres.

People believe that this was a test⁽⁴⁾ so that the king could find his best soldiers⁽⁵⁾. Today, there is a race called the Pharaonic⁽⁶⁾ Race. This, too, is 100 kilometres. It starts at the Hawara Pyramid and finishes in Saqqara. Running is very popular⁽⁷⁾ today. Millions of people around the world go running every week. It is a good way to stay healthy⁽⁸⁾.

Some people think the ancient Egyptians played tennis, because there is a town near the Nile called Tinnis... and because the Arabic word for part of the hand is rahat al-yad. This sounds like the racket⁽⁹⁾ you hit the ball with. Sport was very important in Ancient Egypt. Is sport important for you?

Check Vocabulary

1. (100) كيلومتر (100) كيلومتر (100) كيلومتر (100) كيلومتر
2. (100) كيلومتر (100) كيلومتر (100) كيلومتر (100) كيلومتر
3. (100) كيلومتر (100) كيلومتر (100) كيلومتر (100) كيلومتر
4. (100) كيلومتر (100) كيلومتر (100) كيلومتر (100) كيلومتر
5. (100) كيلومتر (100) كيلومتر (100) كيلومتر (100) كيلومتر
6. (100) كيلومتر (100) كيلومتر (100) كيلومتر (100) كيلومتر
7. (100) كيلومتر (100) كيلومتر (100) كيلومتر (100) كيلومتر
8. (100) كيلومتر (100) كيلومتر (100) كيلومتر (100) كيلومتر

Reading

on Lesson 6 SB page 30

New message

From: Maher

To: Karim

Subject: Your visit

Dear Karim,

I'm really **excited** that you are going to come and stay with us next week. I'm **looking forward to**⁽¹⁾ seeing you again. What time is your train going to arrive? We can meet you at the **station**⁽²⁾.

Our new home is **by the beach**⁽³⁾. We can go swimming every day. There are lots of other things to do, too. How about going windsurfing or diving?



Check Vocabulary

1. (100) كيلومتر (100) كيلومتر (100) كيلومتر (100) كيلومتر
2. (100) كيلومتر (100) كيلومتر (100) كيلومتر (100) كيلومتر
3. (100) كيلومتر (100) كيلومتر (100) كيلومتر (100) كيلومتر

On Thursday, **Grandad**⁽¹⁾ is going to visit us. Let's make him a **special present**⁽²⁾. Why don't we find photos of ourselves and our other cousins? We can make him a **photo album**⁽³⁾. See you on Saturday!

From
Maher



Check Vocabulary

1. (100) كيلومتر (100) كيلومتر (100) كيلومتر (100) كيلومتر
2. (100) كيلومتر (100) كيلومتر (100) كيلومتر (100) كيلومتر
3. (100) كيلومتر (100) كيلومتر (100) كيلومتر (100) كيلومتر

on Lesson 6 WB page 89

Dear Manal,

I'm writing to tell you my plans for the summer. It's going to be fun but busy. Then you can write to me about your plans!

First, I'm going to visit my cousins in Alexandria. They're going to take me to the famous library. I'm very excited about that. It's a beautiful building.

I'm going to go home on 22nd August. I'm going to have tennis lessons! I can't play tennis now, but I'm going to be very good after the lessons! Let's do some things together before we go back to school. What about going to the beach? You always like swimming. Write to me soon so I know your plans!

From,
Judy



Choose

the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Extracting information

استخراج معلومات

- Learn** 1. Judy is writing this email to tell Manal about her ...
a. plans b. plans c. planes d. plays
Practise 2. Judy is going to go home on 22nd ...
a. September b. October c. November d. August

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

1. Mum loves cooking food very much, so I always read ... about food.
a. offices b. kitchens c. magazines d. screens

2. Please, can I get off the next
a. suggestion b. station c. magazine d. email
3. I collected all my family photos and put them in a/an
a. quiz b. album c. book d. basket
4. Maher wants to make a present for his grandad.
a. special b. private c. general d. public
5. Always check your final email for any
a. plans b. mistakes c. words d. lessons
6. Grandad is going to us on Thursday.
a. find b. visit c. draw d. buy
7. We learned to older people. It's polite to do that.
a. destroy b. delete c. respect d. carry
8. That easy to practise your sport in your free time.
a. comes b. goes c. sounds d. sails
9. We usually start the email with the word "
a. Dare b. Dear c. Deer d. Dart
10. There are many of transport nowadays.
a. forms b. frames c. farms d. farmers
11. One of the of the underground is that it is cheap, clean and fast.
a. advantages b. presentations c. introductions d. stations
12. He thinks that rock climbing is a bit scary. He'd rather another sport.
a. make b. do c. give d. go
13. Our science teacher us some suggestions about our trip to the Science Museum.
a. took b. gave c. made d. did
14. I'd prefer tennis on Mondays.
a. plays b. playing c. to play d. to playing
15. I'm forward to seeing my uncle before travelling.
a. making b. taking c. looking d. doing

2. Speaking

Making and responding to suggestions :

تقديم الاقتراحات والرد عليها

1 Suggestion الاقتراح	2 Positive response الرد بالموافقة	3 Negative response الرد بالرفض
- Why don't we go swimming? لما لا نذهب للسباحة ؟	- That's a good idea. إنها فكرة جيدة.	- No, thanks. لا شكرًا
- How about meeting next weekend? ما رأيك أن نتقابل العطلة القادمة ؟	- Great idea. فكرة عظيمة	- I don't really feel like it. أنا حقًا لا أحب هذا.
- What about watching TV? ما رأيك في مشاهدة التلفزيون ؟	- OK, why not? حسنًا ولم لا ؟	- I'm not very keen on that. لست متحمسًا لذلك.
- Shall we have a picnic? - Shall we go rock climbing? - ما رأيك أن نذهب في نزهة ؟ - ما رأيك بأن نذهب لتسلق الصخور ؟	- Yes, let's do so. نعم، هيا نفعل هذا.	- Maybe some other time. - I'm not sure. That sounds a bit scary. ربما في وقت آخر. أنا غير متأكد هذا يبدو مخيفًا قليلًا.
- We could have a game of football. من الممكن أن نلعب مباراة كرة قدم.	- OK. موافق.	- That's not possible. - I'd rather (go to the beach) هذا ليس ممكنًا. أنا أصغر (أذهب للشاطئ).
- Let's go to the Public Library to read some books. هيا بنا نذهب للمكتبة العامة لقراءة بعض الكتب.	- That's a good idea. - إنها فكرة جيدة.	- I'd prefer to (go to the beach). أنا أصغر (أذهب للشاطئ).
- Let's go shopping. هيا بنا نذهب للتسوق.	- Great idea. - فكرة عظيمة.	- Sorry, I'm busy. اسف، أنا مشغول.
- I suggest going to the museum. أنا أقترح أن نذهب للمتحف.	- I agree. أنا موافق.	- I disagree. أنا غير موافق.

Writing

Write a letter to your friend about the forms of transport.

1. Write a letter to your friend about the forms of transport.
2. There are some forms of transport that are also machines.
3. The fastest form of transport is the plane.
4. Some people prefer certain forms of transport.

Writing tips

Remember to use linking words to connect ideas.

- I can't play tennis now, but I'm going to be very good after the lessons!
- There is a train to Aswan every day!

Remember

- Emails usually start with "Dear (name)".
- Emails to a friend usually end with an expression like "See you soon".

Exercises

Exercises 5 & 6

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Who is coming forward to meeting Yamen? -
a. Sami b. Maher c. Yamen's sister d. Samir
2. Yamen is coming from
a. Cairo b. Alexandria c. Aswan d. Luxor
3. When is Yamen coming? -
a. Next Saturday b. Today c. Tomorrow d. Next year
4. How is Yamen coming? - By
a. train b. bus c. plane d. boat

2. Complete the following dialogue:

Salem and Ameer are talking about playing sports.

Salem: What shall we do tomorrow?

Ameer:

Salem: Are you good at playing basketball?

Ameer: 2, Do you like playing it?

Salem: 3, but I'm not tall enough.

Ameer: Don't worry. I'm not tall, either. But I practise it a lot.

Salem: 4, ?

Ameer: I practise it at school or in the club.

Salem: 5, ?

Ameer: I practise it every day.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. 58 to a friend usually end with an expression like "See you soon".
a. Adventures b. Paragraphs c. Passages d. Emails
2. The train to Aswan leaves the at 7 pm.
a. station b. street c. road d. circle

AlFikri (www.alfikri.com)

3. Write a/an _____ at the beginning of your email.
a. passage b. text c. conclusion d. introduction
4. After reading the story I _____ some notes.
a. made b. did c. bought d. sold
5. I felt _____ when I saw my team winning the match.
a. excited b. afraid c. warm d. frightened
6. Egypt has many _____ of transport.
a. farms b. forms c. objects d. subjects
7. I'd rather _____ sports on holidays.
a. make b. take c. do d. send
8. Shall we _____ rock climbing?
a. going b. go c. went d. to go
9. _____ going to the park?
a. Shall we b. Let's c. How about d. Can we
10. The children put on hats to protect _____ from the sun.
a. itself b. himself c. herself d. themselves

4 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. I'm looking forward to see you. (.....)
2. I'd prefer playing tennis. (.....)
3. She is tall and very good in basketball. (.....)
4. Let's spending good time together. (El Fashn - Bent Suf 2022) (.....)

A week is enough



Review

on unit 9

Vocabulary	Language	Speaking
diving kayaking mountain biking sailing rock climbing zip lining trekking windsurfing tent water sport mountain sport rainy sunny cloudy windy foggy railway line challenge journey	<p>1- Reflexive pronouns تستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة عندما يكون الفاعل والمفعول هما نفس الشخص.</p> <p>- They're enjoying themselves. - Toka hurt herself. - Sami came out of the sea and dried himself with a towel.</p> <p>2- "(Be) going to" for future plans. استخدم (be) going to للتعبير عن خطط مستقبلية.</p> <p>- I am going to visit Sinai. - I am not going to play football. - Are you going to travel to Tanta? - Yes, I am. - No, I am not. - What are you going to do on Sunday?</p>	<p>1. Describing the weather: وصف الطقس</p> <p>- What's the weather like today? - It's sunny / rainy / windy / hot ... etc</p> <p>2. Making and responding to suggestions تقديم الاقتراحات والرد عليها</p> <p>- What shall we do this weekend? - Let's play tennis. - What about going windsurfing? - Good idea! - OK, why not?</p> <p>على اريد استأجر يا يا يا</p>

AltFux.com موقع التتويج

معارف المتحدث

1 Speaking

تجاهل معارف المتحدث مع الآخرين بشكل أساسي على تكوين أسئلة ومعارف كيفية الرد عليها.

Request	Response	Usage
1 What are you going to do this weekend?	- I am going to visit Sinai.	الاستخدام السؤال عن ما ستفعله في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
2 Are you going to try rock climbing?	- Yes I am.	السؤال عن تجربة رياضة معينة
3 What is the weather like today?	- It's sunny.	السؤال عن حالة الطقس اليوم
4 Why don't we go to the zoo?	- That's a good idea!	تقديم اقتراح والرد عليه
5 Let's go to the zoo.	- Maybe another time.	للذهاب إلى حديقة الحيوان

2 Writing Skill

تعتبر معارف الكتابة من المعارف الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة، قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على حل سؤال الفقرة الإنشائية في الورقة الإمتحانية (٢٣ جملة)

1 An adventure

I'm in Dahab with my family¹. There's so much to do here². This afternoon, we're going to go trekking in the mountains³. I'm not going to try rock climbing⁴. It's too scary⁵. Tomorrow, we're going to try windsurfing in the morning⁶. In the afternoon, we're going to go diving⁷. We're not going to go kayaking⁸. There is no time⁹.

Adventure 1

2 My plans for the summer holiday

This summer, I'm going to visit my cousins in Luxor⁽¹⁶⁾. They're going to take me to the Temple of Karnak⁽¹⁷⁾. I'm very excited about that⁽¹⁸⁾. It's a beautiful place⁽¹⁹⁾. I am going to go home on 1st September⁽²⁰⁾.

I'm going to have swimming lessons⁽²¹⁾! I can't go swimming now, but I'm going to be very good at swimming after the lessons⁽²²⁾. I want to do many things before we go back to school⁽²³⁾.

3 My trekking adventure

Next year, I'm going to go trekking across Sinai⁽²⁴⁾. It's going to be a big adventure⁽²⁵⁾! I'm going to travel nearly 500 kilometres through mountains from Ras Shetan to Serabit el Khadem⁽²⁶⁾. I'm going to sleep in a tent and stay with Bedouin families⁽²⁷⁾. I'm going to have a guide to help me find the way and a camel to carry food and water⁽²⁸⁾. The journey is going to take me 43 days⁽²⁹⁾.

A week is enough



لنمضي بالكامل والتميز
في أسبوع واحد فقط
المعاصر في
اللغة الإنجليزية
تلك لمن يستحق



Test

on unit 9

ممكن حل الاختبار
الكلمة وتصويبه

• Understand Apply Create

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- We're on holiday in
a. Africa b. South Africa c. North Africa d. Ind a
- The weather is going to be better
a. tomorrow b. today c. before morning d. next week
- Is there a lot to do ?
a. Yes, there's b. No, there isn't. c. I don't know. d. Not in the text.
- Yesterday was
a. foggy b. an adventure c. terrible d. sunny

(West Mahala - Gharbiya 2022)

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Kareem and Hanan are talking about a holiday.
Kareem : The holiday will be in two weeks. Are you happy ?
Hanan : Of course. (1)
Kareem : Where are you going to travel ?
Hanan : (2)
Kareem : Paris ! (3) ?
Hanan : No. I'm going to travel with my uncle Sayed.
Kareem : (4) ?
Hanan : I will stay for two weeks.
Kareem : I hope you will enjoy your time there.
Hanan : (5)

(Belqas - Dakahlia 2022)

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Dear Karim,
I'm really excited that you are going to come and stay with us next week. I'm looking forward to seeing you again. What time is your train going to arrive ? We can meet you at the station.

Our new home is by the beach. We can go swimming every day. There are lots of other things to do, too. How about going windsurfing or diving ?

On Thursday, grandad is going to visit us. Let's make him a special present. Why don't we find photos of ourselves and our other cousins ? We can make him a photo album.

See you on Saturday !

Yours

Maher

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The underlined expression "looking forward to" means
a. watch b. hope c. like d. worry
- The underlined pronoun "him" refers to
a. Maher b. Karim c. grandad d. cousin
- Karim and Maher can go
a. swimming b. windsurfing c. diving d. a, b & c

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Give a suitable title for this email.

5. Where's Maher's new home ?

6. Do you think Maher's grandad will be happy with the photo album ? Why / Why not ?

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- During a trekking adventure, you need a to help you find the way.
a. tourist b. rider c. guide d. driver
- Travelling through the desert is a great I like it a lot.
a. fear b. adventure c. surfing d. kayaking
- A: What about lining ? B: It's dangerous.
a. rock b. wind c. zip d. rope

(El Derengat - Behenna 2022)

(Waqat Alexandria - Alexandria 2022)

AltFush.com موقع الفوش

4. To walk a long distance usually in the mountains is called trekking.
a. surfing b. kayaking c. trekking d. zip lining
5. When you have a subject, this means that you know how to do something.
a. subject b. skill c. match d. sport
6. When you go diving, you should have some equipment.
a. equipment b. subject c. argument d. kind
7. After coming out of the sea, I dried myself with a towel.
a. tape b. pool c. towel d. towel
8. I didn't buy this cake. I made it myself.
a. himself b. herself c. yourself d. myself

9. I am going to try rock climbing tomorrow.
a. I go b. I'm go to c. I'm going d. I'm going to
10. What is she going to learn?
a. is going b. she is going to c. is she going to d. is she going to

5. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. What shall we doing tomorrow?
2. How about go kayaking next weekend?
3. I made this cake me.
4. Maged's father is going to flying abroad.

Hurghada Red Sea 2022

E. Writing

6. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:
"An adventure"

Stop here !

Mini-Test on unit 9 for Al-Azhar students

نمار صبحر طالب - قاهره الشريف

1. Supply the missing parts in the following two mini dialogues:

A. Tarek : Where are you going to go next year ?

All :

B. Cla :

Rana : The weather will be sunny tomorrow.

2. Write a paragraph of five sentences about :
"A trip to the desert"

2. Use your brain, think smart

طبق ما تعلمته واختر دكانك

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. 15th August, I'm going to visit Sinai.
a. At b. In c. On d. Of
2. Zip lining looks
a. scared b. scary c. frightened d. tired
3. In winter, we sit the fire to keep ourselves warm.
a. on b. in c. off d. by
4. My sister is a frightened of spiders.
a. bet b. bit c. bite d. biting
5. We're looking forward Hurghada in the summer vacation.
a. visit b. visiting c. to visiting d. visits

Quiz

7, 8 & 9

Model A

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A shows paths to houses.
a. trainer b. driver c. guide d. farmer
2. How your day? It was nice.
a. were b. be c. was d. being
3. Aswan is than Cairo.
a. hot b. hotter c. hottest d. the hottest
4. are dangerous birds.
a. Eagles b. flies c. snakes d. Lions
5. They stood under the umbrella to themselves from the rain.
a. help b. walk c. hop d. protect

Model B

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What is about your school?
a. cheap b. special c. slow d. fast
2. It is cloudy, it rain.
a. is going to b. will c. won't d. didn't
3. A is a difficult task or problem.
a. station b. mistake c. suggestion d. challenge
4. Mountain climbing is sport of all.
a. dangerous b. more dangerous c. most dangerous d. the most dangerous
5. People can practise a sport in a sports

new C

SS pages 32 & 33 WB pages 91 & 92

Reading

on Lesson 1 SB page 32

Hi Doreen

How are you? I'm really enjoying myself in Sydney with my family. Sydney is about eight hours by car from our home in Melbourne. Yesterday I climbed Sydney Harbour "Bridge". It was very high and But the views⁴ from the top were fantastic! My sister and I took a great of ourselves!

Tonight I am going to listen to music at the Sydney Opera House, but it is not opera, it is classical music⁵! Tomorrow I am going to the Blue Mountains. I am going to swim in a lake⁶ and go rock climbing⁷. Here are some photos!

Love, Amy

Hi Amy

Your holiday sounds fantastic⁸. My family and I went to Sydney last year but we did not climb the bridge! We went to Bondi Beach and went water surfing¹² and kayaking¹³. I love water sports¹²!

I hope you enjoy your holiday, send me an email when you are home.
Love, Doreen

Check Vocabulary

1. صورة شخصية	2. صخرة	3. كورس	4. صغار طبيعية	5. صورة شخصية
6. تدرج راحة	7. تعلق الصدر	8. رياضة التسلق بالبروق	9. رياضة ركوب الموج	10. رياضة ركوب الدراجات



AltFudk.com موقع التدوينات

• on Lesson 1 WB page 91

Last weekend, I watched a TV programme about Robinson Crusoe Island⁽¹⁾. The author⁽²⁾ of Robinson Crusoe, Danie Defoe, wrote about this island because a sea⁽³⁾ sailor⁽⁴⁾ called Alexander Selkirk spent⁽⁵⁾ four years alone here. Defoe wrote Robinson Crusoe after hearing about this man. However, Crusoe's adventures⁽⁶⁾ were different to Mr Selkirk's. Crusoe spent a lot longer on the island (28 years) and the weather was a lot hotter than on the real island. Today, about 800 people live on Robinson Crusoe Island. Life is easier now, although people still have to look after⁽⁷⁾ themselves. The nearest⁽⁸⁾ land, Chile, is 24 hours away by boat. Soon they are going to build a new school and hospital on the island. Those are things that Crusoe did not have!



Check Vocabulary

(1) جزيرة	(2) مؤلف	(3) بحري	(4) بحار
(5) قضى	(6) مغامرات	(7) يعتنى بـ	(8) الأقرب

Listening

• Lesson 1 WB page 91

1

Girl : Hi Lara. How was your weekend?

Lara : Oh, it was terrible⁽¹⁾.

Girl : Oh dear, what happened?

Lara : I went to the museum, but it was closed⁽²⁾. Then I missed the bus⁽³⁾ so I had to walk home.

Girl : Oh dear! ⁽⁴⁾

2

Boy 1 : I love tennis. Do you agree⁽⁵⁾ that it's more exciting than any other sport?

Boy 2 : I'm afraid⁽⁶⁾ I don't agree.

Check Vocabulary

(1) مخيف	(2) مغلق	(3) ركوب التنس	(4) بالأسف	(5) يوافق	(6) يخشى أن
----------	----------	----------------	------------	-----------	-------------

3

Girl 1 : What shall we do this afternoon, Lama?

Girl 2 : Why don't go swimming?

Girl 1 : I'm not sure. The swimming pool⁽⁷⁾ is not very near.

Girl 2 : OK. How about going to the park?

Girl 1 : Good Idea! ⁽⁸⁾ I love the trees and plants there.

4

Boy 3 : What do you think about that book you're reading?

Boy 4 : I think it's the worst⁽⁹⁾ book ever!

Check Vocabulary

(7) حمام سباحة	(8) فكرة جيدة	(9) الأسوأ
----------------	---------------	------------

• Lesson 2 SB page 33

Woman : Egypt is just over one million square kilometres⁽¹⁾.

Man : Australia is the sixth largest country⁽²⁾ in the world. It is just over seven million, six hundred thousand square kilometres.

Woman : The highest mountain⁽³⁾ in Egypt is Mount Catherine. It is over two thousand six hundred metres high.

Man : The highest mountain in Australia is Mount Kosciuszko. It is over two thousand, two hundred metres high.

Woman : The River Nile is the longest river in the world. It flows through⁽⁴⁾ Egypt and other countries in Africa. It's over six thousand, six hundred kilometres long.

Man : The longest river in Australia is the River Murray. It is over two thousand, five hundred kilometres long. Be careful of the crocodiles⁽⁵⁾!

Woman : In Egypt, one of the oldest buildings⁽⁶⁾ is the Khufu Pyramid. It is about 4,600 years old.

Man : The oldest building in Australia is Elizabeth Farm, in Sydney. It is over 200 years old.



Check Vocabulary

(1) مائتي ألف كيلومتر مربع	(2) دولة	(3) جبل	(4) يتدفق خلال	(5) تمساح	(6) مباني
----------------------------	----------	---------	----------------	-----------	-----------

Unit 9

If you get ●, you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

● means you are doing well. ● means you are doing well. ● means you are doing well.

1. Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed and Ali are talking about music.

Ahmed : What type of music do you like ?

Ali : I like pop music.

Ahmed : Do you like another type of music ?

Ali : Yes, I like listening to songs.

Ahmed : What type of music do you like ?

Ali : I like listening to songs.

Ahmed : What type of music do you like ?

Ali : I like listening to songs.

Ahmed : What type of music do you like ?

Ali : I like listening to songs.

Ahmed : What type of music do you like ?

Ali : I like listening to songs.

Ahmed : What type of music do you like ?

Ali : I like listening to songs.

Ahmed : What type of music do you like ?

Ali : I like listening to songs.

Ahmed : What type of music do you like ?

Ali : I like listening to songs.

Ahmed : What type of music do you like ?

Ali : I like listening to songs.

Ahmed : What type of music do you like ?

Ali : I like listening to songs.

Ahmed : What type of music do you like ?

Ali : I like listening to songs.

Ahmed : What type of music do you like ?

Ali : I like listening to songs.

Ahmed : What type of music do you like ?

Ali : I like listening to songs.

Ahmed : What type of music do you like ?

Ali : I like listening to songs.

Ahmed : What type of music do you like ?

Ali : I like listening to songs.

Ahmed : What type of music do you like ?

Ali : I like listening to songs.

Ahmed : What type of music do you like ?

Ali : I like listening to songs.

Ahmed : What type of music do you like ?

Ali : I like listening to songs.

Ahmed : What type of music do you like ?

Ali : I like listening to songs.

Ahmed : What type of music do you like ?

Ali : I like listening to songs.

Ahmed : What type of music do you like ?

Ali : I like listening to songs.

Ahmed : What type of music do you like ?

Ali : I like listening to songs.

Ahmed : What type of music do you like ?

Ali : I like listening to songs.

Ahmed : What type of music do you like ?

Ali : I like listening to songs.

Ahmed : What type of music do you like ?

Ali : I like listening to songs.

Ahmed : What type of music do you like ?

Ali : I like listening to songs.

Ahmed : What type of music do you like ?

Ali : I like listening to songs.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. All you need to go is a boat and some wind.

a sailing b trekking c diving d zip lining

2. When we go camping, we sleep in a

a castle b hotel c tent d hut

3. On his way down, Tamer over and hurt himself.

a took b fell c made d gave

4. There is at the top of the mountain.

a Look! It's white.

a air b storm c sun d shadow

3. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on "Holiday plans"

UNIT

10

Welcome to my home !

Objectives

• Reading :

Homes in ancient Egypt, round houses around the world

• Writing :

A paragraph describing your first school

A timeline of a famous person's life

A diagram of future houses

• Listening :

A podcast about homes of the future

• Speaking :

Saying what things are made of, predicting the future

• Language :

Using modal verbs: 'must', 'should', 'will', 'can', 'be for prediction', with no definite ending years

• Life Skills :

Creating: goal setting and self-expression

الهدف من هذا الوحدة هو تعليم الطلاب كيفية وصف بيوتهم الحالية وتوقع بيوتهم المستقبلية. كما سيتعلمون كيفية استخدام صيغ التنبؤ في المستقبل.

الهدف من هذا الوحدة هو تعليم الطلاب كيفية وصف بيوتهم الحالية وتوقع بيوتهم المستقبلية. كما سيتعلمون كيفية استخدام صيغ التنبؤ في المستقبل.

1 & 2

Vocabulary

Exercises

1. Choose the correct word to complete the sentence.	2. Match the word with its definition.
3. Write the word in the correct column.	4. Write the word in the correct column.

Plenary

1. Write the word in the correct column.	2. Write the word in the correct column.
3. Write the word in the correct column.	4. Write the word in the correct column.

Key Vocabulary

Pop Quiz

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box:

1. The house was made of
 2. The car was made of
 3. The table was made of
 4. The
 5. The
 6. The
 7. The
 8. The
 9. The
 10. The

Lesson 1

1. Write the word in the correct column.	2. Write the word in the correct column.
3. Write the word in the correct column.	4. Write the word in the correct column.

Exercises

1. Choose the correct word to complete the sentence.	2. Match the word with its definition.
3. Write the word in the correct column.	4. Write the word in the correct column.

Plenary

1. Write the word in the correct column.	2. Write the word in the correct column.
3. Write the word in the correct column.	4. Write the word in the correct column.

Key Vocabulary

Match these definitions

1. A soft material that you can use through, used to make needles, needles, etc.	2. A hard material that you can use through, used to make needles, needles, etc.
3. The material from the skin of animals, used to make shoes and bags.	4. The equipment used for cooking or baking food.
5. A light, strong material used for making many things such as bags, shoes, etc.	6. A natural material that is made from trees.
7. A soft material that is made from the hair of sheep or goats.	8. A hard, square object that is used for building houses, walls, etc.
9. The place at the top of a house.	10. The top part of a building.
11. You turn on it to get water in the house, garden, etc.	12. A hard material, for example, steel, iron.
13. A hard material, for example, steel, iron.	14. A hard material, for example, steel, iron.
15. A hard material, for example, steel, iron.	16. A hard material, for example, steel, iron.

Alf

General Notes on Reading & Listening

- 1 socks - pants - trousers - glasses - scissors - scales
 socks - pants - trousers - glasses - scissors - scales
 تستخدم كلمة (a pair of) مع هذه الكلمات بمعنى زوج من لتشير إلى أنها زوجين لا يمكن فصلهما
 من بعض أيا منها شيء واحد، يشاري بعدها لعل مفرد.
 - This pair of socks is blue.

ex.: - The socks are wet now.

2 glass - a glass - glasses

- glass

ex.: - Windows are made of glass.

- a glass

ex.: - Can you bring me a glass of water, please?

- glasses

ex.: - He drank 3 glasses of water. - He is wearing his glasses.

3 wood - a wood

- wood

ex.: - Doors are made of wood.

- a wood

ex.: - There is a small wood near my house.

4 leather - skin

- leather

ex.: - Shoes and bags are made of leather.

- skin

ex.: - We can feel things with our skin.

5 roof - ceiling

- roof

سطح (المقصود السطح العلوي من المبنى)

ex.: - In summer, some people sleep on the roof at night.

- ceiling

العتف (المقصود السطح الداخلي / سقف الغرفة)

ex.: - There are two lamps and a fan in the ceiling.

Important expressions & prepositions

on the roof	على السطح	about two kilometres away	على بعد ٢ كيلومتر
(be) made of	مصنوع من		
get ... from	يحصل على ... من	work in	يعمل في
at night	ليلة	(be) sure of	مؤكد من
with red doors	بأبواب ذات لون احمر	on top of	على قمة ...

II Skills

Reading and Listening

لننظر على 1A من قطع النظم ونعوض النسخة Pop Quiz

Listening

on Lesson 1 WB page 93

Boy 1 : What is a car made of ?

Boy 2 : That's a difficult question! It's made of a lot of things.

For example, a car door⁽¹⁾ is made of metal⁽²⁾ and the windows are made of glass.

Boy 1 : What are the seats⁽³⁾ made of, where you sit ?

Boy 2 : I think expensive car seats are made of leather⁽⁴⁾. My father's car is not expensive. The seats are made of plastic⁽⁵⁾.

Check Vocabulary

• بالنسبة (١) | جلد (٢) | نافذة (٣) | نافذة (٤) | باب السيارة (٥)

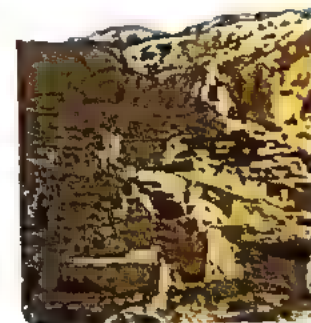
Reading

on Lesson 2 SB page 36

In ancient Egypt⁽¹⁾, there was a village⁽²⁾ called Deir el-Medina. The people from the village worked in the Valley of the Kings⁽³⁾. There were 68 houses.

The walls⁽⁴⁾ of the houses were made of bricks⁽⁵⁾ and the doors were made of wood⁽⁶⁾. The people painted⁽⁷⁾ their houses white, with red doors.

The houses had a kitchen and a living room, but there weren't any bedrooms.



Check Vocabulary

نفس / لؤلؤ (١) | قديم (٢) | قديم (٣) | قديم (٤) | قديم (٥) | قديم (٦) | قديم (٧)

People usually slept on the roof because it was very hot at night. There was usually an oven for bread in the kitchen, but there weren't any taps. People got their water from the well, about two kilometres away.

- Answer**
The following questions:
- Understanding reference:** ما يشير إليه المصطلح
1. What does the underlined word their in the second paragraph refer to?
It refers to the people of Deir el-Medina.
2. What does the underlined pronoun it in the third paragraph refer to?

(8) ما يشير إليه المصطلح
(9) ما
(10) المصطلح
(11) ما يشير إليه

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

- The walls of the ancient houses were made of In Deir El-Medina.
a. bricks b. bricks c. breaks d. bread
- The Ancient Egyptians built for making bread in their kitchens.
a. houses b. walls c. ovens d. roofs
- You can turn on the to get water.
a. tape b. tap c. top d. toy
- The wall is made of
a. stone b. wool c. cloth d. leather
- My is made of leather.
a. table b. wallet c. television d. statue

SB, WB and Previous Exams

- What colour did they their houses?
a. point b. design c. draw d. paint
- Expensive car are made of leather.
a. windows b. doors c. seats d. bags
- is the material from the skin of animals.
a. Leather b. Stone c. Glass d. Cotton

9 are made of cotton.

- a. Tables b. Cushions c. Lamps
10 Most windows are made of
a. wool b. glass c. cotton d. paper

Definitions

- is a soft material that is made from the hair of sheep or goats.
a. Wood b. Wool c. Wallet d. Wing
- The is the top part of a building.
a. bedroom b. wall c. oven d. roof

El-Moasser Exercises

- Most children's toys are made of
a. leather b. paper c. plastic d. glass
- Teaspoons and some pots are made of
a. wool b. leather c. cotton d. metal

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

- My house is about three kilometres
a. way b. away c. of d. out

2. Speaking

ممارسة التحدث

Asking and answering about what things are made of

توجيه أسئلة وإجاباتها عن مما تصنع الأشياء

Questions	Answers
• What's your pencil case made of? ما تصنع قلمك ؟	• It's made of plastic. تصنع من البلاستيك
• What's your bag made of? ما تصنع حقبتك ؟	• I'm not sure; I think it's made of cotton. أنا غير متأكد. أعتقد أنها تصنع من القطن
• What are the cushions made of? ما تصنع الوسادات ؟	• They are made of cotton. تصنع من القطن

Writing

Deir el-Medina

1. Deir el-Medina was a village in ancient Egypt.

2. The people from this village worked in the Valley of the Kings.

3. There were 68 houses.

4. The walls of the houses were made of bricks.

5. The houses had no bedrooms.

6. They painted their houses white with red doors.

Language

is/are made of

Object + are made of + materials
الشيء المصنوع + are made of + المادة الخام المصنوع منها الشيء

Illustrated examples



is made of



are made of



- The television is made of glass and plastic.
- Curtains are made of cotton.
- The wallet is made of leather.

مادة الكتاب

في هذا الجزء تتعلم من الكتابة عن قرية دير المدينة

Welcome to my home!

What is + اسم شيء مفرد + made of ?

What is the sofa made of ? - The sofa is made of leather.

What are + اسم شيء جمع + made of ?

What are the statues made of ? - The statues are made of stone.

Remember

Countable and uncountable nouns

Countable nouns

الاسماء التي تعد (لها جمع)

an apple	تفاحة	apples
a potato	بطاطس	potatoes
a man	رجل	men
an ox	ثور	oxen
a loaf	خبز	loaves
a child	طفل	children
a lentil	حبة عدس	lentils

Uncountable nouns

الاسماء التي لا تعد (ليس لها جمع)
وتعامل معاملة المفرد أي يأتي بعدها فعل في صيغة المفرد

time	وقت	water	ماء
furniture	أثاث	money	مفرد
salt	ملح	sugar	سكر
advice	نصيحة	news	أخبار
gold	ذهب	information	معلومات
bread	خبز	molekhia	ملوخية
koshari	كشري	lamb	لحم الضأن

- Dates are delicious.
- Meat is my favourite food.

(تعد)
(لا تعد)

There was / There were

Affirmative

تستخدم there was / were للتعبير عن شيء كان يوجد في الماضي.

There was

+

اسم مفرد

There was + اسم مفرد

تستخدم بمعنى (كان يوجد) ويأتي بعدها اسم مفرد بعد أو اسم لا يعد

- There was a sofa in the living room.
- There was rice in the kitchen.

موقع التتبع

استخدم بفعلي (كان يوجد) ويأتي بعدها اسم جمع بعد
 There were + اسم جمع بعد
 ex. There were boats.
 ex. There were taps.

(2) Negative في صيغة النفي

اسم مفرد بعد / اسم ل بعد +
 there was not (wasn't)
 ex. - There wasn't a storm yesterday.
 اسم جمع بعد +
 there were not (weren't)
 ex. - There weren't any cars in that street.

Remember

في الجمل الخبرية المنفية :
 Negative statements :
 (مع الأسماء التي تعد والأسماء التي لا تعد)
 ex. - There weren't any vegetables in the fridge.
 - There wasn't any meat in the dish.
 في صيغة الاستفهام :
 Interrogative :
 ex. - Do you have any tomatoes?
 - Was there any salad in the dish?

Stop here! on Language (Answered & Explained)

في هذا الجزء نقدم للطلاب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عنه ومصنوب بشرح أسباب الاختيار
 إجابة الصحيحة

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The belt is made leather.
 a. off b. of c. on d. by
- Books are of paper.
 a. make b. makes c. making d. made
- There a village called Deir el-Medina in the past.
 a. was b. were c. have d. had

الإجابة الصحيحة :
 1. b
 2. a
 3. a

EXERCISES on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB and previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

- The sofa made of leather.
 a. are b. were c. is d. am
 (Multidisciplinary - El-Munassir - Al-Munassir 2022)
- There any rice in the kitchen.
 a. aren't b. haven't c. weren't d. wasn't
- There were trains in 1900. There any TVs.
 a. wasn't b. weren't c. haven't d. aren't
- In ancient Egypt, there a village called Deir el-Medina.
 a. is b. was c. were d. are
- The pan and the statue are of metal.
 a. made b. make c. makes d. making
- There any computers in the past.
 a. were b. aren't c. weren't d. wasn't
 (El-Munassir - Dakhla 2022)
- What the things in the photos made of?
 a. am b. is c. are d. was

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

- There boats in ancient Egypt.
 a. haven't b. hadn't c. were d. was
- I'm not sure, I think made of cotton.
 a. it b. its c. is it d. it's
- There any cars in ancient Egypt.
 a. weren't b. wasn't c. are d. isn't

2. Read and correct the underlined words:

SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

- When were the Stone Age? ()
- My bed is make of wood. ()
- There were any bedrooms in their houses. ()
- When is your bag made of? ()
- There aren't any phones in ancient Egypt. ()

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

- Is the glasses made of plastic? ()
- There weren't some taps in ancient Egypt. ()
- The scissors is made of metal. ()

General Exercises

LESSONS

& 2

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع إلى ملفات وأذن الدخلة الصحيحة الجواب من بين الأربعة الخيارات

1. A car door is made of
a. metal b. plastic c. glass d. gold
2. Car are made of glass.
a. doors b. seats c. windows d. tires
3. Expensive car are made of leather.
a. seats b. windows c. doors d. motors
4. Some car seats are made of
a. plastic b. metal c. glass d. wood

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. is a hard material used for making cars.
a. Wool b. Metal c. Cotton d. Leather
2. Many chairs are made of
a. wool b. wood c. glass d. stones
3. In Egypt, people used papyrus for writing.
a. new b. modern c. ancient d. big
4. What do you know about the Stone ?
a. Page b. Year c. Ago d. Age
5. We have a/an to cook food in.
a. oven b. seat c. air conditioner d. knife
6. In ancient Egypt, there was a / an called Deir el-Medina.
a. country b. village c. street d. city
7. Most bags are made of
a. leather b. weather c. wood d. metal

Welcome to my home!

8. There a lot of traditional houses in the past.
a. is b. are c. were d. was
9. Were there kitchens in the past ?
a. some b. so c. any d. a
10. What's your shirt made ?
a. on b. of c. up d. into

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Lamps are made by glass. ()
2. What is the car seats made of ? (West Augusting Shurka 2022) ()
3. Was there taps in ancient Egypt ? ()
4. There were any men in the hall. ()

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on : موقع دير المدينة

"Deir el-Medina"



3 & 4

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

electricity (n)	كهرباء	robot (n)	إنسان آلي
drone (n)	طائرة بدون طيار	swimming pool (n)	حمام سباحة
3D printer (n)	طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد	architect (n)	مهندس معماري
safer (adj)	أكثر أماناً	wind turbines (n)	توربينات الرياح (محركات تعمل بقوة الرياح)
accident (n)	حادث	machine (n)	آلة
warm (adj)	دافئ	Earth (n)	كوكب الأرض
space (n)	مربع / مساحة	rocket (n)	صاروخ
material (n)	مادة خام	earthquake (n)	زلازل - هزة أرضية
driverless car (n)	سيارة بدون سائق	moon (n)	قمر
electric car (n)	سيارة كهربائية	igloo (n)	منزل من الجليد
solar panels (n)	الألواح الشمسية		

تدوينه Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطلاب إتقانها.

5 Pop Quiz

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

Igloo - Electric - solar panels - earthquake - materials

- cars are safer than oil cars.
- is a house made of ice and snow.
- We should use to produce electricity.
- Houses fell to the ground after the

Lesson 3

SB page 38 & 39 WB page 95

sign (n)	علامة - إشارة	apartment (n)	شقة
petrol (n)	بنزين	parcels (n)	طرود بريدية
produce (d) (v)	يُنتج	predictions (n)	تنبؤات

Welcome to my home!

robot teacher (n)	المعلم الآلي	charger (n)	شاحن (كهربائي)
podcast (n)	نشرة صوتية / برنامج إذاعي	presenter (n)	مقدم برنامج
guest (n)	رائز / ضيف	land telephone (n)	هاتف أرضي
recycle (d) (v)	يعيد تدوير	palm tree (n)	نخلة

Lesson 4

SB page 40 WB page 96

area (n)	مساحة / منطقة	Mongolia (n)	جمهورية منغوليا
suddenly (adv)	فجأة	Burkina Faso (n)	دولة بوركينا فاسو
temperature (n)	درجة الحرارة	Canada (n)	دولة كندا
ground (n)	أرضية / أرض	cheaper (adj)	أرخص
reason (n)	سبب / سبب	project (n)	مشروع
quieter (adj)	أكثر هدوءاً	yurt (n)	خيمة دائرية الشكل

Shapes

square	مربع	rectangle	مستطيل
circle	دائرة	triangle	مثلث

Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite	العكس
ordinary	عادي	special	خاص / مميز
positive	إيجابي	negative	سلبي

تدوينه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

cool	a nice temperature that is cold, but not too cold	بارد
drone	a small flying object that you can control from the ground; it has no pilot	طائرة تعمل بالتحكم من على الأرض (بدون طيار)
earthquake	a natural event when the ground suddenly moves	زلازل / هزة أرضية
electricity	electric power	كهرباء
yurt	a large circular tent that people can live in	خيمة دائرية الشكل
warm	a nice temperature that is hot but not too hot	دافئ
igloo	a house made of ice and snow	منزل من الجليد
wind turbine	a machine that uses the wind to make electricity	توربين الرياح
solar panel	a flat glass object that uses the sun to make electricity	لوح خلية شمسية

UNIT 10

driverless car a car that can drive itself, without a driver
space an area that you can move around in
rocket an object that can travel to space

سيارة بدون سائق
 فراغ / مساحة
 صاروخ

General Notes on Reading and Listening

1 electricity - electric

- electricity (n)
ex.: The High Dam produces **electricity**.
- electric (adj)
ex.: People will all use **electric** cars.

كهرباء

كهربائي

2 round / around

- round (adj)
ex.: Many traditional houses in the past were **round**.
- around (adv)
 We hear birds singing **around** us.

دائري / مستدير

حول

3

- **less** (less) في نهاية بعض الكلمات تعني «بدون» أو «أقل»
 - a **driverless** car = a car without a driver
 - a **homeless** child = a child who has no house
 - a **useless** plan = a plan with no use

4 solar - lunar

- solar (adj)
ex.: People will use **solar** energy in the future.
- lunar (adj)
ex.: The **lunar** year is different from the year on the Earth.

شمسي

قمرى

5 afraid

- afraid of + (اسم) / (inf + ing)
 - Basem is **afraid of** snakes.
 - Ashraf is **afraid of** flying.
- afraid to + inf. + ...
ex.: Don't be **afraid to** express your own ideas.
- afraid = sorry
 - A: Can I speak to Sara, please?
 B: I'm **afraid**, she is out.

خائف من

خائف أن

أسف

6 sign - signal

- sign
ex.: This **sign** means you mustn't smoke here.
- signal
ex.: He gave me a **signal** to start driving.

لاشبه - لوحة إرشادية

إشارة (صوتية - صوتية)

7 fall - feel - fail - fill

- | | | | | | |
|------|---|--------|---|--------|-------------|
| fall | - | fell | - | fallen | يسقط |
| feel | - | felt | - | felt | يشعر |
| fail | - | failed | - | failed | يرسب / يفشل |
| fill | - | filled | - | filled | يملأ |

اللفظ تصريفات ومماثل هذه الأفعال :

Important expressions & prepositions

design buildings	يصمم مباني	keep	warm	يحتفظ بالدفء
a sign for	علامة لـ	keep	cool	يحتفظ بالبرودة
make predictions	يقوم بعمل تنبؤات	fewer materials		مواد أقل
under the sea	تحت البحر	How fantastic!		كم هو شيء رائع!
listen carefully	يستمع بحرص / بعناية	homes of the future		منازل المستقبل
fall from the roof	يسقط من السطح	get electricity		يولد / يحصل على كهرباء
In what ways ...?	إلى أي مدى؟	make electricity		يولد كهرباء
work on a project	يعمل على إنجاز مشروع	do the housework		يعوم بأعمال المنزل
fall to the ground	يسقط على الأرض	look like		يشبه
heavy snow	ثلج كثيف	use land telephone		يستخدم تليفون أرضي

II

Skills

1. Reading and Listening

تدرب على 1A من قطع الفهم وخصوص الاستماع Pop Quiz

Listening

on Lesson 3 SB page 38

Presenter : Hello, welcome to our podcast⁽¹⁾, Homes of the Future. Today we have a special guest⁽²⁾ - Dina Hassan. She is a famous architect⁽³⁾. Hello Dina.



Check Vocabulary

مهندس معماري مشهور (3) / ضيف مميز (2) / نشرة صوتية (1)

Dina : Hello.

Interviewer : What does an architect do ?

Dina : Well, I design buildings¹ such as houses or schools. I think about what materials² to use and I draw pictures of it.

Interviewer : What are you designing at the moment ?

Dina : I'm working on a project³ for houses for the future. They'll be a bit different to our houses today.

Interviewer : In what ways will they be different ?

Dina : Well, I think we'll need more gardens in the future, but there won't be much space⁴. So the garden will be on the roof.

Interviewer : A garden on the roof, great !

Dina : And I think people will all use electric cars⁵ in the future, so there'll be chargers⁶ for electric car next to the house.

Interviewer : How will people get their electricity ?

Dina : There'll be lots of solar panels⁷ and a wind turbine¹¹. They'll make the electricity.

Interviewer : Great. What else will be different in 2050 ?

Dina : Well, I think there will be robots to do all the housework.

Interviewer : Fantastic! Will people use drones¹² ?

Dina : Yes, I think drones will bring food and parcels¹³ to the house.

Interviewer : What materials will the house be made of ?

Dina : We will use plastic bricks¹⁴ that are very strong. We'll also use a lot of glass and metal. Look, here's a picture of what it will look like.

Interviewer : Oh it's beautiful. Thank you very much Dina for talking to us. I think I'll like living in this house !

Check Vocabulary

1. تصميم مبانٍ 2. مواد خام 3. مشروع 4. فراغ / مساحة 5. سيارات كهربائية 6. شواحن 7. ألواح شمسية 8. توربين الرياح 9. طائرات بدون طيار 10. حطاب طوب بالسيراميك 11. طرود بريدية 12. طوابق 13. حطاب طوب بالسيراميك 14. حطاب طوب بالسيراميك

Reading

on Lesson 3 SB page 39

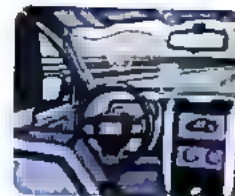
Holidays on the moon

In 2080, you won't go to the beach for your holiday¹. You will go to the moon! There will be rockets² that leave Earth³ every day, and the journey⁴ will take only 12 hours. They will be very fast!



Driverless cars

In 2080, people won't drive a car. We will all have a driverless car⁵. They will be safer⁶ and there won't be any accidents⁷. Students will read a book or watch TV when a computer on the car drives them to school!



Check Vocabulary

- Critical thinking skill

ممارسة التفكير النقدي

Answer

the following questions :

Learn

1. Do you like to have a driverless car ? Why ? Why not ?

- Yes, I do. I think it will be safer and comfortable.

Practise

2. Where do you think will spend their holiday ?

(1) اجازة

(2) صيف

(3) كوكب المريخ

(4) رحلة طويلة

(5) سيارة بلا سائق

(6) أكثر أمان

(7) حوادث

on Lesson 4 SB page 40



An igloo¹ in Canada



A yurt² in Mongolia

Check Vocabulary

1. خيمة دائرية الشكل تستخدم كمأوى مؤقت 2. منزل من الخشب

8. I want a good _____ to design my villa.
a. architect b. pilot c. driver d. teacher

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المفاتيح
9. Students, in the future, won't need to go to schools. They will depend on robot
a. painters b. cooks c. teachers d. doctors

10. The opposite of the word "ordinary" is "____".
a. modern b. negative c. special d. warm

Definitions

11. A nice temperature that is cold but not too cold is called
a. very hot b. freezing c. cool d. warm
12. A/An _____ is a natural event when the ground suddenly moves.
a. earthquake b. hurricane c. storm d. tornado
13. A/An _____ is a house that is made of ice and snow.
a. drone b. igloo c. project d. ground

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. It's easy to _____ warm or cool in round houses.
a. get b. keep c. give d. take
15. Scientists _____ predictions for the future every day.
a. take b. see c. do d. make

2. Speaking

ممارسة التحدث

1 Predicting the future :

التنبؤ بالمستقبل

Subj. + will / won't + inf.

- ex: - There will be electric cars in the future.
- There won't be ordinary mobiles.

2 Expressing ideas and opinions

التعبير عن الأفكار والآراء

1. I think أنا أعتقد
2. I agree with you. أنا أتفق معك
3. I don't agree with you / I disagree with you. أنا لا أتفق معك
4. I'm not sure. أنا غير متأكد
5. I'm to express my own ideas. لكي أعبر عن افكاري الخاصة
6. I would like to أنا أفضّل أن
.....

Welcome to my home!

- ex: 1- A: I think we will use driverless cars.
B: I disagree. I think we will use electric cars.
2 A: I think there will be robot teachers.
B: I'm not sure.

3. Writing

ممارسة الكتابة

Round houses
البيوت المستديرة



1. Many countries have round houses. ١ كثير من الدول لديها بيوت مستديرة
2. Round houses are strong. ٢ البيوت المستديرة قوية
3. Round houses are easier to keep warm or cool. ٣ البيوت المستديرة أسهل في الاحتفاظ بالدفء أو البرودة
4. They are cheap because they use few materials. ٤ هم أرخص لأنهم يستخدمون مواد أقل في بنائها
5. I'd like to live in a round house. ٥ أود أن أعيش في بيت مستدير

III Language



The future with "will" المستقبل باستخدام (will)

Formation التكوين

Affirmative Statements الجملة الخبرية المثبتة

Subject + will + (inf.)
الفاعل سوف مصدر الفعل

ex. He will go to the zoo.

ALT Fwdk.com موقع التقوية

Negative Statements

الجملة السالبة

Subject + will not / won't + (inf.)
مصدر الفعل
ex. He won't go to school tomorrow.

(A) Yes / No question :

will + subject + (inf.)
مصدر الفعل
مما؟

ex. - Will you play football with me?
- Yes, I will.
- No, I won't.

Interrogative

جملة الاستفهام

(B) Wh-question :

question word + will + subject + (inf.)
كلمة الاستفهام
مصدر الفعل
مما؟

ex. - What will you eat for lunch?

Usage

الاستخدام

Prediction without evidence :

يستخدم (will + inf.) عند التنبؤ بأحداث في المستقبل بدون دليل واضح على حدوثها، تبنى صيغة كلمات مثل

I'm sure	expect	think	hope	probable	probably	perhaps
أنا متأكد	تتوقع	أعتقد	أتمنى	محتمل	من المحتمل	ربما

هذا في هذه الجملة تحدث من رأيي في الطقس ولكن ليس معي دليل إذا ما كان الطقس سيكون لطيفا أو لا

ex. I think the weather will be nice later.

كما يمكن ان تستخدم في الحالات الآتية

(1) Quick decision :

(أ) عند اتخاذ قرار سريع (لحظة الكلام) :

ex. - I'm hungry. I'll have a sandwich.

- The phone is ringing. I'll answer it.

(2) Request :

(ب) عند طلب شيء من شخص :

ex. Will you shut the door, please?

(3) Offer :

(أ) عند عرض أو تقديم شيء :

ex. I will help you with your homework.

(4) Facts in the future :

(ب) عند ذكر حقيقة في المستقبل :

ex. Next year, I will be 17 years old.

Stop here! on Language (Answered & Explained)

في هذا الجزء نقدم للطلاب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مناسب له ومصحوب بشرح أسباب الاختيار الإجابة الصحيحة.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Do you think we have robot doctors in the future ?
a. would b. will c. do d. have
- I will 14 next year.
a. be b. are c. is d. been

No.	1	2
a		
b		
c		
d		

Answer + Explanation

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB, WB and previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

- People won't all electric cars.
a. used b. use c. using d. uses
- I think drones will food and parcels to the house.
a. brings b. bringing c. bring d. brought

(Previous Exams 2022)

3. The garden ... be on the roof.

(Previous Exams 2022)

- have b. has c. will d. had
- How does Dina think people will their electricity ?
a. got b. get c. gets d. getting

UNIT 10

5. [9] There will be lots of solar panels. a. being b. been c. be d. to be
6. I think people will drive a car in 2080. a. wouldn't b. won't c. don't d. didn't
7. What will life be like in cities in the future? a. are b. was c. were d. will
8. In 2080, I think we will all have a driverless car. a. are going to b. is going to c. will d. going to

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

9. Will she have a garden on the roof? a. has b. had c. having d. have
10. I think that drones will bring our food and parcels in 2080. a. will b. are going c. going to d. will go
11. My brother will be 17 years old next month. a. is going b. will c. have to d. might
12. I think the weather will be hot tomorrow. a. hasn't b. isn't c. haven't d. won't

2. Read and correct the underlined words:

SB, WB Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. [9] What materials will the house being made of? ()
2. [9] We won't goes to the moon. ()
3. [9] The journey will took only 12 hours. ()
4. [9] What will holidays been like in the future? ()
5. I think we will having solar panels on planes in the future. ()

6. Last year, we will buy a new car. (Menuuf - Monufia 2022) ()

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

7. Perhaps, he call me to visit our friend tomorrow. ()
8. Do you bring me a cup of coffee, please? ()
9. What will happens next week? ()
10. Will we to build houses on the moon? ()

General Exercises

On

LESSONS 3 & 4

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع إلى معلقات واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (الصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. The text is about things will happen
a. in the past b. now c. in the future d. today
2. ... will do the housework.
a. Rabbits b. Bricks c. Robots d. Ropes
3. We will build houses using bricks.
a. glass b. plastic c. wood d. iron
4. Plastic bricks will be
a. expensive b. terrible c. cheap d. hard

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed is asking Ramy about his job.

Ahmed: What's your job?

Ramy: (1)

Ahmed: (2)?

Ramy: An architect designs new buildings.

Ahmed: What are you doing at the moment?

Ramy: (3)

Ahmed: A house! Where will the garden be?

Ramy: (4)

Ahmed: Oh! (5)?

Ramy: Because there won't be much space. (El-Moasser - 2022)

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A / An is a large circular tent that people can live in. (El-Moasser - 2022)
a. drone b. yurt c. igloo d. warm
2. Wind turbines will make (El-Moasser - 2022)
a. electricity b. drones c. sound d. clouds

3. Solar panels get their energy from the
a. moon b. sun c. planet d. earth
4. _____ can leave the Earth to the moon
a. Rockets b. Guns c. Planes d. Rockets
5. When there's a/an _____, we feel the ground suddenly moves.
a. volcano b. earthquake c. wind d. storm
6. In the future, people will use a _____ that flies without a pilot.
a. taxi b. robot c. drone d. boat
7. There will be _____ for electric cars next to the houses.
a. chargers b. freezers c. fridges d. drinks
8. I think we _____ more robots in our schools.
a. had b. have c. will have d. would have
9. Will there _____ ordinary mobiles in the future?
a. is b. are c. be d. were
10. Where will you _____ on holiday?
a. going b. go c. goes d. went

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. I think we would live on the moon; it is my dream. ()

2. I think we have more robots in our schools in 2080. ()

(Sayed Zaimul - Cutro, 2022)

3. Hatem won't goes to the museum. ()

4. Will we to have driverless cars? ()

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on : سحاب منه في نهاية الكلمات

"Round houses"

AltFwork.com موقع التتويج

5 & 6



10 Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

amazing (adj)	مدهش	footballer (n)	لاعب كرة قدم
Mount Kiliminjaro	جبل كليمنجارو	diagram (n)	رسم توضيحي
timeline (n)	جدول زمني / تسلسل زمني	technology (n)	تكنولوجيا
divide (d) (v)	نقسم	calendar(n)	بندقة / تقويم

Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها. **تنويه**

5

Pop Quiz

تدريب تفقدي بهدف التيقن المفردات اللغوية

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

diagrams - calendar - divided - amazing - technology

- Making _____ helps students to learn easily.
- You should look at the _____ to know today's date.
- Our teacher _____ us into two groups.
- All the ideas Ali suggested were _____.

Lesson 5

SB page 41 WB page 97

events (n)	أحداث	African (adj)	أفريقي
European (adj)	أوروبي	Champions League (n)	دوري البطول
Switzerland (n)	سويسرا	date (n)	تاريخ

Lesson 6

SB page 42 WB page 98

creative (adj)	مبتكر / إبداعي	decide (d) (v)	يقرر / يحدد
task (n)	مهمة	shape (n)	شكل
details (n)	تفاصيل	introductory (n)	مقدمة تعيدية
explain (ed) (v)	يفسر / يشرح	topic sentence (n)	جملة رئيسية
heading (n)	عنوان / رأس الموضوع	compare (d) (v)	يقارن
imagination (n)	خيال / تخیل		

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

Present المصارع	Past الماضي
keep يحافظ	kept
bear يتحمل	bore

تصريف الفعل غير المنتظمة
التصريف الثالث P.P.
kept
bore

للتعبير
هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions

imagination	using the mind to think creatively
round	with a shape like a circle

ادرس هذه التعريفات

General Notes on Reading & Listening

- 1 move house = move to a new house
ex.: Last year, I moved house / moved to a new house in Giza.
- 2 (be) born in ... (مكان / سنة)
ex.: Jana was born in 2008.
- 3 learn + (how) to + inf.
ex.: I learned (how) to ride a bike when I was young.
- 4 in detail
ex.: Tell me everything about you in detail.

Important expressions & prepositions

have fun يستمتع	change any ideas that don't work
as many ... as you can بقدر ما تستطيع	أفكار لا تؤدي الغرض
play for يلعب لصالح (فريق)	African footballer of the year in 2017
European Champions League	أحسن لاعب أفريقي لعام ٢٠١٧
draw a plan يرسم خطة	start school يبدأ دراسة
I hope so anyway أتمنى ذلك على أي حال	compare with يقارن بـ
different to مختلف عن	write down يكتب
	make a plan يضع خطة

Skills

Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
أدرب على 10 من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Reading

on Lesson 6 SB page 42

How to plan⁽¹⁾ a creative⁽²⁾ writing task.

First, think of as many ideas⁽³⁾ as you can. What will the house look like⁽⁴⁾? What will it be made of? What will be different to houses of today? You can write down⁽⁵⁾ or draw your ideas.



Use your imagination⁽⁶⁾ and have fun!⁽⁷⁾ Then, decide⁽⁸⁾ which of your ideas are the best. Keep the other ideas for another time. Finally, think about your best ideas in more detail⁽⁹⁾. How can you make the idea work?



Make a plan⁽¹⁰⁾ (maybe in a diagram⁽¹¹⁾ or drawing). You can change⁽¹²⁾ any ideas that don't work⁽¹³⁾.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) يخطط
- (2) إبداعي
- (3) أفكار
- (4) يشبه
- (5) يكتب
- (6) خيال
- (7) استمتع
- (8) أقرر
- (9) تفاصيل أكثر
- (10) وضع خطة
- (11) رسم توضيحي
- (12) يغير
- (13) غير مفيدة / لا تؤدي الغرض

Answer

the following questions:

1. How can you make the idea work after you write it down?
- You can make a plan, the plan maybe in a diagram or a drawing.
2. What can you do after you think of any idea don't work?

موقع التفوق
ALTFlow.com

on Lesson 5 WB page 95

1. Today I am going to describe what I think holidays will be like in the future.
2. I am going to describe how I planned the school building you can see above.
3. I am going to describe how I planned the school building you can see above.



Listening

on Lesson 5 WB page 97

Mohamed Salah was born in Cairo in 1992. He started playing football for El-Mohawad in 2010. He then moved to Switzerland to play for Basel in 2012.
In 2014, he went to London to play for Chelsea. Three years later, in 2017, he went to play for Liverpool. Mohamed Salah was also African Footballer of the Year in 2017 and in 2019 he won the European Champions League with Liverpool.

Check Vocabulary

محمّد صلاح / ولد في القاهرة / بدأ لعب كرة القدم في 2010 / انتقل إلى سويسرا / لعب في تشيلسي / انتقل إلى ليفربول / فاز بالبطولة الأوروبية في 2019

on Lesson 5 SB page 41

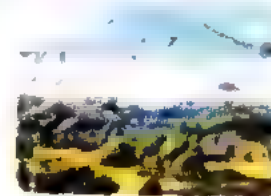
- A** 1. twenty, forty
2. twenty, twenty
3. twenty, thirty-five
4. nineteen, twenty-nine
- B** ten, sixty-six / two thousand / nineteen twenty-three / two thousand and eight / three thousand and one / twenty-seven, five

Welcome to my home!



online

Hi I'm Basel. These are the important events in my life.
I was born in 2007 in Alexandria.
I started school in 2012.
I liked my school!
I learned to ride a bike in 2013.
I love my bike!
In 2018, we moved house.
We live in Cairo now.
In 2019, we went on holiday to the Red Sea. It was amazing!
In 2023! I will climb Mount Kilimanjaro - I hope so anyway!



Check Vocabulary

أهلاً بي أنا / أنا من الإسكندرية / بدأت المدرسة في 2012 / أحب مدرستي / تعلمت ركوب الدراجة في 2013 / أحب دراجتي / في 2018، انتقلنا من البيت / نحن نعيش في القاهرة الآن / في 2019، ذهبنا في إجازة إلى البحر الأحمر. كان رائعاً / في 2023! سأصعد جبل كيليمانجارو - أتمنى ذلك

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

1. Write the important events in your life in a
a. time b. timeline c. map d. corner
2. The new film looks . I'll watch it at the cinema tomorrow.
a. ancient b. boring c. warm d. amazing
3. Modern has improved our life a lot.
a. sizes b. champions c. technology d. texts

SB, WB and previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات وامتحانات سابقة

4. I want to how I planned the school building you can see above.
a. explain b. draw c. compare d. move
5. Mohamed Salah the European Champions League with Liverpool in 2019.
a. won b. bore c. found d. kept
6. your plans with other students. Which plan is the best?
a. Have b. Think c. Compare d. Learn

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات خلف المعاصر

7. Circle, square, pyramid and oval are all
a. numbers b. shells c. tasks d. shapes
8. I'm so busy on Friday. I have many to do.
a. reasons b. risks c. tasks d. details

- 9 Egypt is an African
a city b town c country d village
- 10 All the ideas he suggested were
a creative b creature c alive d living
- 11 Hatem was in 2011. He's twelve years old now.
a born b drawn c learned d kept

Definitions تعريفات

- 12 means using the mind to think creatively.
a Project b Idea c Imagination d Champion
- 13 means with a shape like a circle
a Amazing b Round c Creative d Size

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

- 14 You should think about your new ideas in to choose the best.
a total b detail c careful d problem
- 15 In 2012, Mr Ahmed to a new house.
a took b moved c born d lived

2. Speaking

مهارات التحدث

Saying years :

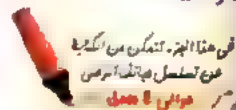
كيفية نطق السنوات :

- a We usually divide the years into two parts :
2050 = twenty fifty 1977 = nineteen seventy seven
- b For the year 2000, we say :
2000 = two thousand
- c For the years 2001, 2009 we say :
2001 = two thousand and one / 2006 = two thousand and six

3. Writing

مهارات الكتابة

Your timeline
تسلسل ذكائك الزمني



1. I was born in nineteen ninety five. ١ ولدت في عام ١٩٩٥
2. I started school in two thousand and one. ٢ بدأت الدراسة في عام ٢٠٠١
3. I learnt to ride a bike in 2010. ٣ تعلمت ركوب الدراجة عام ٢٠١٠
4. I moved to a new house in twenty seventeen. ٤ انتقلت إلى منزل جديد عام ٢٠١٧

General Exercises



LESSONS 5 & 6

• Listen • Read • Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى ملفات وأسمع للامانة المتحدثة انصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. In , we moved house.
a. 2013 b. 2018 c. 2012 d. 1990
2. We went on a holiday to .
a. the River Nile b. the Red Sea c. Cairo d. Alexandria
3. Now, we live in .
a. Cairo b. the Red Sea c. Aswan d. Luxor
4. I learned to a bike in 2013.
a. drive b. buy c. ride d. give

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. When you think creatively, then you have
a. imagination b. diagram c. grammar d. kilogram
2. 59 Make a of what you are going to do.
a. plan b. plane c. plain d. pain
3. He to buy a new car after he had had money.
a. divided b. decided c. explained d. kept
4. 60 Enjoy your time and have .
a. fun b. fan c. fine d. final
5. My brother will a mountain when he visits China.
a. ride b. climb c. take d. explain
6. Remember to be when you plan your house in the future.
a. active b. creative c. voluntary d. related
7. 61 I was born 2008.
a. in b. on c. at d. by
8. What technology in the future ?
a. did you have b. do you have c. will you have d. you have

9. In 2030, there many good teachers at my school
a are b were c. will be d would be
10. Omar and his father alike.
a. take b look c make d do

3 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. She is born in 2010.
2. We will had modern technology in the future.
3. Which house will you live on ?
4. Write on your own ideas.

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Planning your future home"



Review

on unit 10

SB page 43 WB page 99

Vocabulary	Language	Speaking
cotton glass leather metal plastic stone wallet roof taps solar panels wind turbines earthquake robot advantages wool tablet bricks oven electric car driverless cars	<p>1- Describing materials :</p> <p>What is it / هو ماذا ؟ It is made of / هو مصنوع من They are made of / هم مصنوعون من</p> <p>What is the jumper made of ? It is made of wool.</p> <p>2- will / won't for predictions :</p> <p>There will be electric cars in the future. We won't use landline telephones. Will we live on the moon ? Where will you live in the future ?</p>	<p>1. Saying what things are made of الحديث عن ما تصنع الأشياء</p> <p>- What is the sofa made of ? - It is made of leather. - What are the cushions made of ? - They are made of cotton.</p> <p>2. Predicting the future التنبؤ بما سيحدث في المستقبل</p> <p>- I think we will use driverless cars in 2050. - I disagree I think we'll all use electric cars.</p>

SKILL 5

Speaking

ماذا ستكون الحياة في عام 2080؟
ماذا ستكون الحياة في عام 2080؟

Questions	Answers	Arabic
1 What are the richest made of?	They are made of cotton	من قطن
2 What is your bag made of?	It is made of leather	من جلد
3 Do you think we will all use driverless cars?	I think not all people will use driverless cars	لا أعتقد
4 Do you think there will be robot teachers?	I'm not sure about that.	لا أعرف

Writing Task

تأمل معارة الكائنات من الحضارات القديمة التي بنيت من طوب أو صخر أو فخار.
استخدم عقلك وابدع أفكاراً جديدة. ثم اقرأ هذه الفقرات لتساعدك على حل سؤال المهمة.
المهمة: في الورقة المرفقة (23) اكتب...

"Houses of Dair el Medina"

There was a village called Dair el Medina in ancient Egypt. There were old houses in that village. The houses walls were made of bricks. The doors were made of wood. The people painted their houses white, with red doors. The houses had a kitchen and a living room, but there weren't any bedrooms. People usually slept on the roof because it was very hot at night. There was usually an oven for bread in the kitchen. There weren't any taps. People got their water from the Nile Valley about two kilometers away.

Welcome to my house!

2 "What life will be like in 2080 (in the future)"

Homes of the future will be a bit different. I think we'll need more gardens in the future, but there won't be much space. The gardens will be on the roof. I think people will all use electric cars in the future. There will be chargers for electric cars next to the house where you live. There will be lots of solar panels and wind turbines to make electricity. I think there will be robots to do all the housework. Also I think drones will bring food and parcels to the house.

3 Types of houses around the world

Many traditional houses in the past were round. Also there are rectangular and square houses. Many modern houses are also round. A round shape means the building is very strong. This is important when there is an earthquake or in strong winds. Heavy snow or rain will fall from the roof. A round house is also easier to keep warm or cool.

4 How to plan a creative task

First, think of as many ideas as you can. You can write down or draw your ideas. Use your imagination and have fun! Try to decide which of your ideas are the best. Keep the other ideas for another time. Finally, think about your best ideas in more detail. Don't forget to make a plan by using a diagram or drawing. You can change any ideas that don't work.

AltFwd.com موقع التتويج

Test

on unit 10

مملك حل الاختبار
الكتابي والصوي

• Create

A. Listening

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع إلى مملك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة من بين الخيارات في نهاية الكتاب

- Mohamed Salah was born in ...
a. Cairo b. Zagazig c. Fayoum d. Alexandria
- Salah played for ... in 2010.
a. El Mokawloon b. Basel c. Liverpool d. Al Ahly
- Mohamed Salah was born in ...
a. 1994 b. 1991 c. 1992 d. 1996
- ... is in Switzerland.
a. Basel b. Liverpool c. Manchester d. El Mokawloon

B. Language Function

2. Complete the following dialogue:

Wafaa asks Tasneem about her new shoes.

Wafaa : I like your new shoes, what are they made of?

Tasneem : (1) _____

Wafaa : (2) _____?

Tasneem : I bought them last week.

Wafaa : Who got them for you?

Tasneem : (3) _____

Wafaa : (4) _____?

Tasneem : It was my birthday.

Wafaa : Great. Can you come with me to buy a pair of shoes for me?

Tasneem : (5) _____

(Ed/for - Aswan 2022)

C. Reading Comprehension

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

Many traditional houses in the past were round. Today, many modern houses are also round. Why is this? There are lots of reasons! A round

Welcome to my home!

shape means the building is very strong. This is important when there is an earthquake or in strong winds. Also, heavy snow or rain will fall from the roof. A round house is also easier to keep warm or cool. It is also quieter inside a round building than a building that is a rectangle or square. Finally, a round building uses fewer materials, so it is cheaper to make. It also has more space inside. How fantastic!

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined word "roof" is the place ... of a building.
a. at the bottom b. at the top c. inside d. in front
- The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the ... building.
a. round b. empty c. square d. rectangle
- Round, square and rectangle are all ... for buildings.
a. places b. shapes c. pieces d. spaces

b. Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of the passage?
- Do you think that traditional houses were comfortable? Why / Why not?
- What happens when there's heavy snow or rain?

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- We can get electricity from solar
a. planes b. panels c. pens d. poles
- I enjoyed my journey. It was really
a. amazing b. amazed c. expensive d. excited
- The word "ancient" is the opposite of
a. old b. traditional c. modern d. able
- The people ... their houses white, with red doors in Deir e-Medina.
a. played b. painted c. ate d. drove

AltFudk.com موقع التكوين

UNIT 10

Understand Apply Create

- 5. Change the ideas that don't
 - a. make
 - b. do
 - c. work
 - d. take
- 6. People got their water from the Nile, about 2 km away.
 - a. Island
 - b. Kitchen
 - c. Temple
 - d. Valley
- 7. Mum used the _____ to make bread.
 - a. oven
 - b. carpets
 - c. curtains
 - d. cushions
- 8. I think people _____ live on the moon in the future.
 - a. would
 - b. be
 - c. will
 - d. are
- 9. There weren't _____ books here.
 - a. any
 - b. no
 - c. some
 - d. one
- 10. He'll _____ to Luxor soon.
 - a. travelling
 - b. to travel
 - c. travels
 - d. travel

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. SB I think people will all used electric cars.
2. WB There weren't some TVs in 1900.
3. What is your sunglasses made of ?
4. There will been modern houses in the future.

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Houses in the future"



Stop here !

1. Mini Test on unit 10 for Al-Azhar students

اختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues :

- A. Sami : _____ ?
 Ali : Car seats are made of leather
- B. Marwa : What does an architect do ?
 Dina : _____

2 Write a paragraph of five sentences about :

"Round houses"

2. Use your brain, think smart

طبق ما تعلمته واحذر ذكائك

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The wild animals live in the
 a. wood b. wool c. cotton d. metal
2. I don't like this plan, it's
 a. useful b. useless c. used d. a use
3. Study well or you'll
 a. fill b. fell c. fail d. feel
4. Which of these is correct ?
 a. a pair of sock b. pair of sock
 c. two pair of socks d. a pair of socks
5. Don't be afraid your own ideas.
 a. shares b. sharing c. share d. to share

Quiz

on marks 7, 8, 9 & 10

اختبار تراكس على الوحدات (٧، ٨، ٩، ١٠)

يقوم المعلم باختيار اختبار صغير (واحد) من (A) or (B) لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمعلومات الواردة في الوحدات

Model A

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Cairo has _____ than Aswan.
a. most population b. more population
c. least population d. population
- It _____ last night and it was cold.
a. raining b. rains c. rain d. rained
- There is a singing _____ to choose a chorus.
a. exclamation b. pollution c. competition d. exhibition
- She is a _____ in a famous band.
a. musician b. writer c. player d. sailor
- It's easy to _____ warm or cool in round houses.
a. make b. keep c. give d. take

Model B

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Take care of _____. It's a dangerous adventure.
a. herself b. themselves c. yourself d. itself
- I'm not sure, I think it _____ of cotton.
a. made b. will make c. making d. is made
- If a metal coin fell in the water, it'll _____.
a. sink b. move c. float d. dive
- The castle was built on stone _____.
a. shows b. valleys c. columns d. fires
- All you need to go _____ is a boat and some wind.
a. sailing b. trekking c. diving d. zip lining

March assessment

اختبار شهر مارس

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (تعرض الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

- Eman is in
a. Hurghada b. Dahab c. Siwa d. Ras Shetan
- She is with her
a. teachers b. friends c. family d. cousins
- They are going to go in the mountains.
a. travelling b. trekking c. rock climbing d. zip lining
- Rock climbing is too for Eman.
a. interesting b. exciting c. boring d. scary

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ali and Salim are talking about Mohamed Salah.

Ali : Do you know Mohamed Salah ?

Salim : (1)

Ali : (2) ?

Salim : He was born in 1992.

Ali : (3) ?

Salim : He plays in England for Liverpool.

Ali : Is he good at scoring goals ?

Salim : (4)

Ali : What do you think about his character ?

Salim : (5)

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Marwan is a very smart boy in the third grade. He always remembers his homework and does well in all of his tests. Last Sunday, he woke up late and quickly left his house. When he arrived at school, he noticed that

his homework was not in his school bag. Marwan was upset because his teacher, Mrs Maha, gets angry when students don't do their homework. He started to get worried but he decided to be brave and apologize to his teacher and tell her he won't do that again. Mrs Maha wasn't angry as she knows that Marwan is a good student.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined pronoun "he" refers to
a. Marwan's brother b. Marwan's cousin
c. Marwan d. Marwan's friend
- Mrs Maha becomes _____ when her students forget their homework.
a. bored b. proud c. excited d. angry
- The underlined word "smart" means
a. happy b. proud c. clever d. polite

b. Answer the following questions:

4. Why did Marwan leave his house quickly?

5. What is the main idea of the passage?

6. Why do you think Mrs Maha wasn't angry with Marwan?

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- They went _____ across Sinai.
a. tricking b. picking c. joking d. trekking
- There was a storm, so the boat _____.
a. floated b. sank c. flew d. built
- _____ you going to study French?
a. Will b. Have c. Did d. Are
- Is there _____ rice in the bag?
a. many b. few c. any d. some

- _____ are small planes without pilots.
a. Drowns b. Drones c. Tunnels d. Tools
- All, please behave _____.
a. myself b. yourself c. themselves d. himself
- Scientists can _____ predictions about the future.
a. play b. steal c. make d. take
- He looked at the _____ to see if he was injured.
a. sand b. mirror c. cupboard d. medal
- In villages, people use _____ to make bread.
a. bins b. fans c. ovens d. curtains
- We must _____ other people.
a. respect b. hate c. learn d. spend

5. Read and correct the underlined words:

- There will been holidays on the moon. (_____)
- Hatem and Ramy went shopping by himself. (_____)
- He is going to spent a week in Dahab. (_____)
- Most furniture make of wood. (_____)

E. Writing

6. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Adventure sports in Egypt"



UNIT

11

On land
and sea

موقع
التفوق
ALTFWOK



• Reading

A paragraph about sea life, a leaflet about plastic pollution, The Old Man and the Sea

• Writing

Writing rules, writing an advertisement, a text explaining a beach clean up day

• Listening

A talk at a nature reserve

• Speaking

Talking about saving the environment

• Language

Zero conditional, must/mustn't, should/shouldn't, asking for giving and sequencing instructions

• Life Skills

Collaboration, setting clear goals

• العلامة ٥؟ نسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب
• العلامة ١٠؟ نسبق أسئلة كتاب التلميذ

• تدريب على الطلاب الأحرار الشرفية مع نهاية كل وحدة والمناقشة
• اختبارات شهرية داخل كتاب التلميذ
• جزء للمراجعة اليومية وإثبات المفردات الجديدة (المسجلة) مع نهاية كل وحدة

1 & 2

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

coral reef (n)	شعاب مرجانية	shell (n)	صدفة / قوقعة
jellyfish (n)	جوز البحر	tail (n)	ذيل
octopus (n)	أخطبوط	sea turtle (n)	سلحفاة بحرية
stingray (n)	سمكة الراي الشبح	whale (n)	حوت
sea life (n)	حياة بحرية	environment (n)	البيئة
ocean (n)	بحر	recycle (d) (v)	يعيد تصنيع
sting (v)	يأذي	rubbish (n)	قمامة
poisonous (adj)	سام	shark (n)	سمكة قرش

تذكير: Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.

5
TWO

Pop Quiz

تدريب تقالي يهدف لربط المفردات الجديدة

• Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

ocean - whale - turtles - octopus - environment

1. The is bigger than the sea.
2. The has eight legs and lives at the bottom of the sea.
3. The is everything around us.
4. All have shells on their back.

Lesson 1

SB pages 44 & 45 WB page 100

danger (n)	خطر	facts (n)	حقائق
flat (adj)	مسطح	away (adv)	بعيداً
hard (adj)	صلب	turn (ed) (v)	يتحول
touch (ed) (v)	يلمس	laugh (ed) (v)	يضحك

Lesson 2

SB pages 46 & 47 WB page 101

save (d) (v)	يحفظ	planet (n)	كوكب
everywhere (adv)	في كل مكان	necessary (n)	ضروري

أولئك الذين هم في
القواعد المرورية (n)
التي

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs		
الصيغة	الماضي	الماضي البعيد
bite	bitten	bitten
grow	grown	grown
lose	lost	lost
sting	stung	stung
forget	forgotten	forgotten

Words and Opposites

الكلمة	العكس
fast	slow
die	live
forget	remember

تلميح: هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب أصل وشك التعريفات وجميع التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التعريفات.

Study these definitions

أدرس هذه التعريفات	
coral reef	a hard area of something like rock made from small sea animals (coral)
environment	the world around us
flat	having no high areas
jellyfish	a sea animal with a soft body that you can see through. It stings when you touch it
ocean	a large sea
whale	it is the largest sea animal in the world
octopus	a sea animal with eight legs
planets	objects like the Earth that go around the sun
poisonous	if something is poisonous, it can make you very ill or kill you
recycle	use again
rubbish	things we do not need
shark	a large, dangerous sea animal with sharp teeth

shell	the hard part on the outside of a turtle, nut etc.
sting	if an animal stings you, it hurts you to protect itself
stingray	a big, flat fish with a long tail that can sting
tail	the part that is at the end of an animal's body
throw away	put something you do not need somewhere
sea turtle	a large sea animal with a hard shell on its back

Collocations

تراكيب لفظية	
take	time a photo
have	a test

General Notes on Reading & Listening

- one of the + صفة لفظية + اسم جمع
ex.: (1) The shark is one of the most dangerous sea animals in the ocean.
- protect from
ex.: (2) How do fish and sea animals protect themselves from danger?
- flat
• a flat (n)
ex.: - Hoda lives in a small flat.
• flat (adj)
ex.: - This table has a flat round top.
- die from - die of - die out
• die from
ex.: (3) Every year, more than 100,000 sea animals and birds die from plastic.
• die of
ex.: - His uncle died of cancer
• die out
ex.: - Dinosaurs died out millions of years ago.

Important expressions & prepositions

make oceans dirty	بجعل المحيطات قذرة	swim away	سبح بعيدا
stay safe	ببقى آمنا	walk on the grass	مشى على العشب
stay in	ببقى هناك	get home from	رجع للمنزل من
get rid of	بخلص من	give us clean air	اعطنا هواء نظيفا
run across	سلك	dangerous for	خطير على
jump out of the water	قفز خارج الماء	feel tired	شعر بالتعب
more than once	أكثر من مرة	hit with their tails	ضربوا بذيولهم
throw away	رمى بعيدا	find a safe place to cross	وجد طريقا آمنا للعبور
take a long time	استغرق وقتا طويلا	in danger	في خطر
use again = recycle	استخدم مرة أخرى / إعادة التدوير	easier to recycle	أسهل في إعادة التدوير
at the same time	في نفس الوقت	necessary to + inf.	تدريجي
take off	أقلم (أو خذ)	(be) not allowed to + inf.	غير مسموح
go into the shell	دخل في القشرة	on roads	على الطرق
feel ill	شعر بالمرض	go around the sun	يدور حول الشمس
fall asleep	سبحر في النوم	on land	على أرض يابسة

Skills

2. Reading and Listening

Reading

on Lesson 1 SB page 45



Dangers of the sea

The shark is one of the most dangerous sea animals in the ocean⁽²⁾. If it loses⁽¹⁾ a tooth, a new one grows⁽⁴⁾. A shark uses more than 20,000 teeth in its life!

Check Vocabulary

(1) يفقد (2) محيط (3) ينمو (4) ينمو

So how do fish and sea animals⁽¹⁾ protect⁽²⁾ themselves from danger? A ⁽³⁾ is a big, flat⁽⁴⁾ fish and it lives in the coral reef. If it knows a shark is coming, it jumps out of the water!



A sea turtle⁽⁵⁾ has a hard shell⁽⁶⁾ to protect it. Other animals can swim very fast - the octopus⁽⁷⁾ has got eight legs to help it!

Some sea life, like the jellyfish⁽⁸⁾, is poisonous⁽⁹⁾. It stings⁽¹⁰⁾ you when you touch it.

What about the whales⁽¹¹⁾? These big, heavy animals hit with their big tails⁽¹²⁾!

Check Vocabulary

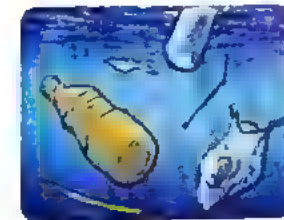
حيوانات بحرية (1)	يحمي (2)	سكة الزئبق (3)	مستطو/مستطوح (4)	مخاطبة بحرية (5)	صدمة (6)
الخطوط (7)	شندل البحر (8)	سم (9)	يأذي (10)	خنازير (11)	ذيل (12)

on Lesson 2 SB page 46

We must save⁽¹⁾ our planet⁽²⁾!

Plastic⁽³⁾ is everywhere! We use it for many different things. The problem is, plastic stays in the environment⁽⁴⁾ for a very long time.

Some of the plastic people find on beaches is about 100 years old! We can recycle⁽⁵⁾ some plastic, but most of it goes into the ocean. Plastic is poisonous when animals eat it. Every year, more than 100,000 sea animals and birds die from plastic.



Check Vocabulary

يعد تصليح (1) كوكب (2) بلاستيك (3) هبة (4) إعادة تدوير (5)

We must try to use other materials⁽⁶⁾ - paper and glass, for example - because these are easier to recycle.

When we use a plastic shopping bag, we mustn't throw away these bags in rivers.

It will take a long time to clean all the plastic ~~bags~~ from the beaches and the ocean. But we mustn't stop trying to help our planet!



(6) مواد خام
(7) النفايات

Giving the main idea and Extracting informations
إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية واستخراج المعلومات

Answer
the following
questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?
- We must save our planet.
2. Which two materials are easier to recycle than plastic?

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

- The _____ is everything around us. We must keep it clean.
a. sea b. environment c. planet d. plant
- The _____ is the biggest sea animal in the world.
a. elephant b. whale c. horse d. stingray
- Plastic is _____, so sea animals and birds die from it.
a. useful b. healthy c. poisonous d. clean

SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

4. A _____ is poisonous. It stings you when you touch it.
a. sea turtle b. whale c. shark d. jellyfish

(Al Sayeda Zainab - Cairo 2022)

5. It has a hard shell to protect it. It is a/an _____.
a. octopus b. shark c. turtle d. whale

(Haram - Giza 2022)

6. The whales which are heavy sea animals hit with their big _____.
a. hands b. wings c. legs d. tails

7. The _____ is one of the most dangerous sea animals in the ocean.
a. jellyfish b. turtle c. shark d. octopus

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات على المفردات

- We don't need these old things. You can put them with the _____.
a. plastic b. planet c. rubbish d. shark
- My _____ hurt me, I need to visit the dentist.
a. hands b. legs c. eyes d. teeth
- A jellyfish will _____ you if you touch it.
a. sing b. bring c. sting d. watch

Definitions تعريفات

- _____ are objects like the Earth that go around the sun.
a. planets b. planes c. plans d. plains
- To " _____ " means putting something you don't need somewhere.
a. put on b. come into c. throw away d. put up
- A/An _____ is a sea animal which has eight legs.
a. jellyfish b. octopus c. shark d. whale

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

- How do fish and sea animals protect themselves _____ danger?
a. of b. from c. off d. about
- The octopus swims very fast when it's _____ danger.
a. out b. at c. on d. in

2. Speaking

محادثة التحدث

1. Describing sea animals

أ. وصف الحيوانات البحرية

- It can swim _____ .
أ. يمكنه السباحة
- It has (عدد) _____ .
ب. له (عدد) أرجل/زعنفة
- It lives in _____ .
ج. يعيش في
- The _____ is very dangerous.
د. سمكة القرش
- A _____ is a big, flat fish.
هـ. سمكة الراي

2. Talking about the rules (What we must / mustn't do) ...

ف. التحدث عن القواعد (ما يجب ولا يجب علينا القيام به)

Asking for opinions السؤال عن الرأي

Giving opinions إعطاء الرأي

1. A: What must I do when I cross the road?

أ- ما الذي يجب القيام به عندما أعبّر الطريق؟

2. A: What mustn't you do on roads?

ب- ما الذي يجب عليك عدم القيام به على الطرق؟

B: You must look left and right.

يجب عليك أن تنظر جهة اليسار وجهة اليمين.

B: We mustn't play games on roads.

يجب علينا ألا نلعب ألعاب على الطرق.

Writing

Ways to save the environment

طرق للحفاظ على البيئة

1. We mustn't use a lot of plastic materials.
لا يجب علينا أن نستخدم الكثير من المواد البلاستيكية.
2. Plastic materials are very dangerous and damage the environment.
المواد البلاستيكية خطيرة جدا وتضر البيئة.
3. We must try to use safe materials like paper and glass.
يجب علينا أن نحاول استخدام مواد آمنة مثل الورق والزجاج.
4. We must keep our planet safe and clean.
يجب علينا أن نحافظ على كوكبنا آمن ونظيف.

Language

(1) Zero conditional with (If or When)

Formation

① Statements الجمل الخبرية	If / when إذا / لو - عندما	present simple tense زمن المضارع البسيط	→	present simple tense زمن المضارع البسيط
	present simple tense زمن المضارع البسيط	←	If / when إذا / لو - عندما	present simple tense زمن المضارع البسيط

لاحظ وضع comma (,) قبل بداية الجملة الثانية في حالة وجود (If / When) في البداية

Usage

1. We use the zero conditional to say what always happens if/when a certain action takes place.
نستخدم للتعبير عن حدث يحدث دائما عندما يحدث شيء آخر معين.
ex - I say hello when I see my friends.
- I wear my jacket if it is cold.

2. We use the present simple to talk about the action (with if or when) and the result.
نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط عند الحديث عن شيء يحدث مع (if/when) لوصف ما يتكرر دائما من نتائج.

ex - I go to bed when I'm tired. - When I'm tired, I go to bed.

3. It expresses true situations.
فعبير عن مواقف حقيقية.

ex - If / When you touch the screen, the game starts.
- I use my dictionary if/when I don't know a word.

4. It describes facts related to (nature, physics and astronomy ...).
تصف حقائق ترتبط بالطبيعة والفيزياء والفضاء ...

ex - If you put an orange into water, it floats.
- When you add oil to some water, the oil floats.
- If/When something has enough air in it, it doesn't sink.

استخدام (If / When) في صيغة الاستفهام :

Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

- ex - Do you feel ill if/when you eat too many sweets ?
- When you eat too many sweets, do you feel ill ?
- What do you do if/when your friend feels sad ?
- What happens if/when you mix red with blue ?

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة SB, WB and Previous Exams

1. WB When I feel ill, I to bed.
a. goes b. go c. went d. gone
2. SB If you a jellyfish, it stings you.
a. touched b. touches c. touch d. touching
3. SB When I am hungry, I something to eat.
a. had b. has c. have d. having
4. If Fatma a lot of TV, she feels tired. (Musharraf 6: Arabic Exam 2021)
a. watch b. watching c. watches d. watched
5. WB we hear something funny, we all laugh.
a. Why b. When c. What d. Where

El-Moasser Exercises

6. When you leave ice in the sun, it water.
a. became b. becomes c. becoming d. become
7. If I rubbish on the ground, I put it in the rubbish bin.
a. sees b. saw c. see d. seen
8. I wear my jacket it is cold.
a. without b. so c. if d. but
9. If you put ice outside a freezer, it
a. melts b. melt c. melting d. melted
10. What if you put a coin into water?
a. happening b. happens c. happen d. is happened

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. If we don't water the plants, they died.
2. Where I've got a test, I always study hard.
3. When it is very cold, water turned into ice.
4. When my grandfather is tired, he falling a sleep.
5. If you heat water, it boil.
6. When I'm tired, I going to bed.

El-Moasser Exercises

7. If people eats too many sweets, they get fat.
8. She buys expensive clothes where she goes shopping.
9. The river freezes if it be very cold.
10. If we made noise in class, our teacher feels angry.

(2) must / mustn't

Usage

We use "must" to talk about things that are necessary to do.

We use "mustn't" to talk about things that you are not allowed to do.

نستخدم "must / mustn't" عندما نريد أن نقول أنه من الضروري القيام أو عدم القيام بشئ ما.

Formation

Subject (الفاعل) + must / mustn't + (Inf.)

- ex. - You must listen carefully to your teachers.
- You mustn't use a mobile phone in the class.

Interrogative

We use "must / mustn't" to ask for necessity

نستخدم "must / mustn't" لسؤال عن الضرورة

must + subject (الفاعل) + Inf. (المصدر) ... ?

- ex. - Must I buy a ticket? - Yes, you must buy a ticket.

question word + must / mustn't + subject + Inf. (المصدر) ... ?

- ex. - Where must I put the rubbish? - You must put it in a trash bin.
- What mustn't you do on roads? - We mustn't play games on roads.

(3) should / shouldn't.

Usage

We use "should/shouldn't" to talk about things that are good ideas to do or not to do.

نستخدم "should/shouldn't" عندما نريد أن نتحدث عن أشياء جيدة أو غير جيدة للقيام بها.

Formation

Subject (الفاعل) + should / shouldn't + (Inf.)

- ex. - We should recycle plastic. - You shouldn't waste your time.

Interrogative

Should + subject (الفاعل) + Inf. (المصدر) ... ?

- ex. - Should I finish the story today? - No, you shouldn't.
- Yes, you should.

question word + should/shouldn't + subject (الفاعل) + Inf. (المصدر) ?

ex. - What should I do to keep fit? - You should do more exercises.

Stop here! on Language (Answered & Explained)

في هذا الجزء نقدم للطلاب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مع جواب عنه ومصحوب بشرح أسباب اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- When it is very cold, water into ice.
a. turns b. turning c. turned d. turn
- She join the Faculty of Medicine. She is very clever.
a. mustn't b. may not c. should d. couldn't
- You listen carefully to your teacher.
a. must b. mustn't c. shouldn't d. can't
- You walk on the grass.
a. must b. mustn't c. should d. could

No.	a	c	b	4
	a	c	b	3
	a	c	b	2
	a	c	b	1

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB and Previous Exams التدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

- The animals eat plastic.
a. must b. mustn't c. should d. have to
- What must you before exams?
a. do b. to do c. doing d. did (Samalut Minya 2022)
- What should I first?
a. done b. did c. doing d. do

- You mustn't angry with people you don't agree with.
a. be b. being c. been d. to be
- You run across the road. It's not safe.
a. should b. must c. can d. mustn't
- Sara must rubbish in the bins.
a. put b. are putting c. puts d. putting (Amreya Alexandria 2022)
- What we do with the rubbish we find?
a. have b. had c. should d. haven't (West Port Said 2022)
- You speak in the library loudly.
a. mustn't b. can't c. must d. can (El Tor - South Sinai 2022)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

- Heba take a taxi. She is very late.
a. can b. must c. can't d. mustn't
- You look left and right when you cross the road.
a. must b. mustn't c. can d. can't

2. Read and correct the underlined words:

SB, WB and Previous Exams التدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

- You shouldn't made decisions or rules yourself. (.....)
- We must make a lot of noise. (.....)
- You must came early. (.....)
- You mustn't plays with the knives. (Shubra - Cairo 2022) (.....)
- You must write on the wall of the class. (Hihya - Sharkia 2022) (.....)
- You mustn't obey your teachers. (Qena 2022) (.....)
- Why must we cleaned the beaches? (.....)
- You mustn't follow traffic rules. (.....)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

- The students shouldn't used their mobiles in the exams. (.....)
- It's a great film. You shouldn't watch it. (.....)
- You must tidies your room. (.....)

General Exercises

LESSONS 1 & 2

1. Complete the following dialogue:

Eman and Aya are talking about marine animals.

Eman: What do you think the most dangerous sea animal is?

Aya: (1) _____

Eman: (2) _____

Aya: Sharks live in oceans.

Eman: (3) _____

Aya: A turtle is the sea animal that has a hard shell.

Eman: Why is the shell useful to the turtle?

Aya: (4) _____

Eman: What about the jellyfish? Does it have a shell?

Aya: (5) _____ But it can sting you when you touch it.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The Earth is the _____ where we live. (Fawa - Kujr El Sheikh 2022)
a. plant b. planet c. star d. moon
- The word "recycle" means to _____.
a. use something once b. not use something
c. use something again d. never use something
- If you touch a jellyfish, it _____ you.
a. stings b. jumps on c. pleases d. grows
- An _____ has eight legs and it can swim fast. (Dawrou - Assour 2022)
a. octopus b. shark c. whale d. jellyfish
- The _____ is the air, water and land around us.
a. planet b. environment c. life d. material
- A shark uses more than 20,000 _____ in its life.
a. feet b. fins c. tails d. teeth
- All _____ have shells on their back to protect them from danger.
a. octopuses b. birds c. turtles d. planets

- When there's a good view, you _____ take a photo.
a. should b. shouldn't c. mustn't d. have
- We must _____ our planet. It's important.
a. saving b. to save c. save d. to saving
- We get water if it _____.
a. rain b. will rain c. is rained d. rains

3. Read and correct the underlined words:

- I felt tired when it's late. ()
- You mustn't look left and right when you cross the road. ()
- Students mustn't shouted in the classroom. ()
- Why must we deaned the beach? (Halla - Assour 2022) ()

4. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Sea animals"



3 & 4

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

nature reserve (n)	محمية طبيعية	water (ed) (v), (n)	ماء - مائي
soil (n)	تربة	nut (n)	جوز
hole (n)	ثقب	ground (n)	أرض / تربة
seed (n)	بذرة	instructions (n)	تعليمات / إرشادات
frighten (ed) (v)	يخيف	project (n)	مشروع
school work (n)	عمل مدرسي		

تنويه Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها

5 Pop Quiz

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

water - school - instructions - reserves - soil

- You should follow your teacher's _____.
- Good _____ produces good crops.
- If you don't _____ the plants, they die.
- Students should pay attention to their _____ work.

Lesson 3

visit (ed) (v), (n)	زور / زيارة	knives (n)	سكاكين
reasons (n)	أسباب / مبررات	fishing line (n)	صارة الصيد
drive (d, v)	يقطس	Ras Mohammed reserve (n)	محمية رأس محمد
rules (n)	قواعد	decisions (n)	قرارات

Lesson 4

press (ed) (v)	يضغط	stones (n)	أحجار
deep (adj)	عميق	space (n)	مراغ
phone call (n)	مكالمة هاتفية	warm (adj)	دافئ

On land and sea

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
hide يخفي / يخبئ	hid	hidden
pay يدفع (أمال)	paid	paid

Words and Opposites

Word الكلمة	Opposite العكس
hard صلب	soft لين / أمتس
give يعطي	take يأخذ
empty فارغ	full مملوء

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions

fishing line	a thin line used to catch a fish	صارة الصيد
ground	the top part of the Earth, where we stand	أرض
hole	an empty space in something	ثقب / فجوة
cover	put something over something else to protect or hide it	يغطي / يخبئ
seed	a small, hard thing made by plants, which grows into new plants	بذرة
nature reserve	an area of land used to protect nature, animals and plants	محمية طبيعية
pot	a small container	إبريق
soil	what plants usually grow in	تربة (أرضية)

Collocations

make	do	take	play	have
noise	an activity	turns	a sport	a picnic lunch
a decision	يقرر	يأخذ	a game	يأخذ
a rule	يضع قاعدة			
a hole	يضع حفرة			
a phone call	يجري مكالمة هاتفية			
a sandwich	يعد ساندوتش			
something from recycled plastic	يصنع شئ من البلاستيك المعاد تدويره			

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 reserve

- reserve (v) = book
- ex: - He **reserved** two tickets at the cinema.

• reserve (n)

- ex: - You mustn't damage anything in a nature **reserve**.

2 soil - floor

• soil

- ex: - To grow this plant, you need a good **soil**.

• floor

- ex: - We put a carpet **on** the **floor**.

Important expressions & prepositions

take ...	press ... into	يضغط في
bad for	cover with	يغطي بـ
share ...	through the reserve	خلال المحمية الطبيعية
angry	walk into their homes	يدخلوا منازلهم
agree	find their own food	يجدوا طعامهم
at the bottom	come from	يأتي من
give instructions about	keep air healthy	يحافظ على الهواء صحي
famous for	work as a group	يعمل كمجموعة
collaborate	pay around	يدفع حوالي / ما يقرب من
think of ways to...	fill	يملأ بـ

Skills

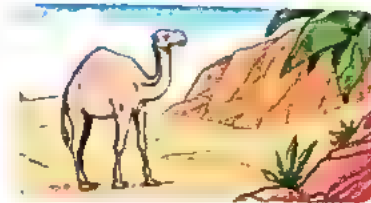
1. Reading and Listening

تدريب على 18 من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع Pop Quiz

Listening

on Lesson 3 SB page 48

Teacher: We're going to visit this nature reserve today. We have nature reserves to help our birds, plants and animals. Many important birds, animals and plants live here so we must be careful about what we do.



First¹, you mustn't make a lot of noise². You'll frighten³ the animals and birds. Secondly⁴, we must not leave the road through the reserve. The animals and birds live in the plants next to the road and you don't want to walk into their homes, do you? Now I know we're going to have a picnic lunch⁵ later, but you mustn't give any food to the animals or birds. They must find their own food. They mustn't think that all their food will come from you! Next⁶, you must take all your rubbish with you when you leave. Some animals think that plastic is food, but they mustn't eat it. It is very bad for them. Finally⁷, you must remember to work together and write what you see. You can write about your visit to the reserve for the project⁸.

Check Vocabulary

- 1 محمية طبيعية
- 2 دويص
- 3 أوت
- 4 يحدث كلوزا هي
- 5 التواء
- 6 يخيف
- 7 ثقب
- 8 يسلول وجبة
- 9 عاء في نوصة
- 10 بعد ذلك
- 11 أخيرا
- 12 مشروع

Critical thinking skill

مهارة التفكير النقدي

Answer

the following questions:

1. Why do you think we need the nature reserve?
- To protect our birds, animals and plants.
2. Why do you think we must take all the rubbish with us when we leave?

• Lesson 4 SB page 50

Plant a tree today !

Adult : Do you want to help ¹ plant a tree ?
Well, plant a tree! Trees help to keep our
city healthy. You can plant a nut ² or
the seed ³ of a fruit.

Child : What should I do first ?

Adult : First, wash an empty ⁴ pot ⁵ and
dry ⁶ it. Secondly, put some small
stones ⁷ at the bottom of ⁸ the pot.

Child : Then what should I do ?

Adult : Then, fill the pot with soil ⁹.

Child : Like this ?

Adult : Yes, that's right! The next thing you do is, press ¹⁰ your finger into
the soil and make a small hole ¹¹.

Child : How deep must it be ?

Adult : It must be 2 centimetres deep. Now plant the seed in the hole and
cover it with soil. Finally, put the pot outside in a warm place ¹².
The seed needs sun and water to make it grow.

Child : Should I water it now ?

Adult : Yes, now and every day. But don't give it too much water. It's
going to grow big. When it grows too big for the pot, take it out of
the soil and plant it in the ground. One day, when it is a big tree,
you can say "I planted that!"

Check Vocabulary

أناك بالعمرك فارغ (1) بكرة (2) حبة مكسولة (3) بوعاء (4) تخلص على / تشد كوكبنا (5) يذهب
مكان دافئ (12) حفرة / فتحة (13) يغطى (14) تربة زراعية (15) مكان مشمس (16) نبات الطماطم (17) يزرع

• on Lesson 4 WB page 103

How to grow a tomato plant

- First, find a sunny place in the garden.
- Second, look at the ground. It must not have lots of stones or other plants in it.
- Then, make a small hole in the soil.
- Next, put some water in the hole so it is not too dry.
- Finally, put the seed in the hole and cover it with soil.



• Lesson 4 WB page 103

Lama : I'd like to grow ¹ a tomato plant ². What should I do first ?

Mariam : First, find a sunny place ³ in the garden.

Lama : Like this ?

Mariam : Yes, that's right. Secondly, look at the ground. It must not have
lots of stones or other plants in it.

Lama : OK. What should I do after that ?

Mariam : Then, make a small hole in the soil ⁴.

Lama : How deep must it be ?

Mariam : About 2 cm. Next, put some water in the hole so it is not too dry ⁵.

Lama : Should I water ⁶ it now ?

Mariam : Yes, you should. Finally, put the seed ⁷ in the hole and cover ⁸ it
with soil.

Check Vocabulary

• يغطي (1) حبة / بكرة (2) يسهل / يروي (3) جاهز (4) تربة زراعية (5) مكان مشمس (6) نبات الطماطم (7) يزرع

Reading

• on Lesson 3 WB page 102

Ras Mohammed

Ras Mohammed reserve is famous for its birds and animals. Many
people go diving in the coral reefs here to see the many beautiful fish and
turtles. If you want to dive here, first you
must pay around ⁽¹⁾ LE 100. When you dive,
you mustn't touch or give food to any of
the fish. You must only use knives ⁽²⁾ to cut
fishing lines ⁽³⁾ and you must never take any
fish from the water. Finally, sharks also live
here, so you must be careful !



Check Vocabulary

• سمكات صيد (1) سكاكين (2) يدفع حوالي (3)

• on Lesson 4 SB page 50

Plant a tree today!

Do you want to help save our planet?

Well, plant a tree! Trees help to keep our air healthy¹.

You can plant a nut or the seed of a fruit.

1. First, wash the plastic pot² and dry it.

2. Second, put some small stones³ at the bottom⁴ of the pot.

3. Then, fill⁵ the pot with soil.

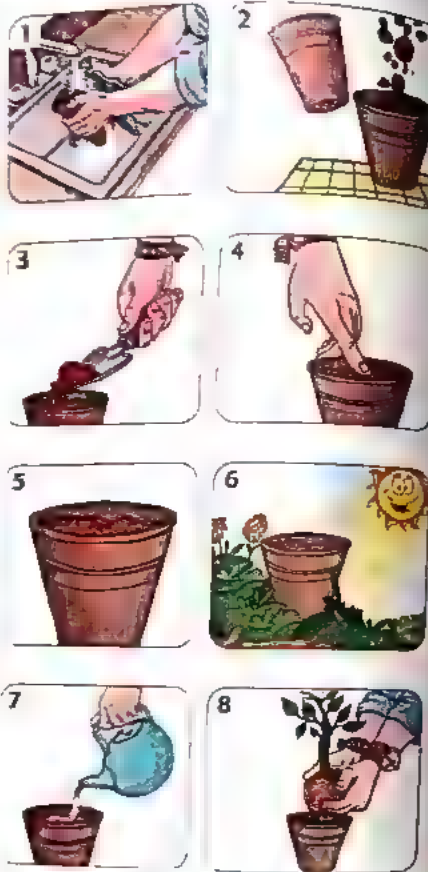
4. Next, press⁶ your finger into the soil and make a small hole about 2 cm deep.

5. Plant the seed in the hole and cover it with soil.

6. Finally, put the pot outside in a warm place.

7. Water it every day. (Don't give it too much water).

8. When the tree grows too big for the pot, plant it in a bigger pot, or in the ground.



Check Vocabulary

1. يظف (1) 2. قاع (2) 3. حصى (3) 4. قاع (4) 5. يملأ (5) 6. يضغط (6) 7. يروي (7) 8. ينقل (8)

Videoscript on Lesson 3 SB page 49

From the camel to the beautiful desert cat⁽¹⁾, or caracal⁽²⁾ to the Nile crocodile⁽³⁾, there are many animals in Egypt. But some animals are in danger of extinction⁽⁴⁾. This means that every example of the animal will die. The Dorcas gazelle⁽⁵⁾ lives in the Sinai Peninsula⁽⁶⁾ and in other parts of North Africa. It eats plants and you can sometimes see them early in the morning and late in the evening. The animal is in danger because some people want to eat it.

In the past, the Barbary sheep⁽⁷⁾ lived all over the country. It eats plants, but warmer weather⁽⁸⁾ means the sheep find it harder to find food. Today, you can only find them in the mountains of southern⁽⁹⁾ and western⁽¹⁰⁾ Egypt.

The striped hyena⁽¹¹⁾ looks like a dog. You can only see it at night. It eats other animals. People think that there are only a small number of striped hyenas in Egypt.

One of the most unusual animals is the dugong⁽¹²⁾. This animal lives in the Red Sea and other places. It is also called the sea cow. This is because it only eats plants that grow underwater.

The dugong is in danger because there is plastic and other pollution⁽¹³⁾ in the sea. Also, there is not much food in the sea for it to eat.

Today, there are some organisations⁽¹⁴⁾ that want to help these and other animals that are in danger, like this turtle. It is helpful for animals when we take rubbish from the beaches. We must all do what we can to help to protect nature.

Check Vocabulary

1. النمر (1) 2. الحمار الوحشي (2) 3. تمساح (3) 4. خطر الانقراض (4) 5. غزال الدوركاس (5) 6. شبه جزيرة سيناء (6) 7. الأغنام البربرية (7) 8. الجو الدافئ (8) 9. جنوبي (9) 10. غربي (10) 11. هiena مخططة (11) 12. دوجون (12) 13. تلوث (13) 14. منظمات (14)

Exercise on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. When you put a/an Into the soil, it grows into a new plant.
a. brick b. seal c. seed d. egg

AltFurk.com موقع التفوق

2. Press your finger into the soil and make a small about 2 cm deep.
a. hall b. hole c. hill d. hell
3. You'll the animals and birds if you make noise.
a. laugh b. frighten c. save d. keep
4. This area gives a lot of good crops. It has a good
a. soil b. desert c. earth d. land
5. Nature protect a lot of animals and birds.
a. preserves b. resorts c. reserves d. deserts

SB, WB and Previous Exams تدریبات من کتاب الطالب والتدریبات والامتحانات السابقة

6. You must around LE 100 when you go diving.
a. take b. throw c. leave d. pay
7. You can only use to cut fishing line.
a. knight b. lives c. knives d. dives
8. First, the plastic pot and dry it to be clean. (Tema - Sahag 2022)
a. make b. play c. throw d. wash

El-Moasser Exercises تدریبات کتاب المعاصر

9. Can I borrow your phone? I need to make a/an
a. email b. article c. phone call d. text message
10. Trees keep air and clean.
a. unhealthy b. noisy c. hot d. healthy
11. Try to keep this plant in a place.
a. word b. worm c. warm d. wool

Definitions تدریفات

12. The is the top part of the Earth, where we stand.
a. hole b. planet c. plant d. ground
13. is a thin line used to catch a fish.
a. Fishing net b. Network c. Fishing line d. Fishing boat

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. decisions quickly isn't a good habit. You should think well.
a. Talking b. Making c. Having d. Giving
15. You shouldn't be angry people you don't agree with.
a. of b. at c. with d. about

2. Speaking

1. Ask and answer questions about a nature reserve

السؤال عن المحمية الطبيعية والإجابة عليها

Questions



Answers



What is a nature reserve?
ما هي المحمية الطبيعية؟

- It is an area, smaller than a park for the purpose of preserving some animals, plants or both.
هي مكان أصغر من الحديقة يستخدم بغرض حماية بعض الحيوانات أو النباتات أو الاثنين معاً

What do you think people must do in a nature reserve?
في رأيك ماذا يجب أن يفعل الناس في المحمية الطبيعية؟

- They must be careful about what they do.
يجب أن يكونوا حذرين لما يفعلوه

What do you think people mustn't do in a nature reserve?
في رأيك ماذا يجب ألا يفعل الناس في المحمية الطبيعية؟

- They mustn't walk into animals' homes.
يجب ألا يدخلوا بيوت الحيوانات.
- They mustn't give any food to the animals or birds.
يجب ألا يعطوا أى طعام للحيوانات أو الطيور

How can we save our planet?
كيف يمكننا حماية كوكبنا؟

- We can save our planet by planting trees, nuts and fruits.
يمكننا أن نحمي كوكبنا عن طريق زراعة الأشجار والمكسرات والفواكه

2. Asking for and giving instructions

طلب وإعطاء التعليمات

Asking for instructions طلب التعليمات

Giving instructions إعطاء التعليمات

I want to make a phone call. What should I do first?
أريد أن أقوم بإجراء مكالمة هاتفية ماذا ينبغي علي أن أفعل أولاً؟

- First, you should turn the phone on.
أولاً، يجب عليك تشغيل الهاتف

Like this?
بهذه الطريقة؟

- Yes, that's right! Second, find the name or number of the person you want to call.
نعم، هذا صحيح! ثانياً، ابحث عن الاسم أو رقم الشخص الذي تريد الاتصال به

Should I press the person's number?
هل ينبغي علي أن اضغط على رقم الشخص؟

- Yes, you should. Finally, wait for the person to answer!
نعم، ينبغي عليك. أخيراً، انتظر الشخص ليقوم بالرد عليك!

Writing

Nature reserve
محمية الطبيعة

- 1 We mustn't make much noise in the nature reserve.
لا يجب أن نضج الكثير من الضجيج في المحمية الطبيعية.
- 2 We mustn't give food to the animals or birds there.
لا يجب أن نعطي الطعام للحيوانات أو الطيور هناك.
- 3 The animals mustn't eat plastic.
لا يجب أن تأكل الحيوانات البلاستيك.
- 4 We mustn't walk into animals' homes.
لا يجب أن نسير في بيوت الحيوانات.

How to plant
كيفية زراعة شجرة

- 1 First, wash the plastic pot and dry it.
أولاً، اغسل الإناء البلاستيكي وجف.
- 2 Second, fill the pot with soil.
ثانياً، املأ الإناء بالتربة.
- 3 Next, press your finger into the soil and make a hole.
ثم اضغط بإصبعك في التربة الزاوية واجعل حفرة.
- 4 Plant the seed in the hole and cover it with soil.
ارفع البذرة في الحفرة وغطها بالتربة.
- 5 Water it every day.
اسقيها كل يوم.
- 6 Don't give it too much water.
لا تعطيها الكثير من الماء.

Remember

Rules for writing instructions

- Use short sentences. استخدم جمل قصيرة.
- Use the imperative. استخدم صيغة الأمر.
- Say one thing in each sentence. لاكثر شيء واحد في كل جملة.
- Use sequencing words to show the order in which actions or instructions happen: First, Second, Next, etc. استخدم كلمات التوالى / التتابع لتوضيح ترتيب الأحداث أو التعليمات باستخدام أولاً، ثانياً، ثم ..

General Exercises

3 & 4

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 We should help our planet.
a. take b. make c. save d. give
- 2 The Earth is our
a. plant b. planet c. star d. sun
- 3 keep our air healthy
a. Trees b. Planets c. Earth d. Sun
- 4 We can breathe fresh
a. plants b. air c. Earth d. planet

2. Complete the following dialogue:

Omar is telling Kareem about his visit to a nature reserve.

Kareem : Where did you go yesterday ?

Omar : (1)

Kareem : How did you go there ?

Omar : (2)

Kareem : (3)

Omar : I saw a lot of rare animals and plants.

Kareem : Did you give the animals anything to eat ?

Omar : (4) . Animals must try to find their own food.

Kareem : (5)

Omar : This place is important because we protect these animals and plants.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Plants need good _____ to grow quickly.
a. planet b. soil c. ground d. hill
2. Nature _____ keep our birds, plants and animals safe.
a. resorts b. reserves c. services d. parks
3. Plants help to keep our air
a. healthy b. wealthy c. cloudy d. dusty

4. That pot is There's nothing in it.
a. filled b. dirty c. empty d. busy
5. Be careful, there's a in front of you.
a. hall b. hole c. wheel d. whole
6. Plant the in a hole and cover it with soil.
a. pot b. water c. seed d. ground
7. " " means to put something over something else to protect or hide it.
a. Save b. Frighten c. Reserve d. Cover
8. He must to other friends' ideas.
a. listen b. to listen c. listening d. listens
9. You play games in the road.
a. should b. must c. mustn't d. can
10. We be careful with what to do in a nature reserve.
a. must b. shouldn't c. mustn't d. can't

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. What must the birds and animals found ? ()
2. You should sharing your ideas with others. ()
3. Should I watered the plants now ? ()
4. When you visit a reserve, you must cut the rare flowers. ()

(Helwan - Cairo 2022)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"What we must do to keep animals safe"

الموقع الإلكتروني
AltFwd.com



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

snack (n)	وجبة خفيفة	leaflet (n)	مستطرد - كتيب إرشادي
headphones (n)	سماعات الرأس	plastic rubbish (n)	نفايات بلاستيكية
fisherman (n)	صياد	desert (n)	صحراء
skeleton (n)	هيكل عظمي	radio station (n)	محطة إذاعية
respect (ed) (v)	يحترم	conclusion (n)	خاتمة
character (n)	شخصية	writer (n)	كاتب / مؤلف
West Beach (n)	الشاطئ الغربي	helmet (n)	خوذة
advertisement (n)	إعلان	gloves (n)	قفازات (دوائري)

تدوينه Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.



Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

skeleton - character - conclusion - writer - snacks

1. Vegetables are healthy snacks .
2. What is the main character in this story ?
3. Naguib Mahfouz is the writer of famous novels.
4. The teacher asked us to write the conclusion of the story.

Lesson 5

SB page 51 WB page 104

worry (ied) (v)	يقلق	smile (d) (v), (n)	ابتسامة / يبتسم
pull (ed) (v)	يسحب / يشد	illness (n)	مرض
bones (n)	عظام	position (n)	موقع / مكان

Lesson 6

SB page 52 WB page 105

poster (n)	ملصق	title (n)	عنوان (مقال - مسرحية)
key points (n)	نقاط رئيسية	summarise (v) (d)	يلخص / يوجز
headings (n)	عناوين (رؤوس الموضوعات)	concluding sentence (n)	جملة ختامية

clear goals	أهداف واضحة	conclude (d) (v)	يختتم / ينتهي
local (adj)	محلي	comment (ed) (v) (n)	تعليق - رأي

Words and Opposites

Word	الكلمة	Opposite	العكس
brave	شجاع	afraid / frightened / coward	خائف أو خبان
tiny	دقيق	enormous	ضخم
increase	يزيد / يزداد	decrease	يقل / ينقص
pull	يسحب	push	يدفع
simple	بسيط	complex	معقد

هذه التعريفات مجمعة من **كتاب الطب** و**كتاب التدريبات** و**قاموس** **التعريفات** (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions

fisherman	a man who catches fish	صياد أسماك
respect	show care and admiration for someone	يُحترم
skeleton	the bones of the body	هيكل عظمي
rubbish	things we do not need	كمامة

General Notes on Reading

1 feel + (adj)

- Santiago felt worried.

Rahma **feels** sad when she sees an orphan. يتيم

2 catch

- catch a bus / a train / a plane
- catch fish
- catch a thief

مقابل مختلفة للفعل

- يلحق بالاتوبيس / لقطار / الطائرة
- يحبس الكرة
- يصاب بمرض

3 role - rule

- role (n)

ex.: - We all have a **role** to play in helping the environment.

- rule (v), (n)

ex.: - The Romans **ruled** Egypt a long time ago.
- All students must obey the school **rules**.

Important expressions & prepositions

feel worried	يشعر بالقلق	tell about	يخبر عن
at the end of	في نهاية	at the bottom of the ocean	في قاع المحيط
find a new use for	يجد استخدام جديد لـ	on the ground	على الأرض
on the beach	على الشاطئ	home to	موطن لـ
onto the boat	على متن القارب	study for the test	يدرس / يذاكر للامتحان
How big the fish was	كَمْ كانت السمكة كبيرة	for a long time	لمدة طويلة
pieces of	قطع من	more than ever	أكثر من ذي قبل
for up to (1000 years)	يصل إلى، أو يقارب من	make art with	يريسمها / يجعلها ربة
have a role to play	لديه دور يقوم به	dangerous for	خطير على
give yourself clear goals	حدد لنفسك أهداف واضحة	get well	يشفي / يتعافى
To conclude = In conclusion	في الختام / في النهاية	travel on the bus	يسافر بالأتوبيس
I don't feel well today	لا أشعر بتحسن اليوم	keep water clean	يحافظ على الماء نظيفاً
		eat too many sweets	ياكل الكثير من الحلوى
		run away	يهرب

Skills

1. Reading and Listening

تدرب على 18 من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع Pop Quiz

Reading

Lesson 5 SB page 51

The Old Man and the Sea

By Ernest Hemingway

Santiago was an old fisherman⁽¹⁾. He felt worried, because the last time he caught a fish was 84 days ago. On the 85th day, he felt a big fish at the end of his fishing line⁽²⁾. But the fish was stronger than⁽³⁾ Santiago. It took two days for him to finally pull it to the boat. Then the sharks⁽⁴⁾ came. When Santiago returned to⁽⁵⁾ his home on the beach, he had no fish, only a skeleton⁽⁶⁾.



Check Vocabulary

هيكل عظمي (1) | عند إلى (5) | أسماك القرش (4) | أقوى من (3) | صياد صيد (2) | صياد (1)

He felt ... and went for a long time.
But the other fishermen saw how big the fish
was and knew that he was going to catch it.
Santiago lost the fish, but the other fishermen
now ... him more than ever.



Answer the following questions:

Question 1: Who do you think was stronger, the fish or the fisherman?
- I think the fisherman was stronger than the fish.

Question 2: What do you think the story teaches us?

on Lesson 5 WB page 104

When Santiago woke up, he saw the boy
Manolin. Santiago ...
"We must ... next time," said
Manolin.
"Yes, but I don't feel ... today," said
Santiago.
"You must get well fast because there is so
much I can learn from ... you," said Manolin.



Check Vocabulary

يتعلم من (5) لا يشعر بتحسن (5) الكرة المصنوعة (4) ليس لديه (3) أكل (2) استريح (1)

Lesson 6 SB page 52

We must clean our beach!

1- Where and when is the event⁽¹⁾?

- West Beach
- Saturday afternoon 2 p.m. - 5 p.m.

2. What do we need?

- rubbish bags⁽²⁾, gloves⁽³⁾ (to protect your hands), a bottle of water to drink and snacks⁽⁴⁾ to eat!
- some people like listening to music on their headphones!⁽⁵⁾



Check Vocabulary

معدات الرأس (5) زوجات حفرية (4) قفازات (3) أكياس القمامة (2) حذاء (1)

3. Why must we clean the beaches?

- 100,000 pieces of plastic rubbish on this beach
- one plastic bottle can stay in our environment for up to 1,000 years (dangerous for animals and fish)

4. How can we tell people about our event?

- posters (around school and town)
- emails to local groups
- local radio station or newspaper

5. What should we do with the rubbish we find?

- recycle it
- find a new use for it
- make art with it

Life Skills

- Remember that we all have a role⁽¹⁾ to play in helping the environment.
Give yourself clear goals⁽²⁾ on how to do this.

Check Vocabulary

الهدف واضحة (5) دور (4) محطة إذاعية (3) ملصقات (2)

Lesson 6 WB page 105

Match the headings with the conclusions to these three different texts.

a. Keeping water clean

1. To conclude, the sea gives us much more than a place to go swimming, so let's not make it dirty!

b. Think before you use plastic material

2. To conclude, we must remember how long plastic rubbish stays in our environment, and we must use different materials when we can.

c. The amazing Red Sea

3. In conclusion, the warm waters are home to everything from tiny jellyfish to very big sharks.

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

- Ernest Hemingway is the ... of "The Old Man and the Sea".
a. reader b. writer c. baker d. cooker
- Having a ... is important if you are hungry.
a. snake b. bag c. role d. snack



3. My brother bought new **to listen to music.**
 a. headphones b. gloves c. helmets d. trousers
 4. My grandmother is 65 and knows a lot! We all **what she says.**
 a. delete b. became c. respect d. expect

5. **SB, WB and Previous Exams** **تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والمقتضات السابقة**
 5. **10** A leaflet is a **paper that has information about something.**
 a. deep b. folded c. warm d. different

6. **10** Manolin **they fish together next time.**
 a. ordered b. ruled c. used d. suggested
 7. **10** The other fishermen knew that Santiago was **to catch the big**
 fish. **Be 'his' - Sharkia 2022**
 a. worried b. brave c. coward d. weak

8. **10** Remember that we all have a **in helping our environment.**
 a. role b. rule c. door d. head
Buston - Gharbia 2022.

- El-Moasser Exercises** **تدريبات كتاب المعاصر**
 9. She ran for four hours, so she felt **.**
 a. weak b. scary c. strong d. afraid
 10. Reading stones can **us lessons for life.**
 a. know b. get c. learn d. teach
 11. Our teacher told us to **the lesson into five sentences.**
 a. summarise b. listen c. paint d. draw

- Definitions** **تعريفات**
 12. The bones of the body are called a **.**
 a. muscle b. stomach c. lung d. skeleton
 13. A/An **is a man who catches fish.**
 a. fisherman b. engineer c. doctor d. carpenter

- Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**
 14. **10** It took two days for Santiago **the fish to the boat.**
 a. pulls b. pulling c. to pull d. pull
 15. **10** One plastic bottle can stay in our environment for **to 1,000 years.**
 a. down b. up c. bottom d. over

2. Speaking

Discussing the problem of rubbish

- | Questions | Answers |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. Is rubbish a problem in your area? | - Yes, it is. |
| 2. What must people do to help? | - They must clean their city. |

3. Writing

"The Old Man and the Sea"

الرجل العجوز والبحر



في هذا الجزء تتعلم من الكتابة عن الرجل العجوز والبحر

- Santiago was an old fisherman.
- He felt a big fish at the end of his fishing line.
- The fish was stronger than Santiago.
- The other fishermen saw how big the fish was.
- The fishermen now respected him more than ever.

Tips for writing

- Leaflet**
A leaflet is a folded paper that has information about something. It has:
 1. a short, exciting title.
 2. a short, simple introduction.
 3. clear headings.
 4. simple sentences.
- How to conclude a text**
 1. When you finish writing a text, you use a concluding sentence.
 2. A concluding sentence summarises the key points of your text.
 3. Always include a comma after phrases such as "to conclude, ..."
 4. "In conclusion, ..."

General Exercises

LESSONS 5 & 6

• Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع إلى صوتيات واختار الإجابة الصحيحة من الخيارات أ، ب، ج، د:

1. Santiago was an old _____
a. fisherman b. carpenter c. sailor d. farmer
2. Santiago didn't _____ fish for a long time.
a. buy b. sell c. catch d. eat
3. _____, there was a big fish.
a. Today b. yesterday c. One day d. Last week
4. The big fish was _____ his fishing line.
a. at the end of b. in the front of c. in the middle of d. at the top of

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Adel tells Harry about a story he read.

Harry: What are you reading, Adel?

Adel: _____

Harry: A story? _____?

Adel: It's about the old man and the sea.

Harry: What does it tell us about?

Adel: _____

Harry: Did the old man catch any fish?

Adel: _____

Harry: _____?

Adel: No, he couldn't sell it at the market.

(CamScanner - Scanned 2022)

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When I share a post, my friends write _____.
a. commas b. comments c. blogs d. plays
2. "_____" means to show care and admiration for someone.
a. Conclude b. Respect c. Worry d. Smile
3. _____ people sometimes do dangerous jobs.
a. Quiet b. Lazy c. Weak d. Brave

On land and sea

4. If something is _____, it is very small.
a. weak b. strong c. tiny d. enormous
5. _____ Judy felt very _____ after she was ill, but she is better now.
a. weak b. strong c. brave d. active
6. Wear _____ on your hands to keep them warm.
a. glasses b. scarfs c. gloves d. coats
7. This isn't a _____ story. The animals are talking in it!
a. brave b. simple c. enormous d. real
8. You _____ take water when you go to the desert. (CamScanner - Scanned 2022)
a. shouldn't b. must c. haven't d. has
9. People _____ smoke in hospitals. It isn't allowed to do that.
a. should b. must c. will d. mustn't
10. We must _____ the beaches regularly.
a. clean b. cleaned c. to clean d. cleaning

4 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. You mustn't fol ow the traffic rules. (CamScanner - Scanned 2022) (_____)
2. I learnt how doing this activity alone. (_____)
3. It's important study hard for the test. (_____)
4. Don't threw rubbish in the ground. (_____)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on: موضوعك في نهاية الكتاب

"A story you like"



Vocabulary

coral reefs	أشجار مرجانية
octopus	إحسان
jellyfish	شوكية
stingray	شوكية
turtle	سلحفاة
whale	حوت
ocean	بحر
sting	شوك
tail	ذيل
planet	كوكب
environment	بيئة
recycle	إعادة تدوير
nature reserve	محمية طبيعية
flightless	غير قادر على الطيران
rules	قواعد
local	محلي
soil	تربة
protect	حماية
poisonous	سمي
fisherman	صياد
skeleton	هيكل عظمي
seed	بذرة
respect	احترام
throw away	إلقاء
weak	ضعيف

Language

1- Zero conditional (if)

إذا كان الأمر واقعاً، فسيكون النتيجة دائماً كذلك.

If / When present simple present simple
future simple

If it rains, we stay at home.

When it rains, I feel tired.

Present simple if / when present simple

We get water if it rains.

I feel tired when it rains.

2- must / mustn't + Inf. يجب / لا يجب

يجب عليك أن تكون في وقت مبكر، أو لا يجب عليك أن تكون في وقت مبكر.

You must be at school at 8 o'clock.

You mustn't be at school at 8 o'clock.

We must save our planet.

We mustn't throw rubbish in the ocean.

3- should / shouldn't + Inf. يجب / لا يجب

يجب عليك أن تكون في وقت مبكر، أو لا يجب عليك أن تكون في وقت مبكر.

You should be at school at 8 o'clock.

You shouldn't be at school at 8 o'clock.

We should save our planet.

We shouldn't throw rubbish in the ocean.

4- He should study hard.

He shouldn't be rude to his friends.

Speaking

1. Following sentence

2. Following sentence

3. Following sentence

4. Following sentence

5. Following sentence

6. Following sentence

7. Following sentence

8. Following sentence

9. Following sentence

10. Following sentence

11. Following sentence

12. Following sentence

13. Following sentence

14. Following sentence

15. Following sentence

16. Following sentence

17. Following sentence

18. Following sentence

19. Following sentence

20. Following sentence

21. Following sentence

22. Following sentence

23. Following sentence

24. Following sentence

25. Following sentence

26. Following sentence

27. Following sentence

28. Following sentence

29. Following sentence

30. Following sentence

31. Following sentence

32. Following sentence

33. Following sentence

34. Following sentence

35. Following sentence

36. Following sentence

37. Following sentence

38. Following sentence

39. Following sentence

40. Following sentence

41. Following sentence

42. Following sentence

43. Following sentence

44. Following sentence

45. Following sentence

46. Following sentence

47. Following sentence

48. Following sentence

49. Following sentence

50. Following sentence

51. Following sentence

52. Following sentence

53. Following sentence

54. Following sentence

55. Following sentence

56. Following sentence

57. Following sentence

58. Following sentence

59. Following sentence

60. Following sentence

Skills

معارف التحدث

تعلم معارف التحدث مع الآخرين بشكل أساسي على تكوين أسئلة ومعرفة كيفية الرد عليها.

Question	Response	الرد المناسب
1. What mustn't you do in the library?	- We mustn't talk loudly in the library.	لا يجب أن نتحدث بصوت عالٍ في المكتبة.
2. What must you do when your teacher speaks?	- We must listen to our teacher.	يجب علينا أن نستمع لمعلمنا.
3. Where does a stingray live?	- It lives in the coral reef.	يعيش الشوكية في المرجان.
4. How does the jellyfish protect itself from danger?	- It stings you when you touch it.	الشوكية تلتصق بك عندما تلمسها.
5. I want to make a phone call. What should I do first?	- First, you should turn the phone on.	أولاً، يجب عليك تشغيل الهاتف.
6. What must people do to help with the rubbish problem?	- They must clean their city.	يجب على الناس تنظيف مدينتهم.
7. What is a nature reserve?	- It is an area of land used to protect nature, animals and plants.	المحمية الطبيعية هي منطقة من الأرض المستخدمة لحماية الطبيعة، الحيوانات والنباتات.
8. How can we save our planet?	- We can save our planet by planting trees.	يمكننا أن نحافظ على كوكبنا بزيادة زراعة الأشجار.
9. What do you think people mustn't do in a nature reserve?	- They mustn't walk into animals' homes.	يجب ألا يمشي الناس في بيوت الحيوانات.

AltFwsk.com موقع التفوق

Plastic people find on beaches is about 100 years old! We can **recycle** some plastic, but most of it goes into the ocean. Plastic is poisonous when animals eat it. Every year, more than 100,000 sea animals and birds die from plastic. When we use plastic shopping bags, we mustn't throw away these bags in rivers. We must try to use other materials – for example paper and glass – because **these** are easier to recycle. When we use a plastic shopping bag, we should try to use it more than once. It will take a long time to clean all the plastic rubbish from the beaches and the ocean. But we mustn't stop trying to help our planet!

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined word "these" refers to _____.
a. dolphins b. paper and glass
c. fishing lines d. plastic bags
- The word "recycle" means _____.
a. reuse b. repay c. reduce d. refer
- It's better to use paper than _____.
a. glass b. bags c. fishing d. plastic

b. Answer the following questions:

4. Give a suitable title for this passage.

5. Why must we try to use other materials such as paper and glass?

6. Why do you think plastic is dangerous for the life of animals?

Kyran Humada - Beheira 2022

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- In the museum, we saw a _____ of a very old animal. Its bones were very big.
a. sand b. skeleton c. soil d. star
- "_____ " means to put something you don't need somewhere.
a. Catch b. Turn to c. Cut down d. Throw away

(Bulfram - Fute El Sheskh 2022)

- Cleaning plastic rubbish from the beaches and the ocean helps to protect our _____.
a. moon b. problem c. star d. planet

- The _____ is the air, water and land on Earth.
a. wind b. environment c. ocean d. skeleton

- You can practise your favourite sport in the sports _____.
a. centre b. road c. barn d. circle

- What's your favourite _____ in this story? - Alice. (F7 Bushari - Assisi 2022)
a. adventure b. event c. character d. actor

- A _____ reserve is an area of land in which animals and plants are protected.

- When a turtle is in danger, it _____ into its shell. (Vag Hammadi - Qirna 2022)
a. go b. goes c. going d. went

- At school, you _____ talk to your friends during the lesson.
a. must b. can c. mustn't d. should

- What _____ to get high marks?
a. I should do b. should I do c. do I should d. should do

5. Read and correct the underlined words:

- You must tidies your room. (North Sahel - Sarou 2022) (_____)
- WB You must forget why you are doing the activity. (_____)
- What we should do with the rubbish? (_____)
- We get water when it rained. (_____)

E. Writing

6. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Planting a tree"

مطلب لغوي: كتابة الفقرة

ALT Fwok.com موقع التفوق

Stop here !

Mini-Test on unit 11 for Al-Azhar students

اختبار مختصر لطالب الأزهر الشريف

1 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini dialogues :

A. Eman : How can we save our planet ?

Aya :

B. Yasser :

Ali : Santiago is the main character in the story of "The Old Man and the Sea".

2 Write a paragraph of five sentences about :

"Sea animals"

2. Use your brain, think smart

طبق ما تعلمته واختر ذكائك

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Everybody has a _____ to play in keeping the environment clean.
a. rule b. role c. roll d. ruler
- A turtle goes _____ the shell when it is in danger.
a. on b. away c. into d. around
- Dinosaurs died _____ millions of years ago.
a. in b. off c. of d. out
- If we _____ noise in class, our teachers feel angry.
a. make b. do c. take d. get

QUIZ

on units 7,8,9,10&11

اختبار تراكمي على الوحدات (٧، ٨، ٩، ١٠ و ١١)

- يقوم المعلم باختيار اختبار مضطرب (واحد) من (A) or (B) لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمعلومات الواردة في الوحدات

Model A

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- I lunch in the school canteen yesterday.
a. have b. had c. am having d. has
- Bangkok is the of Thailand.
a. island b. river c. country d. capital
- We can see ourselves in the
a. line b. mirror c. door d. storm
- She took a photo of
a. himself b. yourself c. herself d. myself
- The is made of leather.
a. lamp b. cushion c. wall d. wallet



Model B

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- A/An is a sea animal which has eight legs.
a. shark b. whale c. octopus d. jellyfish
- I think it be cold tomorrow.
a. going b. will c. going to d. is going to
- The museum has a lot of valuable
a. competitions b. numbers c. centres d. treasures
- When you put a key in water, it
a. floats b. thinks c. sinks d. thanks
- I on the big wheel at the funfair yesterday.
a. drove b. read c. climbed d. rode
- A: What cook ? - B: Chicken and rice
a. is going b. she is going to c. is going to d. is she going to



UNIT 12

My future

Objectives

• Reading

An interview with a marine biologist; a text about future plans; a text about traditional jobs in Africa; a text predicting the future

• Writing

A paragraph giving information about the future

• Listening

A description of a job; an interview with a marine biologist; people talking about their future plans

• Speaking

Describing and asking questions about jobs; talking about future times

• Language

Relative pronoun who; question tags; the first conditional

• Life Skills

Productivity set clear goals

• العلامة 1: تيسر أسئلة كتاب الطالب
• العلامة 2: تيسر أسئلة كتاب التلميذات

• تدريبات لطلاب الأهرام لشريف في نهاية كل وحدة وللمعلمة
• اختبارات شهرية داخل كتاب التلميذ
• جزء من الامتحان اليومية ونشأ المفردات اللغوية (التسميات) مع نهاية الكتاب

1 & 2



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

accountant (n)	محاسب	research (n)	بحث
architect (n)	مهندس معماري	scientist (n)	عالم
businessman (n)	رجل أعمال	writer (n)	كاتب
businesswoman (n)	سيدة أعمال	marine biologist (n)	عالم أحياء بحرية
computer programmer (n)	مبرمج كمبيوتر	pilot (n)	طيار
photographer (n)	مصور فوتوغرافي	dentist (n)	طبيب أسنان
engineer (n)	مهندس	laboratory (n)	معمل
interview (ed) (v),(n)	بيزى مقابلة - مقابلة (شخصية)	business (n)	عمل تجاري / شركة
		design (ed) (v),(n)	يصمم - تصميم

• **تنويه** Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها

5 min

Pop Quiz

تدريب ثنائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

scientist - photographer - laboratory - dentist - pilot

1. We have a science lesson. We will go to the
2. I like taking photos. I want to be a/an
3. The flies planes and visits many countries.
4. My teeth hurt. I'll go to the

Lesson 1

SB pages 54 & 55 WB page 107

office (n)	مكتب	sum (n)	مسألة حسابية / مبلغ من المال
meeting (n)	اجتماع	traditional (adj)	تقليدي
engine (n)	محرك	quiz (n)	اختبار قصير
machine (n)	آلة	photograph (n)	صورة فوتوغرافية
African countries (n)	دول إفريقية	sick (adj)	مريض
score (d)(v)	يحز / يسجل	name (d) (v), (n)	يسمى - اسم
wheelchair (n)	كرسي متحرك	voluntary work (n)	عمل تطوعي

Lesson 2

10 pages 11 & 12 100 pages 101

dive (d) (v) (n)	غطس / الغوص	diving (n)	الغوص / الغطس
Atlantic Ocean	البحر الأطلنطي	terrible (adj)	روعب / رهيب
dream (ed) (v) (n)	حلم / حلم	storm (n)	عاصفة
prefer (red) (v)	يُفضل	volunteer (ed) (v), (n)	متطوع / متطوعة
especially (adv)	بصفة خاصة	record (ed) (v)	سجل / سجل
radio programme (n)	برنامج إذاعي	collect (ed) (v)	جمع / جمع
presenter (n)	مقدم برنامج	coral reefs (n)	شعاب مرجانية

Famous cities and countries

Norway (n)	النرويج	England (n)	إنجلترا
Thailand (n)	تايلاند	Australia (n)	أستراليا
France (n)	فرنسا		

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

Present الحاضر	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
sell	sold	sold
read	read	read

Words and Opposites

Word الكلمة	Opposite العكس
useful	useless
interesting	boring

تلميح هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات واموس
التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات

Study these definitions

an accountant	a person who works with money and numbers	محاسب
a businessman / businesswoman	a man or a woman who works in business	رجل أعمال / سيدة أعمال
a dentist	a person who works in an office and goes to meetings	طبيب أسنان
a scientist	a person who looks after people's teeth	عالم
an architect	a person who works with science	مهندس معماري
an engineer	a person who designs buildings	
	a person who designs or mends or works with machines, engines and buildings	مهندس

a pilot
a marine
biologist
a computer
programmer
engine
teacher
machine
meeting
photographer
writer
laboratory
test

a person who flies a plane
a person who studies the ocean, the plants and animals
in it
a person who writes computer programmes
a machine that makes something move
a person who teaches students
an object, often electric, that can do jobs for us
a time when people who work together can talk about
important things
a person who takes photographs
a person who writes books or articles
a place where scientists work and do experiments
to check or do a scientific experiment on something

Collocations

buildings	voluntary work
machines or engines	a test
books or articles	very well
computer programmes	sums

General Notes on Reading & Listening

- 'd like (to + Inf.) = want + (to + Inf.)
ex.: I'd like to be an architect. = I want to be an architect.
- work (ed) (v), (n)
• work in / for
ex.: I work in / for a big company.
ex.: Hend works for a hotel.
• work with
ex.: An accountant works with money and numbers.
• work on
ex.: You need to work on writing skills.

Nesma : In my job, every day is different ! On some days, I go diving⁽¹⁾ around coral reefs⁽²⁾. On other days, I test⁽³⁾ water from the ocean in the laboratory⁽⁴⁾. I also spend a lot of time on the computer, writing the results⁽⁵⁾ of tests.

Presenter : What's the best thing about your job ?

Nesma : My research⁽⁶⁾ helps to protect⁽⁷⁾ the plants and animals in the ocean. That's the best thing. It's really important to look after our planet⁽⁸⁾. Isn't it ?

Presenter : And what's the worst thing ?

Nesma : There are bad things about every job, aren't there ? Sometimes the weather⁽⁹⁾ is terrible⁽¹⁰⁾. It isn't nice to go out in a boat for a dive when there's a storm⁽¹¹⁾ !

Check Vocabulary

- بحث (علمي) (1) ، تقيس (2) ، غوص (3) ، مرجان (4) ، نتائج (5) ، بحوث (علمية) (6) ، يحمي (7) ، كوكبنا (8) ، طقس (9) ، رهيب (10) ، عاصف (11)

on Lesson 2 SB page 57

Listen to the rest of the interview with Nesma.

Presenter : You visit some interesting places⁽¹⁾, don't you ?

Nesma : Yes, I do ! At the moment⁽²⁾, I'm working in the Red Sea⁽³⁾, near Neweiba. Last year, I worked in Australia. And before that, I worked in Thailand.

Presenter : Wow ! And what different kinds of animals do you study ?

Nesma : Well, some marine biologists study large animals, like whales and dolphins. But I study fish and smaller animals around coral reefs.

Presenter : It sounds like a dream job⁽⁴⁾ to be a marine biologist, but it isn't an easy job, is it ?

Nesma : No, it isn't. There's a lot of information to collect⁽⁵⁾ and record⁽⁶⁾. It's hard work and it takes a long time. I work about ten hours a day.

Presenter : What is your advice⁽⁷⁾ to young people who want to become a marine biologist ?

Check Vocabulary

- تجربة (8) ، يسجل (9) ، يجمع (10) ، الطبيعة التي يحيط بها (11) ، في حالة (12) ، نصيحة (13) ، يجمع (14) ، يجمع (15) ، يجمع (16) ، يجمع (17)

Nesma : Work hard at school, especially in science. You have to love science to be a marine biologist ! And find out everything you can about the job. You can even volunteer⁽¹⁾ for dives.

Presenter : That sounds like great advice. Thank you, Nesma.

Nesma : You're welcome⁽²⁾.

Check Vocabulary

- على الرغم من (3) ، يجمع (4) ، يجمع (5) ، يجمع (6) ، يجمع (7) ، يجمع (8)

Reading

on Lesson 1 SB page 55

My uncle has got a very interesting job. He's an engineer. An engineer⁽¹⁾ is a person who designs machines and engines⁽²⁾. My uncle designs engines for planes. I'd like to be an engineer one day ! My aunt is a businesswoman. That's an interesting job, too. A businesswoman⁽³⁾ and a businessman⁽⁴⁾ are people who work in an office⁽⁵⁾ and go to meetings⁽⁶⁾.

Amir



Check Vocabulary

- مهندس (1) ، رجل أعمال (2) ، سيدة أعمال (3) ، مكتب (4) ، اجتماعات (5) ، اجتماعات (6) ، اجتماعات (7) ، اجتماعات (8)

on Lesson 2 SB page 56

My dream job

This week, we interviewed Nesma El-Soory, a marine biologist⁽¹⁾.

What's a marine biologist ?

1. A marine biologist is a person who studies the ocean and the plants and animals in it.

Why did you decide to become a marine biologist ?

2. I'm good at⁽²⁾ science and I love the ocean. The animals in our oceans are really beautiful and interesting.



Check Vocabulary

- جيد في (1) ، عالم بحرية (2)

What's your day like?

3. In my job, every day is different! On some days, I go diving around coral reefs. On other days, I test water from the ocean in the laboratory. I also spend a lot of time on the computer, writing the results of tests.

What's the best thing about your job?

4. My job helps to protect the plants and animals in the ocean. That's the best thing. It's really important to look after our planet, isn't it?

And what's the worst thing?

5. There are bad things about every job, aren't there? Sometimes the weather is terrible. It isn't nice to go out in a boat for a dive when there's a storm.

Answer

The following questions:

- Extracting information

1. What does the marine biologist do?

- She studies the ocean and the plants and animals in it.

2. What's the best thing about the job of the marine biologist?

استخراج معلومات

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

- Amr's uncle is a famous _____. He designs new buildings.
a. writer b. architect c. dentist d. computer programmer
- My uncle Ali is a/an _____. He has many projects and a big company.
a. photographer b. engineer c. businessman d. writer
- Naguib Mahfouz is a famous _____. He wrote many novels.
a. writer b. businessman c. programmer d. scientist
- 58 An engineer is the person who _____ machines and engines.
a. plays b. acts c. designs d. cooks
- 775 The scientists did lots of tests in the _____.
a. machines b. laboratory c. engine d. library

58. WB and previous Exams تدريب من كتاب الطلاب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة
6. I like computer so much, I hope to work as a/an _____ in the future.
(Qabus Qadus via 2752)

- a. actor b. dentist
c. computer programmer d. doctor

7. I like the coral _____ in the Red Sea. (Wor Al-Mohammed Ghazala 2422)
a. fish b. plastic c. lines d. reefs

8. A famous scientist _____ to teach us about our planet.
(Bisala Kaf Al-Sheikh 2022)
a. kept b. volunteered c. spent d. tested

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

- Heba works in a bank. She is a/an _____.
a. actor b. accountant c. teacher d. nurse
- Ayman's hobby is taking photos. He wants to be a/an _____.
a. dentist b. businessman c. engineer d. photographer
- The car was out of petrol so, the _____ stopped working.
a. design b. quiz c. plan d. engine

Definitions تعريفات

- A/An _____ is a person who studies or works with science.
a. architect b. engineer c. dentist d. scientist
- The person who studies the ocean and the plants and animals in it is called _____.
a. an engineer b. a marine biologist
c. a dentist d. a doctor

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

- It's really important to _____ after our planet.
a. take b. look c. make d. do
- I _____ him to be careful with the knife.
a. revised b. advised c. walked d. viewed

2. Speaking

مهارات التحدث

وصف وتوجيه أسئلة عن الوظائف : Describing and asking questions about jobs

Questions

Answers

• Who is an architect?

من هو المهندس المعماري؟

- An architect is a person who designs buildings.

المهندس المعماري هو شخص يقوم بتصميم المباني

• Who is a writer?

من هو الكاتب؟

A writer is a person who writes books or articles.

A marine biologist is a person who studies the ocean, the plants and animals in it.

• Who is a marine biologist?

من هو عالم الأحياء المائية؟

A dentist is a person who looks after people's teeth.

• Who is a dentist?

من هو طبيب الأسنان؟

Writing

Your dream job
الوظيفة التي تحلم بها

1. My dream job is to be a marine biologist.

الوظيفة التي احلم بها هي ان اكون عالم احياء مائية

2. I want to study the ocean, the plants and animals in it.

أريد ان ادرس المحيط والنباتات والحيوانات الموجودة به

3. I'm good at science and I love the ocean.

أنا جيد في العلوم وأحب المحيط.

4. I will go diving around coral reefs.

سوف اذهب للغوص حول الشعاب المرجانية

5. My research will help to protect the plants and animals in the ocean.

سيساعد بحثي في حماية النباتات والحيوانات التي في المحيط

6. I will test water from the ocean in the laboratory.

سأقوم باختبار مياه من المحيط في المعمل التي في المحيط

7. I will do my best to look after our planet.

سأفعل ما بوسعي لأعتني بكوننا

Language

1 The Relative pronoun (who)

We can join two sentences about people using the relative pronoun (who):

يمكننا ربط جملتين فاعلهما عاقل باستخدام ضمير الوصل (who).

ex. - A businesswoman is a woman. She works in an office.

- A businesswoman is a woman who works in an office.

Question Tag السؤال المذيّل

We use question tags to check information (so we expect people to agree).
نستخدم الأسئلة المذيّلة للتحقق من معلومات الآخر لتوقع ان يوافق الشخص على السؤال.

The voice goes down at the end of the question tag.

ينخفض الصوت في نهاية السؤال المذيّل.

يتم تكوين السؤال المذيّل كالآتي:

؟ ضمير فاعل + فعل مساعد • جملة خبرية

1. عند وجود فعل مساعد في الجملة الخبرية يتم تكوين السؤال المذيّل كالآتي:

positive statement
جملة خبرية مثبتة

Negative question tag
سؤال مذيّل منفي

فعل مساعد مثبت + فاعل

؟ ضمير فاعل + فعل مساعد منفي

- She is wearing glasses, isn't she?

- Ashraf should study hard, shouldn't he?

Negative statement
جملة خبرية منفية

positive question tag
سؤال مذيّل مثبت

فعل مساعد منفي + فاعل

؟ ضمير فاعل + فعل مساعد مثبت

- Your brother can't play the guitar, can he?

- Maha won't (will not) travel to England, will she?

أي أنه يتم تغيير حالة الفعل المساعد من الإثبات إلى النفي أو من النفي إلى الإثبات كالآتي:

الفعل المساعد المثبت

have - has - had + PP

will - should - can - could

الفعل المساعد المنفي

haven't - hasn't - hadn't + PP

won't - shouldn't - can't - couldn't

لاحظ أن: (v. to be) سواء كان أساسيًا أو مساعدًا في الجملة يستخدم كالآتي:

is - are - was - were

isn't - aren't

wasn't - weren't

ex. - It isn't hot today, is it?

- There were a lot of people at the meeting, weren't there?

على عدم وجود فعل مساعد في الجملة خبرية يتم تكوين السؤال المذيل كالآتي :

السؤال المذيل	الجملة الخبرية
don't	فعل بدون إضافات (مضارع بسيطة)
doesn't	فعل مع إضافة to/does/has (مضارع بسيطة)
didn't	فعل في الأزمنة الماضية (ماضي بسيط)

ملحوظة : صيغة الفعل المساعد المضي في السؤال المذيل يجب أن تكون متطابقة (isn't - don't) (isn't - didn't).

- ex. - You like shopping, don't you?
- Adel speaks English well, doesn't he?
- She used the computer, didn't she?

نلاحظ إذا كان (v. to have) فعل أساسي يمشي كالآتي :

have → don't has → doesn't had → didn't

- ex. - Nabil has a car, doesn't he?
- We have a new flat, don't we?

نلاحظ أنه إذا وجدت الكلمات التالية يكون السؤال المذيل مثبت لأنها تدل على النفي :

hardly - never - scarcely - seldom - few - little
قليل قليل نادراً نادراً أبداً يكاد

- ex. He can hardly go inside, can we?

تحويل (I am) إلى (I am not) أو (aren't I) إلى (am I) :

- ex. - I am tall, aren't I? - I am not short, am I?

على الإجابة على السؤال المذيل :

إذا كانت الجملة مثبتة تكون الإجابة (Yes) :

- ex. - Nadi is late, isn't she? - Yes, she is.

إذا كانت الجملة منفية تكون الإجابة (No) :

- ex. - They aren't at home, are they? - No, they aren't.

تكون نبرة صوت المتحدث في نهاية السؤال المذيل :

- ex. - Omar doesn't play tennis, does he?

Stop here! on Language (Answered & Explained)

في هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مع جواب على ومندوب بشرح أسباب الإجابة الصحيحة

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. He went to school early, he?
a. did b. didn't c. had d. hadn't
2. Salma is the woman stole my wallet.
a. which b. when c. who d. where
3. Mona has got a car, she?
a. hasn't b. doesn't c. can't d. won't

3	a	3
2	c	2
1	b	1
No.	Answer + Explanation	

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

58. WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. ☐ A person takes photographs is called a photographer.
a. where b. which c. who d. when
2. ☐ She French, doesn't she?
a. speaks b. never speaks c. doesn't speak d. isn't speaking
3. ☐ Nasser will write to me when he gets there, he?
a. will b. will not c. isn't d. won't
4. ☐ An architect is a person designs buildings.
a. who b. which c. when d. where
5. ☐ You're Ali's cousin, ?
a. isn't he b. aren't we c. don't you d. aren't you

موقع التفوق ALTFWOK.com

6. **WB** Sara wants to be a marine biologist, ?
 a. doesn't she b. does she c. is she d. isn't she
7. A businessman is a man works in an office and goes to meetings.
 a. whose b. which c. when d. who
8. You like your job, you ?
 a. doesn't b. do c. don't d. didn't
9. She made a very nice cake, she ?
 a. isn't b. wasn't c. didn't d. doesn't

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

10. You can find vitamins in many kinds of food, ?
 a. aren't you b. can't you c. can you d. do you
11. Our parents are very helpful, ?
 a. are they b. they are c. they aren't d. aren't they
12. I'm your friend, I ?
 a. are b. am not c. aren't d. am

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB, WB & Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. **WB** You did your homework last night, don't you ?
 (.....)
2. **SB** You want to be a nurse, doesn't you ?
 (.....)
3. **SB** You don't forget to phone me, will you ?
 (.....)
4. **WB** Can you name a person whose is taller than you ?
 (.....)
5. It isn't hot today, doesn't it ?
 (Terna - Sohag 2022) (.....)
6. They bought a new car, did they ?
 (Wassat Alexandria - Alexandria 2022) (.....)
7. This bag is heavy, is it ?
 (Hudwek El Kobbah - Cairo 2022) (.....)
8. Toka likes pop music, does she ?
 (Al Waili - Cairo 2022) (.....)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

9. A nurse is a person when looks after sick people.
 (.....)
10. Hady is the footballer this scores many goals.
 (.....)

General Exercises



LESSONS 1 & 2

• Understand • Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلّمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (انصت إلى المعلّم في نهاية الكتاب)

1. The text is about a/an
 a. scientist b. animal c. marine biologist d. crab
2. A marine biologist studies
 a. the ocean b. fruits c. vegetables d. salt
3. The in the oceans are beautiful.
 a. snakes b. animals c. sailors d. engineers
4. There are animals and plants in the
 a. park b. garden c. ocean d. lake

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Samar and Nada are talking about their future job.

Samar : How are you ?

Nada : (1) Why don't we talk about our future job ?

Samar : (2)

Nada : (3) ?

Samar : My favourite subjects are English, Math and Science. What about you ?

Nada : My favourite subjects are Science and English.

Samar : (4) ?

Nada : I want to be a teacher. And you ?

Samar : (5) ?

Nada : We all work to achieve our dreams.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. It's important for a marine biologist to water from the ocean.
 a. test b. collect c. damage d. send
2. **WB** Mohammed Salah is a footballer who a lot of goals.
 a. teaches b. scores c. meets d. takes
3. He gave me some about how to be a clever student.
 a. advice b. robots c. oceans d. corals
4. That photo was taken by a clever
 a. programmer b. researcher c. photographer d. biologist

5. work with doctors to take care of sick people.
a. Patients b. Nurses c. Architects
6. ~~WB~~ I didn't like this book. I thought it was ...
a. beautiful b. terrible c. amazing
7. A: What about the ... of the tests?
B: You've succeeded.
a. causes b. reasons c. jobs
8. Habiba is a girl ... always gets high marks.
a. who b. where c. when
9. He visits his uncle every Friday.
a. isn't he b. doesn't he c. does he
10. Hamza is a great teacher.
a. he isn't b. he is c. is he

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. This is the engineer whose designed this machine.

2. ~~WB~~ Girls are quieter than boys, isn't she ? (South Suez - Suez 2022)

3. She was here yesterday, isn't she ?

4. Samy and Kamel speak English very well, do they ?

5. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"My dream job"

(Ismailia 2022)

موقع
التفوق
ALTFwok



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

apartment (n)	شقة	colourful jewellery (n)	مجوهرات ملونة
university (n)	جامعة	grandparents (n)	أجداد
workshop (n)	ورشة	skill (n)	مهاراة
pottery (n)	الأواني المخارية	education (n)	تعليم
adult (n)	بالغ / راشد	earn (ed) (v)	يكسب / يربح

Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.



Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات النحوية

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

apartment - jewellery - education - University - earn

- Ha-a's favourite piece of ... is her diamond ring.
- Cairo ... is a very old one.
- You should work hard to ... much money.
- We live in a/an ... in New Cairo.

Lesson 3

SB pages 58 & 59 WB page 109

enough (adj)	كاف	hope (d) (v)	يتفنى
life events	أحداث حياتية	countryside (n)	الريف
travel (ied) (v)	يسافر	carry (ied) (v)	يحمل
flying (n)	الطيران	player (n)	لاعب
blog (n)	مدونة	probable (adj)	محتمل

Lesson 4

SB page 60 WB page 110

African villages	قرى أفريقية	necklace (n)	عقد / قلادة
local people	المحليين	beliefs (n)	معتقدات
businesses (n)	أعمال تجارية	fully (adv)	بماف / كليا
social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	continue (d) (v)	يستمر

country (n)	دولة	Ghana (n)	غانا
traditional jobs	الوظائف التقليدية	traditional jobs	الوظائف التقليدية
modern offices	المكاتب الحديثة	modern offices	المكاتب الحديثة
repair (ed) (v)	إصلاح / ركب	repair (ed) (v)	إصلاح / ركب
tradition (n)	تراث / عادة	tradition (n)	تراث / عادة

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

Present	Past	P.P.
bought	bought	bought
caught	caught	caught
wore	wore	worn

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite
local	international

هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطلاب وكتاب التدريبات. (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions

earn	get money from a job by working
jewellery	things such as rings and necklaces that you wear
adult	a fully grown person
workshop	a place where people work to create things
skill	an ability to do something well
culture	the art, ideas, beliefs, etc. of a group of people
pottery	pots, dishes, etc. made from clay
apartment	a home that is a number of rooms in a building
basket	something you can use to carry or hold things
colourful	with many different colours
education	the knowledge you get from studying something
get married	become husband and wife
Ghana	a country in West Africa

Kenya
a country in East Africa
university
a place where you study after you leave school, for a degree

Collocations

Collocations				
get	a job	يحصل على وظيفة	make	basket
	married	يتزوج		pottery
	money	يحصل على مال		jewellery
do	a job	يؤدي وظيفة		things

Memorise by adding the suffix (-ful)

Many verbs become adjectives by adding the suffix (-ful).
بعض الأفعال تصبح صفات عند إضافة الناهية (-ful) لها.

Verb	Adjective
colour	colourful
help	helpful
use	useful
hope	hopeful

General Notes on Reading & Listening

- earn money = make money
ex.: - My uncle works hard to earn money.
- businesses = companies
ex.: - Today some businesses use social media to sell their products.
- pass = succeed in
• pass an exam
ex.: - Ashraf passed his exams.
• succeed in an exam
ex.: - Ashraf succeeded in his exams.
- maths + singular verb
ex.: - Maths is my favourite subject.

Important expressions & prepositions

have children	لدي أطفال	be able to + Inf	يستطيعون وحروف جر هامة
plans for future	خطة مستقبل	a way for	طريق على
all over the country	في جميع أنحاء البلد	down the road	طريقه لـ
all over the world	في جميع أنحاء العالم	for many years	سنة / سنوات
learn to drive	يتعلم قيادة سيارة	take the rubbish from	يأخذ القمامة من
travel around the world	يسافر حول العالم	(be) better for	أفضل لـ
come back	يأتي	I'd love to	أريد أن
repair things	يصلح الأشياء	use modern technology	يستخدم التكنولوجيا الحديثة

Skills

Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على 10 من قطع الفهم وتخصص الاستماع

Reading

on Lesson 3 SB page 58

Munir's plans for the future

I don't know which job I want to do when I'm older, but I think that **education** is very important. I **hope** that I pass my exams so that I can go to university. I'm going to work hard. If I go to university, I'll study maths. It's my best **subject**.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) تعليم
(2) أتمنى
(3) مادة دراسية
(4) يسافر حول العالم

I don't like flying, so I don't want to **travel** around the world. I want to get a good job in Egypt. I want to teach maths. If I have enough money, I'll buy an apartment near the Red Sea. I'll get married, but how many children will I have? I don't know!

Choose

the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Extracting information.

استخراج المعلومات

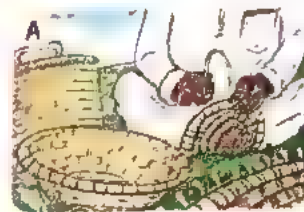
- Learn** 1. Munir thinks that **a** education is very important.
a education b pollution c. freedom d. technology
Practice 2. If Munir has enough money, he'll buy a/an
a. car b. villa c. shop d. apartment

on Lesson 4 SB page 60

Traditional jobs in Africa

Today, many people in Africa work in **modern jobs**, but **traditional jobs** and **skills** are still important.

1. People started making **pottery** thousands of years ago in Egypt. Some people make pottery in workshops or their own homes. If you go to Fayoum, you will see many people making pottery. There is also a school where children and **adults** can learn this skill.



2. It is traditional to make **jewellery** in Kenya. You can see the **colourful** jewellery in markets all over the country. Today, some **local businesses** also use **social media** and the internet to sell jewellery to people in different countries. It is an important skill because it **continues** an **old tradition** and it helps local people to **earn money**.



3. It is an important part of **Africa's culture** to make baskets. It is also a way for women from small African villages to earn money. In Ghana, there are a lot of women who make and sell **baskets**. You can buy colourful baskets from Ghana in countries all over the world.



Check Vocabulary

مكاتب حديثة	(2) وظائف تقليدية	(3) مهارات	(4) الألوان الفاتحة	(5) البالغين
موجّهات / طرقات	(7) ملون	(8) أسواق	(9) أعمال تجارية محلية	(10) وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
سكن	(12) تقليد / عادة قديمة	(13) يكسب مال	(14) ثقافة أفريقية	(15) سلة

Listening

Lesson 3 SB page 58

Ram and Amira are talking about their plans for the future.

Presenter: Ram, what do you want to do when you're older?

Ram: I really want to be an architect. I like that so much. I don't want to work hard. I don't want to work hard. When I finish university, I want to travel. I'd like to get a job⁽¹⁾ in another country like South Africa. But after a few years, I'll come back to Egypt. I'd like to get married one day, but I don't want to live in Cairo. I prefer the countryside⁽²⁾.

Presenter: Amira, what about you?

Amira: I want to go to university, so I hope I'll pass my exams! If I go to university, I'll study science. I'd love to be a scientist⁽³⁾. It's a really interesting job. I'd like to get a job in Cairo and buy a flat⁽⁴⁾. I want to learn to drive so that I can visit my family. One day I'd like to get married and have children.

Check Vocabulary

1. architect / 2. countryside / 3. scientist / 4. flat

Video script

What job will you do when you are older? Will you be an engineer⁽¹⁾, who designs exciting new things? Will you be a doctor, who looks after sick people? Or will you be an architect⁽²⁾, who designs new buildings and even cities? These will all be important jobs in the future. But did you know that the Ancient Egyptians did many of these jobs too? They helped to form the world we know today. Engineers in ancient Egypt designed and built a lot of things, like boats.

Check Vocabulary

1. engineer / 2. architect

These boats used the wind to help them travel to other parts of the world. The Ancient Egyptians also learned how to move water from one place to the next. This helped farmers who worked far from the Nile. We use canals⁽¹⁾ to help farmers today.

A doctor was a very important person in Ancient Egypt. The doctor used a lot of different tools. We can see some of them in this picture. The Ancient Egyptians also had dentists⁽²⁾.

In the tenth century, an Egyptian doctor invented the first kind of syringe⁽³⁾. Today, doctors and scientists use syringes every day.

Imhotep was the world's very first architect. He designed a new way of building pyramids using stone. He built the Pyramid at Saqqara using this method⁽⁴⁾. He also used it to build the Great Pyramid at Giza. Imhotep also used stone to build columns⁽⁵⁾. These columns made buildings very strong. Before this, the Ancient Egyptians used mud⁽⁶⁾ and plants to build columns. These columns sometimes fell down. But every job can be important. If you do your job well, you can help to make a better world.

Check Vocabulary

1. canals / 2. dentists / 3. syringe / 4. method / 5. columns / 6. mud

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

- Making jewellery helps some people in Kenya to ... money.
a. win b. earn c. gain d. lose
- I went to the ... to ask the mechanic for help.
a. clinic b. gallery c. exhibition d. workshop
- ... is very important for students' life to get good jobs.
a. Pollution b. Education c. Engineering d. Rubbish
- I'll join the ... after I finish secondary school.
a. kindergarten b. primary school
c. preparatory school d. university

SB, WB and Previous Exams

- If I have enough money, I'll buy a/an ... to live in.
a. school b. library c. apartment d. car

Part 1: English - Culture

6. You need a lot of _____ to make a beautiful basket.
a. dishes b. skills c. shops

7. I'll pass my exams. I'll go to university.
a. fail b. move c. pass

8. Multiple Exercises تدريبات الاختيار المتعدد

8. I'll get married when I _____ a good job.
a. give b. make c. get

9. "International" is the opposite of "
a. global b. local c. manual

10. Jewellery is a traditional craft in Kenya.
a. Getting b. Making c. Giving

9. Definitions تعريفات

11. A _____ is a room or small building where people make or repair things.
a. mosque b. workshop c. school d. café

12. _____ means the art, ideas, beliefs, etc. of a group of people.
a. Education b. Ability c. Culture d. Business

13. _____ is something you can use to carry or hold things.
a. Basket b. Pottery c. Culture d. Skill

10. Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. If you don't run, you won't _____ the bus.
a. earn b. catch c. learn d. sell

15. I'll get married and _____ two children.
a. get b. have c. earn d. take

2. Speaking

Using critical thinking to discuss traditional jobs :

استخدام التفكير النقدي لمناقشة الحرف التقليدية.

Questions

• Why is it important to keep traditional jobs?

- لماذا من المهم أن نستمر الحرف التقليدية ؟

Answers

- I think because they continue an old tradition and help local people to earn money.

- أعتقد لأنها استمرار إعادة أو تقاليد قديم ونساعد السكان المحليين في كسب النقود

How can people use modern technology to help them?

كيف يمكن للناس استخدام التكنولوجيا الحديثة في مساعدتهم ؟

I think some local businesses use social media and the internet to sell their products "jewellery".

أعتقد أن بعض الأعمال التجارية المحلية تستخدم وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي والإنترنت في بيع منتجاتهم (المجوهرات)

مقارنة الكتابة

3. Writing

Your plans for the future
خطتك المستقبلية

في هذا الجزء تتمكن من الكتابة عن خططك المستقبلية

1. I hope that I will pass my exams. أأتمنى أن أحقق اختبراتي.
2. I will study maths at university. سوف أدرس الرياضيات في الجامعة.
3. I am going to learn how to drive. سوف أتعلم كيف أقود.
4. I will buy an apartment near the Red Sea. سوف أشتري شقة بالقرب من البحر الأحمر.

Traditional jobs
وظائف تقليدية

في هذا الجزء تتمكن من الكتابة عن الوظائف التقليدية

1. In Egypt, people make pottery in their workshops or their own homes. في مصر يصنع الناس أواني فخارية في ورشهم أو في منازلهم.
2. There are many markets in the villages of Fayoum. يوجد العديد من الأسواق في قرى الفيوم.
3. You can buy colourful baskets from Ghana in countries all over the world. يمكنك شراء سلال ملونة من غانا من بلدان في جميع أنحاء العالم.
4. Women from small villages make baskets to earn money. تصنع النساء بالقرى الصغيرة السلال لكسب النقود.
5. You can see the colourful jewellery in markets all over Kenya. يمكنك أن ترى المجوهرات الملونة بالأسواق في جميع أنحاء كينيا.

The first conditional clause with 'if'

Formation

If + present Simple Tense (من المضارع البسيط) , subject (الفاعل) + will (will) / will not (won't) + Inf. (مصدر)

ex. If Ali studies hard, he will pass his test.

ملاحظة: تأتي (if) في منتصف الجملة لا نضع (,) بين الجملتين

Subject (الفاعل) + will (will) / won't (مصدر) if present Simple Tense (من المضارع البسيط)

ex. Mona will catch the bus if she is quick.

Interrogative

A Yes/No question:

(أ) السؤال بـ "هل"

Will + subject (الفاعل) + Inf. (مصدر) + if + present Simple Tense (من المضارع البسيط)

ex. - Will you stay inside if it's hot tomorrow?

- Yes, I will.

- No, I will not (won't).

B Wh-question:

(ب) السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام

Question word (كلمة استفهام) + will + subj. (الفاعل) + Inf. (مصدر) + if + present Simple Tense (من المضارع البسيط)

ex. - What will you do if it is windy tomorrow?

- We won't go to the beach.

Usage

We use the first conditional to talk about what will probably happen if/when another action takes place. We use if or when with the present simple, followed by (will) with a verb without (to).

نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى (if) للحديث عن احتمال حدوث شيء في المستقبل إذا تحقق شرط حدوثه. ونستخدم when / if مع المضارع البسيط متبوعاً بـ (will) والفعل بدون (to).

ex. - If Ahmed comes early, he will meet his uncle.

- If it is windy tomorrow, they won't go to the beach.

Stop here! on Language (Answered & Explained)

في هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مع جواب عليه ومصحوب بشرح أسباب اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- If you inside, you won't get wet.
a. staying b. stays c. stay d. stayed
- If it is sunny, we will to the beach.
a. goes b. going c. went d. go
- If you hard, you will pass all your exams.
a. studying b. study c. studies d. studied
- If she gets the job, she will her friends to dinner.
a. invite b. invites c. inviting d. invited

4	a	الجملة الشرطية الأولى (if) تستخدم مع المضارع البسيط (present simple) في الجزأين.
3	b	الجملة الشرطية الأولى (if) تستخدم مع المضارع البسيط (present simple) في الجزأين.
2	d	الجملة الشرطية الأولى (if) تستخدم مع المضارع البسيط (present simple) في الجزأين.
1	c	الجملة الشرطية الأولى (if) تستخدم مع المضارع البسيط (present simple) في الجزأين.
NO.	Answer + Explanation	

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريب من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

- If you go to Fayoum, you will many people making pottery.
a. saw b. see c. seen d. seeing

- the rubbish from all the oceans, they will be better
2. If we have for sea life
a. take
b. 'll take
c. taking
d. took
3. I didn't have enough money, I'll buy an apartment near the Red Sea.
a. had
b. hadn't
c. have
d. haven't
4. We water the tree every day, it will give us more fruit.
a. So
b. While
c. Although
d. If
5. If Lara is in the city, she will use the bus.
a. stays
b. stay
c. staying
d. stayed
6. If we are noisy in class, our teacher will punish us.
a. punishes
b. will punish
c. punished
d. are punishing
7. If I get up early, I'll visit my grandfather.
a. get
b. got
c. will get
d. getting

El-Moasser Exercises

8. If I visit my grandparents, I will take them some sweets.
a. wouldn't
b. am
c. will
d. would
9. If she drops the glass of milk on the floor, her mom will be angry.
a. be
b. is
c. being
d. been
10. If I get married, I'll have a lot of children.
a. had
b. have
c. has
d. having
11. A: How will you pass your exams? B: I will feel happy.
a. did you feel
b. will you feel
c. have you feel
d. would you feel

2. Read and correct the underlined words:

SB, WB and Previous Exams

1. Where will you lived if you get a good job? ()
2. If I work near a beach, I will swam every day in summer. ()
3. If I go to the shops, I'll buys a new game. ()
4. If I ate too many sweets, I'll feel sick. (Shorouk - Cairo 2022) ()
5. You speak better English if you practise every day. (El Saf - Giza 2022) ()
6. If I visit Aswan, I send you a picture. (Abo Hummus - Behera 2022) ()

El-Moasser Exercises

7. Peter will gets wet if he forgets the umbrella. ()
8. If my dad gets home early, I'll being happy. ()
9. If Ali passes his exams, he would go to university. ()
10. If you didn't put sugar in your coffee, it won't taste nice. ()

General Exercises

LESSONS 3 & 4

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع إلى مسموع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة انصت في نهاية الكتاب

1. What is the important part of Africa's culture? - Making
a. clothes b. gloves c. baskets d. pots
2. Making baskets is a way to money.
a. earn b. lose c. waste d. spend
3. What is the African country mentioned in the passage?
a. Somalia b. Ghana c. Egypt d. South Africa
4. There are a lot of who make and sell baskets in Ghana.
a. boys b. women c. men d. children

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 My brother married and had 3 children.
a. made b. got c. took d. did
- 2 I learned how to before buying my car.
a. ride b. cycle c. drive d. dive
- 3 I'd like to my exams to go to the university.
a. get b. pass c. succeed d. cross
- 4 The opposite of "traditional" is
a. modern b. enough c. local d. old
- 5 My cousin is a/an now. She was 18 last week.
a. baby b. adult c. child d. kid
- 6 Noha is good at things and reuse them in her house.
a. repairing b. getting c. revising d. losing
- 7 Her favourite piece of is her diamond ring.
a. jewellery b. culture c. furniture d. paper

8. If I go to the university, I _____ geography.
 a. would study b. study c. am studying d. 'll study
9. What will you take with you if you _____ your grandfather?
 a. visit b. 'll visit c. visited d. visits
10. I won't buy a car if I _____ enough money.
 a. don't have b. have c. doesn't have d. doesn't have

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Would you invite me if you have a party?
 2. Who do you see if you go out tonight?
 3. If I eat too many sweets, I'm be fat.
 4. Will you go to the cinema if it will be a holiday?

Ex 1 - (Cairo - 1440 2022) ()

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on: مخاطب عمه في نهاية الكتاب

"Your plan for the future"

موقع
التفوق
ALTFwok



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

mind map (n)	خريطة ذهنية	app (n)	تطبيق على الهاتف المحمول / الحاسوب
injury (n)	إصابة	cure (n)	علاج / دواء
electric car (n)	سيارة كهربائية	technology (n)	تكنولوجيا
countryside (n)	الريف	illness (n)	مرض
grandchildren (n)	أحفاد	health (n)	صحة

تلميح: Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.

5

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات الاسمية

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box:

health - cure - countryside - apps - injury

1. He is unable to play because of his _____.
2. Modern phones and tablets have many _____.
3. Scientists do their best to find _____ for illnesses.
4. Living in the _____ is quieter than living in the city.

Lesson 5

SB page 81 WB page 111

language (n)	لغة	video games (n)	اللعبة الفيديو
writing (n)	كتابة	revise (d) (v)	يراجع
spelling (n)	الهجاء	area (n)	منطقة

Lesson 6

SB page 82 WB page 112

disappear (ed) (v)	يختفي	hopeful (adj)	متفائل
completely (adv)	بشكل كامل	description (n)	وصف
headlines	عناوين رئيسية	exciting (adj)	مثير / شيق
predictions (n)	تنبؤات	happen (ed) (v)	يحدث

engineering (n)

personal information (n) معلومات شخصية

introduce (d) (v) اقدم

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

Present	Past	P.P.
make	made	made
begin	began	begun

هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب قطب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس
التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتب التدريبات.

Study these definitions

app	• something that does a particular job on your phone or computer • something on your phone that helps you to use maps, book tickets, etc.
cure	a treatment that can make an illness better
illness	being ill
countryside	the area that is outside a town

Collocations

play	the guitar على الجيتار the piano على البيانو	finish	my book
design	an app = application a video game	learn	a new language new things
finish	my project school	give	some advice information about
		have get	a job

Important expressions & prepositions

learn to	drive	spend time with ...
practise reading	drive	live longer
revise for the test		follow the advice
book tickets		stay healthy
start university		introduce new ideas
		end with

find cures for illnesses يجد علاجات للأمراض
check for any mistakes يتحقق من أي أخطاء
in ten years' time في غضون / خلال عشر سنوات

What about later on?
وماذا عن بعد ذلك / فيما بعد ؟
do first يقوم بعمل شيء أولاً

Skills

2. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على 18 من قطع المفرد ونصوص الاستماع

Listening

on Lesson 5 SB page 61

Presenter : What are your plans⁽¹⁾ for the future, Hussein?
Hussein : I've got a lot of plans for the future. Next year, I want to learn to play the guitar⁽²⁾. And before I leave school⁽³⁾, I want to design a video game⁽⁴⁾.
Presenter : Wow! And what about later on? What will your life be like in ten years' time?
Hussein : In ten years' time, I want to have a good job. I think I'll be a doctor. I'd like to live in the city.
Presenter : Thank you, Hussein.
Presenter : Khadeeja, what are your plans for the future?
Khadeeja : Well, one day I'd like to be a teacher. But there are lots of other things I want to do first.
Presenter : Tell me about them.
Khadeeja : Well, before I get a job, I'd like to learn a new language⁽⁵⁾. I also want to learn to drive.
Presenter : And what will your life be like in 10 years' time?
Khadeeja : That's a long way into the future, isn't it? Well, in 10 years' time, I'll have a job in a school. I think I'll get married, too.
Presenter : Thanks, Khadeeja.

Check Vocabulary

• لغة (5) • تصميم لعبة فيديو (4) • يهيئ الدراسة في المدرسة (3) • يعرف على الجيتار (2) • خطط (1)

on Lesson 5 WB page 111

Dina: I want to be a doctor but I need a lot of ¹ to do that.
 Tomorrow, I'm going to visit my uncle. He's a doctor so he can give
 me some ².
 Next summer, I'm going to study English in England. You need to
 speak good English to be a doctor. Before I leave school, I'm going
 to do ³ at a children's hospital.
 In a few years' time, I want to go to a good university.
 Then, in about ten years' time, I think I'll be a doctor in a good hospital.

Check Vocabulary

أستطيع أن أفعل ذلك - أستطيع أن أفعل ذلك - أستطيع أن أفعل ذلك

Reading

on Lesson 6 SB page 62

My predictions for the future

By Ahmed

In the next 30 years, there will be a lot of ¹ changes in our lives.
 Technology will make our lives easier and more interesting.
 Our phones will be even more important and we will have
 apps for everything.

Scientists will find new cures for illnesses so people will
 live longer. Some illnesses will disappear completely. All our
 cars will be electric. If this happens, it will be much better for
 the air in our cities, won't it? I don't think I will have to learn
 to drive because cars will drive themselves!

There will be a lot of interesting new jobs for people.
 Robots will do some of the jobs that people do today. But I
 don't think we will have robot doctors or teachers!

I think there will be a lot of exciting changes in the future,
 but some things will stay the same. Children will still go to school, learn
 new things and spend time with friends.

Answer

the following
 questions:

- Critical thinking skill

Answer

1. Why do you think technology will make our lives easier?
 - I think because our phones will be even more important
 and we will have apps for everything.

Practice

2. Do you think robots will replace teachers? Why/Why not?

Check Vocabulary

- (1) تغييرات
- (2) تقنيات
- (3) تطبيقات
- (4) أمراض
- (5) علاجات
- (6) سيارات كهربائية
- (7) أمراض
- (8) تلوث
- (9) مهنة
- (10) روبوتات
- (11) هواتف
- (12) وسائل الترفيه

ممارسة التفكير النقدي

on Lesson 6 WB page 112

1. Today, I am going to write about life in the future. I think life in the next 100 years will be very different. Here are some reasons¹ why.
2. First, I think there will be a lot more people living in Egypt. I think our cities will be much bigger. They will also be better². We will have clean, quiet electric cars³.
3. Second, we are all going to be healthier. People will not work long hours so they will have more time to do sports⁴ and stay healthy⁵.
4. In conclusion⁶, I think the future will be very different, but I am hopeful⁷ that life will be better for my children and my grandchildren.

Check Vocabulary

مستقبل (7) هي القائمة (6) يعني بصحة جيدة (5) يمارس رياضة (4) سيارات كهربائية (3) أفضل (2) أسوأ

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

1. Apps are examples of new
 a. technology b. engineering c. environment d. health
2. I saw an accident and the old man had a/an
 a. design b. injury c. education d. skill
3. I think some will disappear completely in the future.
 a. headlines b. illnesses c. changes d. numbers

SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

4. SB I think there will be a lot of changes in the future.
 a. lazy b. exciting c. traditional d. disappearing
5. WB If you, people cannot see or find you. (Tahani - Sorbag 2022)
 a. build b. cure c. disappear d. begin
6. SB If Mona goes to the university, she'll study
 a. engineer b. engine c. engineering d. engineers
 (El Hametel - Kufir El Sherak 2022)
7. WB I am that life will be better for my children.
 a. sad b. bored c. hopeful d. worried

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

8. Our teacher asked the new student to _____ herself to the class.
a. produce b. draw c. introduce d. text
9. She gave me a full _____ of her new apartment. I know it well now.
a. advice b. headlines c. notes d. description
10. You shouldn't share your _____ with people you don't know.
a. video games b. technology c. language d. personal information
11. Living in the _____ is quieter than living in the city.
a. countryside b. seaside c. capital d. hospital

Definitions تعريفات

12. A/An _____ is a treatment that can make an illness better.
a. illness b. cure c. app d. design
13. A/An _____ is something that does a particular job on your phone or computer.
a. headline b. design c. app d. prediction

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. Can you _____ predictions about what will happen in the next 30 years?
a. take b. make c. do d. give
15. _____ three months' time, I'm going to start university.
a. In b. At c. For d. On

2. Speaking

Talking about future plans :

subj. (فاعل) + (be) going to + inf.

ex. - Next year, I'm going to design an app. - العام القادم سوف أقوم بتصميم تطبيق للهاتف.

subj. (فاعل) + want to + inf.

ex. - Next month, I want to buy a car. - أريد أن اشتري سيارة الشهر القادم.
- Before I leave school, I want to learn a new language. - قبل أن أنهى دراستي في المدرسة أريد أن أعلم لغة جديدة.

subj. (فاعل) + 'd like to + inf.

ex. - In a few years' time, I'd like to improve my skills. - في خلال سنوات قليلة، أريد أن أحسن من مهاراتي.

Before I get a job, I'd like to live in the town.

- قبل حصولي على وظيفة، أحب أن أعيش في المدينة

أما عند الحديث عن ترتيب خططك المستقبلية أو نبؤاتك الشخصية لما سيحدث في المستقبل

subj. (فاعل) + will + inf.

ex. - In five years' time, I think I'll be a scientist.

- في غضون خمس سنوات، أعتقد أنني سأصبح عالماً

I don't think I will have to learn to drive because cars will drive themselves.

- لا أعتقد أنني سوف أضطر إلى تعلم كيفية القيادة لأن السيارات ستكون تدرك القيادة

3. Writing

Future predictions

نبؤات مستقبلية

مهارة الكتابة

في هذا الجزء، تتعلم من الكتابة
عن تنبؤات مستقبلية
بما هي الأمور التي لا يمكن

- In the next 30 years, there will be a lot of changes in our lives.
1. في الثلاثين عاماً القادمة سيكون هناك الكثير من التغيرات في حياتنا
- Technology will make our lives easier and more interesting.
2. ستجعل التكنولوجيا حياتنا أسهل وأكثر متعة.
- Our phones will have apps for everything.
3. سيصبح هناك تطبيقات لكل شيء على هواتفنا.
- Scientists will find new cures for illnesses.
4. سيجد العلماء علاجات جديدة للأمراض.
- Some illnesses will disappear completely.
5. ستختفي بعض الأمراض كلياً.
- Our cars will be electric.
6. ستصبح سياراتنا كهربائية.
- I think, there will be a lot of exciting changes in the future.
7. أعتقد، أنه سوف يوجد الكثير من التغيرات المثيرة في المستقبل.

Writing tips

When you write your text, remember to :

عندما تكتب نص خاص بك تذكر أن :

- Include an introduction with a topic sentence.
• اكتب مقدمة باستخدام جملة رئيسية.
- Use First, Second to introduce new ideas.
• استخدم كلمة (أولاً) First و (ثانياً) Second لتقديم أفكار جديدة.
- End with a conclusion.
• اتم بانهاء النص بخاتمة.
- Read your final text and check for any mistakes. Can you improve it?
• اقرأ النص النهائي الخاص بك وتحقق من أي أخطاء.. هل يمكنك تحسينه ؟

General Exercises

LESSONS

5 & 6

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I've got a lot of for the future.
a. planes b. plans c. designs d. drawings
- I want to play the
a. guitar b. piano c. flute d. drum
- I want to a video game.
a. buy b. play c. design d. make
- When will you learn to play the guitar? -
a. Next week b. Next month c. Next year d. Tomorrow

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- will make our lives easier. (El Fashn - Beni Suef 2022)
a. Technology b. Nature c. Activities d. Biology
- You need to to improve your reading skill.
a. practise b. design c. divide d. plan
- It's difficult to predictions for the future. (Fehia - Sharbia 2022)
a. do b. take c. make d. be
- cars are cleaner for our environment.
a. Electric b. Electronic c. Scientific d. Economic
- I am that life will be better for my family.
a. helpful b. hopeful c. dirty d. ugly
- Pupils should well for their exams.
a. advise b. revise c. reply d. rewrite
- It's quieter to live in the There is no noise there.
a. town b. city c. countryside d. city centre

My future

- Asmaa doesn't like crisps, ?
a. does she b. doesn't she c. is she d. isn't she
- Mrs Warda is a teacher teaches Arabic.
a. where b. when c. which d. who
- If you get up late, you the school bus.
a. will catch b. won't catch c. wouldn't catch d. don't catch

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

- Children will still going to school in the future. (.....)
- Mohammed drives his car fast, didn't he? (.....)
- My best subject is English, is it? (Desouk - Kafr El Sheikh 2022) (.....)
- Ameer will buy a car if he got enough money. (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on: موقع التفتوح

"Marine biologist"



Vocabulary

accountant	محاسب
architect	مهندس معماري
businessman	رجل أعمال
businesswoman	سيدة أعمال
scientist	عالم
photographer	مصور
engines	محركات
marine biologist	عالم أحياء مائية
prediction	تنبؤ
computer programmer	مبرمج كمبيوتر
dentist	طبيب أسنان
writer	كاتب
engineer	مهندس
laboratory	معمل
jewellery	مجوهرات
colourful	ملون
illness	مرض
cure	علاج
machines	آلات

Language

1- Relative pronoun who

- A marine biologist is a person **who** studies the ocean.

2- Question tag

- It's really important to look after our planet, isn't it?

سؤال خبرية مثبتة → جملة خبرية مثبتة

سؤال خبرية منفية → جملة خبرية منفية

It isn't an easy question, is it?

3- The first conditional (if)

- If I go to university, I'll study maths.

if present simple , will + inf.
مضارع بسيط ، will + inf.

- If I don't study hard, I won't pass my exams.

Speaking

Describing and asking questions about jobs

وصف وظائف مهنية

سؤال

Who is an architect?

An architect is

a person who

designs buildings.

2. Talking about

future plans

الحديث عن خطط مستقبلية

- Tomorrow, I'm

going to play

a video game.

- Next year, I'm

going to learn

a new language.

مهارات التحدث

1) Speaking

- تعتمد مهارة التحدث مع الآخرين بشكل أساسي على تكوين أسئلة ومعرفة كيفية الرد عليها.

Stimulus	Response	Usage الاستخدام
1. Who is a marine biologist?	- A marine biologist is a person who studies the ocean, the plants and animals in it.	مناقشة الوظائف
2. What does an engineer do?	- An engineer designs machines and engines.	مناقشة أهمية الوظائف التقليدية
3. Why is it important to keep traditional jobs?	- Because they continue an old tradition and help local people earn money.	الحديث عن ماذا سيحدث في المستقبل
4. What are your plans for the future?	- Next year, I want to learn to play the guitar.	
5. Do you think jobs will change in the future? Why/Why not?	- I think they will change because technology makes changes to our lives.	

2) Writing Skill

مهارة الكتابة

- تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المعارف الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة، قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على حل سؤال الفقرة الإنشائية في الورقة الامتحالية. (١١ جملة)

1 "Your dream job"

My dream job is to be a marine biologist^(١). A marine biologist is the person who studies the ocean, the plants and animals in it^(٢). I'm good at science and I love the ocean, so I decided to become a marine biologist^(٣). The animals in our oceans are really beautiful and interesting^(٤). In this job, every day is different^(٥). On some days, I go diving around coral reefs^(٦).

On other days I test water from the ocean in my laboratory⁽¹⁷⁾. I also spend a lot of time on the computer, writing the results of tests⁽¹⁸⁾. The best thing about my job is that my research will help the plants and animals in the ocean⁽¹⁹⁾. Also, there are bad things about my job⁽²⁰⁾. Sometimes, the weather is terrible⁽²¹⁾. It isn't nice to go out in a boat for a dive when there's a storm⁽²²⁾.

2 Your plans for the future

I want to be a scientist⁽²³⁾. It's a really interesting job⁽²⁴⁾. I must go to university for that so I need to work hard⁽²⁵⁾. If I go to university, I'll study science⁽²⁶⁾. I'd like to get a job in New Cairo⁽²⁷⁾. I want to buy an apartment there⁽²⁸⁾. I'd like to learn to drive so that I can visit my family⁽²⁹⁾.

3 Traditional jobs in Africa

Traditional jobs are still important today⁽³⁰⁾. People started making pottery thousands of years ago in Egypt⁽³¹⁾. It is traditional to make jewellery in Kenya⁽³²⁾. You can see the colourful jewellery in markets all over the country⁽³³⁾. It's an important part of Africa's culture to make baskets⁽³⁴⁾. It is also a way for women from small African villages to earn money⁽³⁵⁾. It is an important skill because it continues an old tradition⁽³⁶⁾. In Ghana, there are a lot of women who make and sell baskets⁽³⁷⁾.

4 Different jobs

My uncle has got a very interesting job⁽³⁸⁾. He's an engineer⁽³⁹⁾. The engineer is a person who designs machines, engines and designs planes⁽⁴⁰⁾. My sister is a businesswoman⁽⁴¹⁾. She works in an office and goes to meetings⁽⁴²⁾. My brother is a pilot⁽⁴³⁾. A pilot is a person who flies a plane⁽⁴⁴⁾. My cousin is a photographer⁽⁴⁵⁾. He takes photos⁽⁴⁶⁾. He likes his job very much⁽⁴⁷⁾. My neighbour is a scientist⁽⁴⁸⁾. A scientist is a person who studies science⁽⁴⁹⁾. I hope to be a doctor in the future to help poor people⁽⁵⁰⁾. I like voluntary work so much⁽⁵¹⁾.

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع إلى مملوك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (الصور الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)



- What's your uncle's job?
a. A doctor b. An engineer c. A businessman d. A teacher
- Where does your uncle work?
a. In a building b. In an office c. In a factory d. In a school
- What does an engineer design?
a. Buildings b. Machines c. Engines d. b & c
- Is an engineer's job interesting?
a. Yes, it is. b. No, it isn't. c. Not always. d. Yes, sometimes.

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Samar and Rehab are talking about the job of a marine biologist.

Samar: What's your job?

Rehab: (1)

Samar: What does a marine biologist usually study?

Rehab: (2)

Samar: (3)

Rehab: On some days, I go diving around the coral reefs.

Samar: Why?

Rehab: (4)

Samar: (5)

Rehab: Yes, diving is exciting, but sometimes the weather is terrible.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

I don't know which job I want to do when I'm older, but I think education is very important. I hope that I can pass all my exams so that I can go to university. I'm going to work hard. If I go to university, I will study science. It is my best subject. I don't like flying, so I don't want

to travel around the world. I want to get a job in Egypt. I want to teach science. If I have enough money, I will buy an apartment near the Red Sea. I will get married but how many children will I have? I don't know.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- After finishing _____ school, you can go to university.
a. primary b. preparatory c. secondary d. nursery
- The underlined word "apartment" means a
a. flat b. garden c. beach d. park
- The underlined pronoun "It" refers to
a. maths b. science c. university d. work

(Hsheway - Faiyum 2022)

b. Answer the following questions:

4. Give a suitable title for this passage.

5. What do you think about the writer?

6. What is the writer's favourite job?

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- My cousin goes _____ around the coral reefs.
a. riding b. cycling c. diving d. driving
- I live with my family in a small _____ on the second floor.
a. apartment b. house c. skyscraper d. department
- When something is _____, it's very old.
a. clear b. modern c. traditional d. medium
- Making jewellery helps people to _____ much money.
a. waste b. earn c. give d. draw
- Students have to study hard in order to _____ their exams.
a. get b. pass c. learn d. give

(Ismailia 2022)

(North Sinai - Sinai 2022)

- Scientists work hard to find new _____ for illnesses.
a. cures b. drawings c. methods d. models
- _____ is someone who is good with numbers.
a. A/An b. dentist c. accountant d. architect
- She wants to be a famous doctor, _____?
a. isn't she b. didn't she c. hasn't she d. doesn't she
- Hany and Sameer won't go to the beach, _____?
a. are they b. will he c. won't they d. will they
- She'll pass the driving test if she _____ well.
a. don't drive b. drove c. drives d. doesn't drive

(Damanhour - Behrouz 2022)

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

- If I pass the exams, I'd go to university. (_____)
- We'll move to Cairo when our dad got a new job. (_____)
- She lives in Ca.ro, isn't she? (Gurga - Sahag 2022) (_____)
- Miss Nadia is the teacher which teaches us maths.
(Shobra El Kani - Mansoura 2022) (_____)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on: مجالس عتيق في نهاية الكتاب

"Traditional jobs in Africa"

AltFwok.com موقع التفوق

Stop here!

Mini-Test on unit 12 for Al-Azhar students

1. Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

A. Salah

Adam : A person who studies the ocean, the plants and animals in it.

B. Helmy : What do you want to do when you're older?

Alaa :

2. Write a paragraph of five sentences about :

"Your dream job"

2. Use your brain, think smart

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. He works _____ his speaking skill for the interview.

a. with b. on c. in d. for

2. I run quickly in order _____ the bus.

a. to catch b. catch c. catches d. caught

3. _____ your tour guide, aren't I?

a. Are I b. I am c. You are d. Am I

4. He scarcely has money, _____ he?

a. does b. doesn't c. hasn't d. haven't

5. Omar _____ in his exams last year.

a. passed b. pressed c. succeeded d. dressed

Review D

SB pages 64 & 65 WB pages 114 & 115

Reading

on Lesson 1 SB page 64

A : There was a film about the dangers⁽¹⁾ to our planet on TV yesterday. It was very sad. What can we do?

B : We can help, can't we, Tarek?

A : How?

B : If we pick up⁽²⁾ the rubbish⁽³⁾ from the beach, the animals won't eat it.

If we have shorter showers⁽⁴⁾, we'll save⁽⁵⁾ water.

We must walk or cycle when we can. I always ride my bike to the sports centre⁽⁶⁾.

You mustn't buy plastic bags. My shopping bag is made of cotton. I use it every day.

A : If we all do these things, we'll help to save our planet.

B : Thanks Ali ! I'll do all those things !

Check Vocabulary

(1) مخاطر (2) يلتقط (3) نفايات (4) دشوات قصيرة (5) يوفّر (6) مركز رياضي



Listening

on Lesson 2 SB page 113

Malak : Here are the boxes for the rubbish. Different rubbish goes into different boxes.

Hala : Great! So which box does this bottle go into?

Malak : What is it made of plastic or glass?

Hala : It's made of plastic.

Malak : OK, it goes into the yellow box.

Hala : Right... There's another bottle here. This one is made of glass.

Malak : If it's made of glass, it goes into the blue box.

Hala : What about this magazine? It's made of paper.

Malak : It goes into the red box.

Hala : Where can I put this can?

Malak : If it's made of metal, it goes into the green box.

Hala : Yes, it's made of metal... I'm putting it in the green box.

Malak : What's left?

Hala : Just this shirt. We can't recycle that, can we? It's made of cotton.

Malak : We're not going to recycle the clothes - but we can give them to other people so that they can use them. Put them in the orange box, please.

Hala : The orange box... OK.

Malak : Great. Everything is ready. Thanks for your help, Hala.

Check Vocabulary

مادة 1. لون 2. لون 3. لون 4. لون 5. لون 6. لون 7. لون 8. لون 9. لون 10. لون



Reading

on Lesson 1 WB page 114

In the past, many people had traditional jobs that people still do today. There were many teachers and bakers, for example. However, some jobs are quite new, aren't they?

For example, an aeronautical engineer is a person who designs things that fly. If you want to become an aeronautical engineer, you will have to study science. It is not an easy job, but it is very interesting. If you want to be a biologist, perhaps you will design drones.

Many people think that drones will carry our post in the future. That will make the post above our cities interesting, won't it?

Check Vocabulary

مادة 1. لون 2. لون 3. لون 4. لون 5. لون 6. لون 7. لون 8. لون 9. لون 10. لون

Listening

on Lesson 2 WB page 114

Guessing something

1 : I'm not sure what this souvenir is made of. Is it plastic or stone?

Giving instructions in order

2 : OK, first look for the fruit that is yellow. Then feel the fruit carefully. It should not be too soft. So, if it's yellow and not too soft, what should you do?

Well, finally, take it carefully from the tree.

Checking information

3 : Hello, so, it's Mrs Shabana, isn't it? And you have got two children in this class, haven't you? But Aya isn't in school today, is she?

Talking about future plans

4 : Before I go to university, I think I'll travel for a few months. Then I'd like to work for a charity.

Check Vocabulary

مادة 1. لون 2. لون 3. لون 4. لون 5. لون 6. لون 7. لون 8. لون 9. لون 10. لون



Mini-Test on Unit 10

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- You can turn on the
a train b tap c top d toy
- What's your
a table b wallet c television d statue
made of? - Leather
- I'm not sure. I think
a it b its c is it d it's
made of cotton.
- There
a weren't b wasn't c are d isn't
any cars in ancient Egypt.
- Mohamed Salah won the European
Champions
a Timeline b League c Diagram d Plan
with Liverpool in 2019.
- In the future, journeys to the moon will
only 12 hours.
a make b give c take d have
- It's easy to
a make b keep c give d take
warm or cool in round
houses.
a circle b triangle c rectangle d square

8. This is a round shape. It is a
a circle b triangle c rectangle d square

If you get , you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

● أجب على الأسئلة التي تحتاج إلى مراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في نهاية كل وحدة.

9. I think we
schools in the future
a are having b will have
c are going to have d have

10. Can you
your house in the future?
a give b take c do d make

2. Read and correct the underlined words

- There will been a swimming pool.
- What is the car seats made of?
- Will we to have driverless cars?
- She was born on 2010.

3. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Houses in the future"

If you get , you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

● أجب على الأسئلة التي تحتاج إلى مراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في نهاية كل وحدة.

Mini-Test on Unit 11

1. Complete the following dialogue:

Lama wants to grow a tomato plant.

Lama : I'd like to grow a tomato plant.

(1) ?

Mariam : First, find a sunny place in the garden.

Lama : Do you mean a place under the sun?

Mariam : (2) . Secondly, look
at the ground. It must not have lots of
stones or other plants in it.

Lama : (3) . What should
I do after that?

Mariam : Then, make a small hole in the soil.

Lama : (4) ?

Mariam : About 2 cm deep. Next, put some water
in the hole so it is not too dry.

Lama : Should I water it now?

Mariam : (5) . Finally, put the
seed in the hole and cover it with soil.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The whales which are heavy sea animals hit
with their big
a fins b wings c legs d tails

2. The octopus swims very fast when it's in
a safe b danger c sleeping d rest

3. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Planting a tree"

Mini-Test on Unit 2

If you got ●, you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
is the person who looks after your teeth.

- a. engineer
b. dentist
c. accountant
d. actor

2. My uncle Ali is a/an projects and a big company.

- a. photographer
b. businessman
c. engineer
d. writer

3. The body needs sleep.

- a. isn't
b. didn't
c. doesn't
d. wasn't

4. Amal TV, didn't she?
a. doesn't watch
b. watches
c. didn't watch
d. didn't watch

5. Ghana is an country.

- a. Asian
b. American
c. European
d. African

6. If I have enough money, I'll buy a/an to

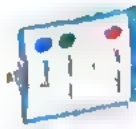
- a. school
b. library
c. apartment
d. car

7. If I don't work hard, I

- a. won't
b. will
c. would
d. could

8. Living in the is quieter than living in the city.

- a. countryside
b. seaside
c. capital
d. hospital



9. It's important to
a. explain
b. plan
c. start
d. finish

10. Scientists always try to find
a. predictions
b. cures
c. changes
d. ideas

2. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Where will you lived if you go to your job?
2. You did your homework last night, don't you?
3. A businessman is a man which works in an office.
4. If I eat too many burgers, I get fat.

- Write a paragraph of your dream job. Write it in English.

- Traditional jobs in Africa

Test on unit 7

"A terrible weekend I had"

My weekend was a terrible one. My baby sister woke me up at 5 a.m. I felt so tired. I went to the kitchen, but there was no milk or bread.

"A fantastic day"

Yesterday was a fantastic day for me. I did many interesting things on this day. In the morning, I went to the bowling alley. I went with my cousin. After that, we went to a pizza restaurant. I had a pizza with chicken. My cousin had a pizza with olives and pepper. The pizza was delicious. In the evening, we went to visit our grandparents. They were very happy to meet us. We helped our grandpa to fix many things at home. He was proud of us.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"Robinson Crusoe"

Robinson Crusoe is an adventure story by Daniel Defoe. Robinson Crusoe was a sailor. His ship sank because there was a bad storm. Crusoe swam to a nearby island. But there were no other people there. He walked along the beach, but he saw nobody and he thought that he was alone. He found a fish and ate it. He looked for a cave to sleep in. He found a coconut on the beach. It was delicious. He wrote a diary of what happened to him.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"Famous places in Egypt"

There are many famous places in Egypt. We are very proud of them. There are many old temples and pyramids. The Great Pyramid of Giza is 146 m tall. It's taller than the Red Pyramid which is 115 m tall. The Red Pyramid is further away from the centre of Cairo. In Luxor, there are many temples and the Temple of Karnak. Last winter, I went to Luxor with my family. We visited many places there. We had a nice time.

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"How was your weekend?"

My weekend was not bad. I went to the cinema. I saw a very good film. I played football with my friends. I went to the park. I saw many beautiful flowers. I went to the beach. I saw many beautiful fish. I went to the zoo. I saw many beautiful animals. I went to the museum. I saw many beautiful things. I went to the park. I saw many beautiful flowers. I went to the beach. I saw many beautiful fish. I went to the zoo. I saw many beautiful animals. I went to the museum. I saw many beautiful things.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"The Grand Egyptian Museum"

In 2019, the Grand Egyptian Museum welcomed its first visitors. It is further from the city centre than the old museum. But it is two km from the Pyramids at Giza. It has more space for valuable objects. More people can see these valuable things. The museum can preserve these objects. One of the most beautiful parts of the museum is the entrance. The biggest statue in the museum is the statue of Ramses II. It is 12 m high.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"The Taha Masr Bridge"

The Taha Masr Bridge is the world's widest suspension bridge. It opened in Cairo in May 2019. More than 4 000 people helped to build it. They started building it in 2016. They finished it in 32 months later. The bridge crosses the Nile's Warrag Island. Many people enjoy walking across the bridge. It has a glass floor, so you can see the river under your feet. The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset.

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"Famous places in Egypt"

There are many famous places in Egypt. We are very proud of them. There are many old temples and pyramids. The Great Pyramid of Giza is 146 m tall. It's taller than the Red Pyramid which is 115 m tall. The Red Pyramid is further away from the centre of Cairo. In Luxor, there are many temples and the Temple of Karnak. Last winter, I went to Luxor with my family. We visited many places there. We had a nice time.

I went to my friend's house. I saw many beautiful things. I went to the park. I saw many beautiful flowers. I went to the beach. I saw many beautiful fish. I went to the zoo. I saw many beautiful animals. I went to the museum. I saw many beautiful things.

Unit 2

6 Test on unit 8

"A wonderful holiday"

We had a wonderful holiday in Luxor last week. We visited the most interesting places in Egypt. First, we went to the Valley of the Kings. It is one of the most popular places for tourists in Egypt. We went early, because that is the quietest time. Secondly, we went to the Akasha Temple. It was more crowded than the valley of the kings. Finally, we went to the best and quietest place for me, the Mabu Temple.

Unit 9

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"A trip with my friends"

Last year, I went to South Africa with my friends. It was beautiful there. Our first day there was an adventure. We went trekking in the mountains. When we started trekking, it was sunny. But when we reached the top of the mountain, there were dark clouds. After that, the rain began and there was a storm. The rocks were wet and Ahmed fell down and hurt himself. The following days, the weather was better. I went zip lining. I was a bit frightened, but I was excited.

Test on unit 9

"An adventure"

There are many kinds of sports. We have water sports and mountain sports, etc. We do many sports in Egypt. Last year, I went diving in the Red Sea. It was amazing. There are many colourful coral reefs there. I wanted to try windsurfing, but there was no time for that. I'm going to try rock climbing next year. I think it's a bit dangerous. My friends like trekking in the mountains. They are going to go to Mount Catherine next week.

Unit 10

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"Deir el-Medina"

Deir el-Medina was a village in ancient Egypt. The people in this village worked in the Valley of the Kings. The doors of their houses were made of wood and the walls were made of bricks. The people painted their houses white and the doors red. There was a kitchen and a living room. People

slept on the roof because there weren't any bedrooms. It was very hot at night. They got their water from the Nile Valley, because there weren't any taps.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"Round houses"

Many houses in the past were round. Today, many modern houses are also round. This is important when there is an earthquake or a strong wind. A round building means that the building is very strong. Also, heavy snow or rain will fall from the roof. A round house is easier to keep warm or cool. It is quieter inside than a building that is a rectangle or a square. A round house is cheaper because building a round house uses fewer materials.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"Planning my future home"

I have many creative ideas for my future house. It will be made of plastic bricks, a lot of glass and metal. It will be a big house. There will be two bedrooms, a kitchen, a bathroom and a living room. The garden will be on the roof. It will be a round building, as a round shape means the building is very strong. It is also cheaper to make and easy to keep warm or cool. There will be a charger next to my house for my electric car.

Test on unit 10

"Houses in the future"

Houses in the future will be different to our houses today. Houses will be made of plastic bricks, a lot of glass and metal. The garden will be on the roof because there won't be much space. There will be chargers for electric cars next to the house as all people will use electric cars in the future. Robots will do all the housework. People will get electricity from solar panels. Drones will bring food and parcels to houses.

Unit 11

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"Sea animals"

There are a lot of animals that live in the sea. Some sea animals are dangerous like sharks. The shark is one of the most dangerous sea animals in

the ocean. A shark uses more than 20,000 teeth in its life. A stingray is a big, flat fish. When it knows a shark is coming, it jumps out of the water. A sea turtle has a hard shell to protect it. Some sea animals are poisonous and sting when you touch them like jellyfish.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"What we must do to keep animals safe"

We have nature reserves to help our birds, plants and animals. Many animals live here so we must be careful about what we do. We mustn't make a lot of noise. Noise makes animals feel frightened. We mustn't leave the road through the reserve because there are animals and birds living in the plants next to the road. We mustn't give any food to the animals or birds. We must take all our rubbish with us when we leave.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"A story you like"

Santiago was an old fisherman. He didn't catch a fish for a very long time. One day, he found a big fish at the end of the fishing line. The fish was stronger than Santiago. He could pull it to the boat. The sharks came and ate the fish. When Santiago returned to his home on the beach, he found the fish was only a skeleton. The other fishermen saw how big the fish was and knew that he was brave to catch it. They respected Santiago more than ever.

Test on unit 11

"Planting a tree"

We plant trees to keep our environment clean. Trees make the air healthy. There are many steps to plant a tree. First, wash the plastic pot and dry it. Second, put some small stones at the bottom of the pot. Press your finger to make a hole and put the seed in the hole and cover it with soil. Finally, put the pot outside in a warm place. Water it every day but don't give it too much water.

Unit 12

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"My dream job"

My uncle has got a very interesting job. He is an engineer. An engineer is a person who designs

machines and engines. My uncle designs engines for planes. I like his job so much. I'd like to be an engineer one day. I hope that I pass my exams so that I can go to university. I'm going to work hard to achieve my dream. I want to get a good job and do many projects.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"My plan for the future"

I've got a lot of plans for the future. Next year, I want to learn to play the guitar. And before I finish my school, I want to design a video game. In ten years' time, I want to have a good job. I think I'll be a businessman. It's an interesting job. A businessman is a person who works in an office and goes to meetings. I want to travel to another country and get married one day. I want to have two children.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"Marine biologist"

A marine biologist is a person who studies the plants and animals in the ocean. A marine biologist must be good at science and loves the ocean. The ocean is full of interesting animals and plants. A marine biologist sometimes goes around coral reefs and sometimes tests water from the ocean in the laboratory. This job needs working a lot of time on the computer and writing the results of the tests. His researches help to protect the plants and animals in the ocean.

Test on unit 12

"Traditional jobs in Africa"

Traditional jobs and skills are still important in Africa. People started making pottery thousands of years ago in Egypt. Some people make pottery in workshops and some in their own homes. If you go to Fayoum, a city in Egypt, you will see many people making pottery. There is also a school where children and adults can learn this skill. There is a different skill in Kenya, people make jewellery. You can see colourful jewellery in markets all over the country.

Listening Texts

Unit 7

1 Lessons 1 & 2

Dad likes sports. He is very good at swimming. Mum loves cooking. Her salads are delicious. My sister likes making things.

2 Lessons 3 & 4

My father drove us to the park on Saturday. It took an hour to go two kilometres. It was terrible because there were so many cars.

3 Test on unit (7)

Mum likes playing sports, but she does not like watching sports. Nadia, aged five, is frightened of the dark. Dad likes science. He is always busy.

4 February assessment

I'm Basant. I'm 12 years old. Yesterday was my birthday. My family took me by car to the museum. We saw statues there. In the evening, we went to the funfair.

Unit 8

1 Lessons 3 & 4

The Taha Masr Bridge is the world's widest suspension bridge and it opened in Cairo in May 2019. It is 67.36 m wide and 540 m long. It crosses the Nile's Warraq Island.

2 Lessons 5 & 6

The Valley of the Kings in Luxor is one of the most popular places for tourists. We went early because that is the quietest time, but it gets busier later.

3 Test on unit (8)

The British Museum is in London. It opened in 1759 and now has more than 13 million objects. About six million visitors go there every year.

Unit 9

1 Lessons 1 & 2

Eman is in Dahab with her family. This afternoon, they are going to go trekking in the mountains. Eman is going to try rock climbing.

2 Lessons 3 & 4

Yesterday, we went trekking in the mountains. It was sunny when we started, but when we got to the top we saw dark clouds.

3 Lessons 5 & 6

Maher is looking forward to seeing Karim who is coming to Cairo from Alexandria tomorrow. Karim is coming by train.

4 Test on unit (9)

We're enjoying ourselves on holiday in South Africa. It's beautiful here and there's a lot to do. Yesterday was an adventure. Tomorrow the weather is going to be better.

Unit 10

1 Lessons 1 & 2

A car door is made of metal and the windows are made of glass. Expensive car seats are made of leather. Some car seats are made of plastic.

2 Lessons 3 & 4

In the future, robots will do the housework. To build houses, we will use plastic bricks. They will be cheap.

3 Lessons 5 & 6

I learned to ride a bike in 2013. In 2018, we moved house. We live in Cairo now. We went on a holiday to the Red Sea.

4 Test on unit (10)

Mohamed Salah was born in Cairo in 1992. He started playing football for El Mokawloon in 2010. Then, he moved to Switzerland to play for Basel.

5 March assessment

Eman is in Dahab with her family. They're going to go trekking in the mountains. Eman isn't going to try rock climbing as it's too scary.

Unit 11

1 Lessons 3 & 4

We should help save our planet, the Earth. We can plant trees to keep our air healthy. So we can breathe fresh air.

Listening Texts

2 Lessons 5 & 6

Santiago was an old fisherman. He didn't catch fish for a long time. One day, there was a big fish at the end of his fishing line.

3 Test on unit (11)

The shark is one of the most dangerous sea animals. If it loses a tooth, a new one grows. It uses more than 20,000 teeth in its life.

Unit 12

1 Lessons 1 & 2

A marine biologist studies the ocean, the plants and animals in it. The animals in oceans are really beautiful and interesting.

2 Lessons 3 & 4

It is an important part of Africa's culture to make baskets. In Ghana, there are a lot of women who make and sell baskets to earn money.

3 Lessons 5 & 6

I've got a lot of plans for the future. I want to learn to play the guitar next year. I also want to design a video game!

4 Test on unit (12)

My uncle has got a very interesting job. He's an engineer. He works in a factory. He designs machines and engines.

Sheet 1 On Unit 7

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- There are a lot of colourful fish in the 2 .
 a swimming pool
 c aquarium
 b. sports centre
 d planetarium
- The big 1 is one of the fantastic rides in the funfair.
 a wall
 b whale
 c wheel
 d wing

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- Why old are you? 12 years old. 2
 1. Why old are you? 12 years old.
- Has your brother got a pencil case? - Yes, he does. 6

Dictation

أنا أمارس رياضة ركوب الخيل من المجموعات المائية لكل طالب الخراب مدى

A planetarium statue restaurant	B trumpet interviewer nearby
--	---

Sheet 3 On Unit 9

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- In Dahab, we're going to go 2 in the mountains.
 a. diving
 b. trekking
 c. windsurfing
 d. kayaking
- 1 are people who live in the desert.
 a. Bedouins
 b. Runners
 c. Beginners
 d. Villagers

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- Will you going to visit your grandmother? 2
- Did you write this passage herself? 6

Dictation

يكثر اهتمام مجموعة واحدة من المجموعات المائية لكل طالب الخراب مدى

A windsurfing zip lining scary	B stormy towel railway line
---	--

Sheet 2 On Unit 8

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- There are a lot of 1 in Thailand in winter.
 a. millions people
 b. millions
 c. millions of people
 d. millions of people
- The market is always 2 at this time.
 a. wide
 b. busy
 c. big
 d. deep

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- One of the most beautiful parts of the transition is the entrance 2
 1. One of the most beautiful parts of the transition is the entrance.
- He is the good friend of mine 6
 1. He is the good friend of mine.

Dictation

أنا أمارس رياضة ركوب الخيل من المجموعات المائية لكل طالب الخراب مدى

A crowded visitors bridge	B ice skating funny popular
--	--

Sheet 4 On Unit 10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The 2 is on the top of a house.
 a. bedroom
 b. wall
 c. oven
 d. roof
- The 1 is made of plastic and glass.
 a. curtain
 b. cap
 c. television
 d. sofa

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- We won't goes to the moon. 2
- Will there been ordinary mobiles in the future? 6

Dictation

يكثر اهتمام مجموعة واحدة من المجموعات المائية لكل طالب الخراب مدى

A curtains teaspoon toy	B machine earthquake quest
--------------------------------------	---

Sheet 5 On Unit 11

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Nature protect a lot of animals and birds.
 a. preserves b. resorts c. reserves d. deserts
2. Trees help to our air healthy.
 a. become b. give c. keep d. take

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. When it is very cold, water turned into ice. ()
2. We must make a lot of noise. ()

Dictation

يختار المعلم مجموعة واحدة من المجموعات الآتية لكل طالب الاختبار مدى استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

A coral reefs planet touch	B hole project hide
قنديل البحر	بذرة
مشكلة	يغطي
يختبر / اختبار	عميق

Sheet 6 On Unit 12

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Making jewellery helps some people to money.
 a. win b. earn c. gain d. lose
2. "International" is the opposite of "
 a. global b. local c. manual d. African

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. A nurse is a person when looks after sick people ()
2. She won't travel abroad, would she ? ()

Dictation

يختار المعلم مجموعة واحدة من المجموعات الآتية لكل طالب الاختبار مدى استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

A accountant voluntary research	B university pottery culture
محاسب	جامعة
مطوعة / تطوع	خزف / بقراس
بحث	مطهر / طهي / لحام
معلم / محاضر / محاضرة	ثقافة



ELMPASSER

GUIDE

New Hello!

ENGLISH

By a group of supervisors



A WEEK
IS ENOUGH

دراسة المعاصر
للمراجعة والاختبارات
للفصل الأول الإعدادي
الفصل الدراسي الثاني

1st
Prep.
2023

SECOND TERM

Listening, Language Functions and Reading Comprehension

Listening

1. موضوع الاستماع

على الطالب أن يستمع إلى نص دوائي (٢٥ - ٣٠ كلمة) من الموضوعات الخمسة على الكتيب المدرسي التي تساعد في التعامل مع السؤال الأول وبعد الاستماع إلى النص يجب الطالب على أربعة أسئلة اختبار من متعدد متبوعة بأربع اختيارات لكل سؤال.

السؤال الأول في ورقة الامتحان

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع إلى مملوك ولتتر الإجابة الصحيحة (موضوع الاستماع في نهاية الكتيب)

- In ancient Egypt, there weren't any
a. living rooms b. kitchens c. doors d. bedrooms
- People in ancient Egypt slept
a. in bedrooms b. in living rooms c. on roofs d. in kitchens
- Were there any taps in ancient Egypt?
a. Yes b. No c. Not in the text d. Maybe
- In ancient Egypt, people got their water from
a. the Nile Valley b. taps c. bottles d. not in the text

2 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع إلى مملوك ولتتر الإجابة الصحيحة (موضوع الاستماع في نهاية الكتيب)

- When Omar was twelve, he learned to play the
a. piano b. trumpet c. guitar d. violin
- When Omar was fourteen, he learned to play the
a. violin b. piano c. trumpet d. guitar
- Omar
a. hates b. eats c. dislikes d. likes
- What music does Omar like?
a. Jazz music b. Pop music c. Rock music d. Traditional music

Language Functions

٢ الوظائف اللغوية

عرض لجميع الوظائف اللغوية بطريقة سهلة وبسيطة متنوعة بتدريبات كل وحدة على حدة

Set Book Questions with suggested answers

أسئلة وردت بالكتاب المدرسي وإجاباتها المقترحة تساعدك على التعامل مع سؤال المحادثة

Unit 7

Questions [?]

Answers [.]

- | | |
|---|---|
| • Who is Marvin Alistar?
من هو مارفين أولستر؟ | - He is a famous musician.
هو موسيقار مشهور |
| • What does he do?
ماذا يفعل؟ | - He writes songs and plays in a band.
هو يكتب أغاني ويعزف بفرقة موسيقية. |
| • What type of music do you like?
ما نوع الموسيقى التي تحبها؟ | - Classical / Jazz / Pop music
الموسيقى الكلاسيكية / الجاز / البوب |
| • When did you learn it?
متى تعلمتها؟ | - When I was 10.
عندما كنت في العاشرة من عمري. |
| • How was your weekend?
كيف كانت عطلة نهاية الأسبوع الخاصة بك؟ | - It was terrible / great.
كانت سيئة / رائعة. |
| • What happened?
ماذا حدث؟ | - I dropped my mobile phone.
/ I went to the stadium.
أسقطت هاتفي الجوال / ذهبت إلى استاد |

Unit 8

Questions [?]

Answers [.]

- | | |
|--|--|
| • How long is the Cairo - Alexandria Desert Road?
كم يبلغ طول طريق القاهرة - الإسكندرية الصحراوي؟ | - It's 220 kilometres long.
يبلغ طوله ٢٢٠ كم |
| • How many people live in Cairo?
كم عدد السكان الذين يعيشون في القاهرة؟ | - More than 20 million people.
أكثر من ٢٠ مليون شخص. |
| • How much do you know about the Pyramids?
ما مدى معرفتك بالهرامات؟ | - The Great Pyramid of Giza is 146 metres tall.
يبلغ طول الهرم الأكبر بالجزيرة ١٤٦ مترًا. |
| • Have you ever visited / seen it?
هل سبق لك أن قمت بزيارته / رؤيته؟ | - Yes, I have.
- No, I haven't. |

Unit 9

Questions [?]

- Why don't we go swimming?
لماذا لا نذهب للسباحة ؟

- How is the weather now?
ما هي حالة الطقس اليوم ؟

- Shall we go mountain climbing?
ما رأيك بأن نتسلق الجبال ؟

Answers [.]

- Great idea.
فكرة عظيمة

- I'm not very keen on that.
لست متحمسا لذلك

- The weather is sunny.
الطقس مشمس

- I'm not sure. That sounds a bit scary.
لست متأكدًا. هذا يبدو مخيف قليلاً.

Unit 10

Questions [?]

- What are you going to do tomorrow?
ماذا ستفعل غدا ؟

- How do you think people will live in the future?
كيف تعتقد ستعيش الناس في المستقبل ؟

Answers [.]

- I'm going to visit my uncle.
سأقوم بزيارة عمي.

- I think people will use electric cars.
- I think there will be lots of solar panels.
- أعتقد سيستخدم الناس سيارات كهربائية
- أعتقد سيكون هناك الكثير من الألواح الشمسية.

- What materials will the houses be made of?
ما المواد الخام التي ستبنى بها المنازل ؟

- Do you think we will live on the moon?
هل تعتقد أننا ستعيش على القمر ؟

- They will be made of plastic bricks.
سأصنع من قوالب طوب بلاستيكية.

- I think it's not possible.
أعتقد أنه غير ممكن.
- Oh. It's my dream.
أوه. إنه حلمي.

موقع التفوق Altfwok.com

Unit 11

Questions [?]

- What should I do to plant a tree?
ماذا يجب أن أفعل لكي أزرع شجرة ؟

- What should I do after that?
ماذا يجب أن أفعل بعد ذلك ؟

- How deep must the hole be?
كم العمق يجب أن تكون الحفرة ؟

- Should I water it every day?
هل يجب أن أقوم بالري كل يوم ؟

Answers [.]

- First, find a plastic pot.
- Second, put some stones at the bottom of it.
أولًا: أوجد إناء من البلاستيك
ثانيًا: قم بوضع بعض الأحجار في القاع.

- The next thing you do is to press your finger into the soil to make a hole.
الشيء التالي هو أن تقوم بالضغط بإصبعك على التربة لعمل حفرة.

- It must be 2 centimetres deep.
يجب أن يكون عمقها 2 سم.

- Yes. But don't give it too much water.
نعم ولكن لا تعطيهما كثيرًا من الماء.

Unit 12

Questions [?]

- You visit some interesting places, don't you?
أنت تقوم بزيارة بعض الأماكن الشيقة. أليس كذلك ؟

- What different kinds of animals do you study?
ما أنواع الحيوانات المختلفة التي تقوم بدراستها ؟

- It sounds like a dream job to be a marine biologist, doesn't it?
إنه يبدو حلمًا أن تصبح عالم أحياء مائية. أليس كذلك ؟

- What advice do you give to become a marine biologist?
ما هي النصيحة التي يمكنك إعطاؤها حتى تصبح عالم أحياء مائية ؟

Answers [.]

- Yes. At the moment, I'm working in the Red Sea. Last year, I worked in Australia.
نعم. في الوقت الحالي. أعمل في البحر الأحمر.
العام الماضي. عملت في أستراليا.

- I study fish and smaller animals around the coral reefs.
أنا أدرس السمك والحيوانات الأصغر حجمًا حول الشعاب المرجانية.

- Yes, but it is hard work and takes a long time.
نعم. ولكن إنه عمل شاق ويستغرق وقتًا طويلاً.

- You have to work hard and love science.
يجب عليك أن تعمل بجد وأن تحب العلوم.

السؤال الثاني في ورقة الامتحان

مبادرة من حوار به خمس فراغات. وعلى الطالب أن يملأ كل فراغ وذلك يجب على الطالب أن يقرأ الحوار أولاً بطريقة جيدة.

Complete the following dialogue :

1 Ahmed and Samy are talking about types of music.

Ahmed: Hello Samy! Do you like music?

Samy : Hi Ahmed! (1) _____

Ahmed: What kind of music do you like?

Samy : (2) _____

Ahmed: (3) _____ ?

Samy : I like jazz music because it's nice and calm.

Ahmed: Do you like pop music?

Samy : (4) _____

Ahmed: (5) _____ ?

Samy : Marvin Allstar is my favourite musician.

2 Dina asks Asmaa about her weekend.

Dina : Hi Asmaa! How was your weekend?

Asmaa : Hi Dina! (1) _____

Dina : (2) _____ ?

Asmaa : I went to the museum.

Dina : Good. Was it quiet?

Asmaa : (3) _____

Dina : Did you take photos of the museum?

Asmaa : (4) _____

Dina : (5) _____ ?

Asmaa : Great idea! Let's visit it together.

3 Hany asks Ali about his last holiday.

Hany : What did you do last year on the holiday?

Ali : (1) _____

Hany : I'd love to do that. I'd like to try windsurfing, too.

Ali : (2) _____ ?

Hany : I don't know. I think rock climbing is a bit dangerous but I like trekking in the mountains.

Ali : Me, too! (3) _____

Hany : (4) _____ ?

Ali : No, I'm not going to try mountain biking. It's very dangerous to ride a bike in the mountains.

Hany : I think you're right. Zip lining looks scary, too.

Ali : (5) _____ !

4 Ola and Maha will do some activities on Saturday.

Ola : Good morning, Maha.

Maha : Good morning, Ola. (1) _____ ?

Ola : I'm fine.

Maha : What shall we do on Saturday?

Ola : Let me think. (2) _____ ?

Maha : I'm not sure. Rock climbing is quite dangerous. (3) _____

Ola : OK. How about playing basketball?

Maha : (4) _____ I'm not very tall.

Ola : OK, not rock climbing or basketball. I know! Let's play tennis.

Maha : (5) _____ I always enjoy playing tennis.

موقع التتويج
ALT FwOk.com

Reading Comprehension

٣ قناع القدم

السؤال الثالث في ورقة الامتحان

وهو عبارة عن قطعة فصح ويذهب الطالب على ذلك اسئلة يدرج منصوص والتي تليها من تحت ذلك اربع خيارات لكل سؤال

Read the following, then answer the questions.

Dear Sam,

I'm staying with my uncle in London! I travelled to his house by train. London is very big and the streets are always busy. My uncle says that some people in London are not friendly, but I like the people here. Today, we visited a museum. It has big windows, so the rooms are very light. Some people don't like museums, but this museum was very interesting for me.

Yesterday, we walked up a hill in a park. I saw all of London from there. There are some modern skyscrapers in London, but most of the buildings are low and not very tall.

Regards,

Ali

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Skyscrapers are very _____ buildings.
a. low b. tall c. small d. tiny
2. The underlined word "here" refers to _____.
a. London b. Paris c. Cairo d. Alexandria
3. The opposite of the underlined word "low" is _____.
a. small b. tall c. high d. fast

b. Answer the following questions:

4. What is the main idea of the email?
5. What do you think of living in London?
6. Where is Ali staying?

Vocabulary, Language & Writing

General Revision on Vocabulary

مراجعة عامة على أهم المفردات اللغوية لكل وحدة وتدرجات عليها.

Unit 7

aquarium	معرض الأحياء المائية	football stadium	ملعب كرة قدم
sports centre	مركز رياضي	bowling alley	صالة بولينج
funfair	مدينة الملاهي	museum	متحف
planetarium	القبة السماوية	exhibition	معرض
dolphins	دلافين	restaurant	مطعم
shopping	التسوق	nervous	عصبي / منوتر
school canteen	كافتين المدرسة / المقصف	together	معا
swimming pool	حمام سباحة	opera	أوبرا
pop music	موسيقى البوب	traditional	تقليدي
terrible	فظيع / كريه	coconut	دور الهند
opinion	رأي	closed	مغلق

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We decided to play basketball at the sports _____.
a. match b. wheel c. funfair d. centre
2. We had lunch together in the school _____. (SB page 4)
a. canteen b. library
c. laboratory d. music room
3. Yesterday, I went to my new school. I was quite _____ because it was my first day. (SB page 4)
a. expensive b. nervous c. dangerous d. funny

4. Let's go on the big wheel at the this weekend. (WB page 70)
 a. funfair b. museum c. stadium d. theatre
5. It was great at the Egypt won 2-0! (WB page 70)
 a. cinema b. jungle c. opera d. stadium
6. My grandfather was a and visited countries all over the world. (WB page 73)
 a. carpenter b. teacher c. sailor d. vet
7. When you put a stone in water, it (WB page 76)
 a. thinks b. sinks c. floats d. thanks
8. I didn't like this story. I thought it was really (WB page 73)
 a. exciting b. amazing c. funny d. terrible
9. People first played music a long time ago. (WB page 76)
 a. traditional b. modern c. new d. pop
10. is a very loud music. (WB page 76)
 a. Classic b. Rock c. Pop d. Opera

Unit 8

bridge	كوبرى	Russia	دولة روسيا
pyramid	هرم	deep	عميق
tower	برج	million	مليون
tunnel	نفق	the Great Pyramid	الهرم الأكبر
further	أبعد	crowded	مزدحم
worse	أسوأ	suspension bridge	كوبرى معلق
beautiful	جميل	dangerous	خطير
sunset	غروب الشمس	narrow	ضيق
achievements	إنجازات	famous	مشهور
holiday	إجازة	valuable	دو قيمة

the Grand Egyptian Museum	المuseum المصري الكبير	treasures	كنوز
space	فضاء	competition	منافسة / مسابقة
entrance	مدخل	tourists	سياح
fantastic	رائع	columns	أعمدة
expressions	تعبيرات	The Amazon	نهر الأمازون

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Taha Masr goes over the Nile in Cairo. (WB page 77)
 a. Street b. Bridge c. Library d. Dam
2. The Cairo is the tallest building in Egypt. (WB page 77)
 a. Station b. Tower c. Museum d. Citadel
3. The Channel goes under the sea between England and France. (WB page 77)
 a. Tunnel b. Bridge c. Cave d. Jungle
4. We need to buy some water. This bottle is (WB page 78)
 a. full b. bright c. empty d. expensive
5. Only people and bikes can go down that road because it's very (WB page 78)
 a. narrow b. wide c. easy d. big
6. The market is always very busy at this time. Don't go now or it will be very (WB page 78)
 a. free b. crowded c. empty d. open
7. We can't swim across the river here because it's very (WB page 78)
 a. old b. short c. wide d. long
8. We want to swim in the river, but how is it? (WB page 83)
 a. much b. noisy c. deep d. old
9. The hotel looks very nice, but how is it? (WB page 83)
 a. long b. much c. many d. cheap
10. is the time when the sun disappears from the sky at the end of the day. (WB page 122)
 a. Sunset b. Sunrise c. Sunlight d. Sunshine

Unit 9

diving	رياضة الغطس	dentist	طبيب أسنان
kayaking	رياضة الكاياك	protect	يحمي
mountain biking	ركوب الدراجات على الجبال	railway line	خط سكة حديد
windsurfing	ركوب الأمواج	rock climbing	تسلق الصخور
Mount Catherine	جبل سانت كاترين	sailing	البحار
tent	خيمة	trekking	المشي لمسافات طويلة في الجبال
journey	رحلة طويلة	zip lining	التزلج بالحبل
negotiate	يتفاوض	Bedouin	بدو
rainy	ممطر	activity	نشاط
fog	ضباب	argument	جدال
adventure	مغامرة	carefully	بحرص
cloudy	ملي بالغيوم	keep warm	يحتفظ بالدفء
stormy	عاصف	challenge	تحدي
weather	طقس	complete	يكتمل

© Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- We can't go today because there's no wind. (WB page 84)
a. climbing b. windsurfing c. biking d. shopping
- All you need to go is a boat. (WB page 84)
a. sailing b. diving c. climbing d. trekking
- I love because I'm good at swimming under the water. (WB page 84)
a. windsurfing b. diving c. sailing d. climbing
- When you go, you start really high, but you finish on the ground. (WB page 84)
a. swimming b. riding c. sailing d. zip lining
- We sometimes go for two days or more across the desert.
a. diving b. trekking
c. sailing d. windsurfing (WB page 84)

- We want to have a to show us the market, because they know the best places to shop. (WB page 81)
a. sailor b. teacher c. tourist d. guide
- I love waking up in a and hearing the birds sing when I camp. (WB page 85)
a. tent b. hotel c. house d. museum
- They took two days to cross the desert. It was a difficult. (WB page 8)
a. voyage b. journey c. flight d. prize
- I'm going to go trekking across Sinai. it's going to be a big. (WB page 24)
a. term b. party c. adventure d. novel
- On his way down, Tamer over and hurt himself. (SB page 24)
a. took b. fell c. made d. gave

Unit 10

cotton	قطن	wool	صوف
glass	زجاج	pencil case	محفظة
leather	جلد	skirt	حسنة
metal	معادن	socks	جوارب
plastic	بلاستيك	statue	نصال
stone	حجر	tablet	جهاز لوحي (تابلت)
wallet	محفظة	teaspoon	ملعقة صغيرة
roof	سطح	bricks	طوب
taps	حنفيات	oven	فرن
kitchen	مطبخ	bedroom	حجرة نوم
solar panels	ألواح شمسية	electric car	سيارة كهربائية
wind turbines	طواحين الهواء	driverless cars	سيارات بدون سائق
robot	إنسان آلي	culture	ثقافة
earthquake	زلازل	rectangular	على شكل مستطيل
disadvantages	عيوب	warm	دافئ
imagination	خيال	divide	يقسم

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A car door is made of
a glass b leather c wood d metal (WB page 91)
2. Car windows are made of
a glass b cotton c wool d leather (WB page 91)
3. Expensive car seats are made of
a wood b wool c leather d cotton (WB page 91)
4. It was hot outside, but it was nice and
a hot b cold c rainy d cool (WB page 91)
5. My mother wants to buy a new sofa, but I don't think we have
a money b space c free d cotton (WB page 91)
6. My aunt made us some bread and we ate it, it was still
a wet b warm c cool d cold (WB page 91)
7. _____ will do some of the jobs that people do today.
a Animals b Birds c Robots d Rabbits (WB page 121)
8. _____ is the material from the skins of animals, used to make shoes and
bags
a Leather b Wood c Metal d Wool (WB page 121)
9. In the future, the gardens will be on the
a room b tower c roof d floor (WB page 117)
10. Most windows are made of
a wool b glass c cotton d paper (WB page 117)

Unit 11

coral reefs	سكان المحيط	ocean	محيط
octopus	انخطوط	sting	يلدغ
jellyfish	مذيل البحر	tail	ذيل
stingray	سمكة الزنبرك	planet	كوكب
sea turtle	سلحفاة بحرية	environment	بيئة
whale	حوت	recycle	إعادة تدوير

dirty	nature reserve	محمية طبيعية
view	frighten	يخيف / يزعج
plastic pot	rules	قواعد
phone call	soil	تربة
radio station	local	محلي
gloves	clear	واضح / صاف

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Don't throw away those glass bottles. We can _____ them.
a recycle b cook c cycle d bake (WB page 104)
2. Trees are very good for our _____ because they give us clean air.
a excitement b improvement c environment d equipment (WB page 104)
3. We don't need that dirty piece of paper. You can put it with the
a notebooks b books c library d rubbish (WB page 104)
4. A lot of _____ catch fish from the Red Sea.
a fishermen b doctors c policemen d soldiers (WB page 104)
5. My grandmother is 65 and knows a lot! We all _____ what she says.
a cover b respect c collect d recycle (WB page 104)
6. Judy felt very _____ after she was ill, but she is better now.
a pleased b weak c strong d happy (WB page 104)
7. In the museum, we saw a _____ of a very old animal. Its bones were very big.
a map b plant c skeleton d line (WB page 104)
8. The shark is one of the most dangerous animals in the
a pond b ocean c lake d river (WB page 104)
9. A _____ is poisonous. It stings you when you touch it
a jellyfish b shark c turtle d whale (WB page 104)
10. When a _____ is in danger, it goes into its shell.
a seed b coral reef c shark d turtle (WB page 104)

Unit 12

computer program	برنامج حاسوبي
writer	كاتب
engineer	مهندس
machines	آلات
inventions	اختراعات
students	طلاب
design	تصميم
laboratory	معمل
traditional	تقليدي
jewellery	مجوهرات
colourful	ملون
basket	سلة
Ghana	دولة غانا
illness	مرض
cure	علاج
exciting	مثير

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- I love learning about sea life. I want to be a/an (WB page 108)
 - artist
 - marine biologist
 - engineer
 - teacher
- A/An _____ is bigger than a sea (WB page 108)
 - ocean
 - pond
 - river
 - lake
- The scientist did a lot of tests in the (WB page 108)
 - playground
 - stadium
 - laboratory
 - library
- The shop had a lot of cups, plates and other (WB page 110)
 - pottery
 - leather
 - wood
 - straw

- My cousin is a/an _____ now. She was 18 last week! (WB page 110)
 - baby
 - child
 - adult
 - kid
- Doctors can usually _____ a lot of money. (WB page 110)
 - score
 - win
 - pay
 - earn
- Tourists learn a lot about Ancient Egyptian _____ when they visit Egypt. (WB page 110)
 - furniture
 - culture
 - future
 - picture
- My father bought this _____ for my mother when they got married. (WB page 110)
 - sandwich
 - meal
 - food
 - jewellery
- A/An _____ is something on your phone that helps you use maps, book tickets, ... etc. (WB page 111)
 - app
 - map
 - tap
 - tape
- To _____ is when you draw something that you plan to build or make. (WB page 111)
 - cycle
 - recycle
 - design
 - build

II Language Review

القواعد اللغوية

(راجع وتدرب في نفس الوقت) عرض لجميع القواعد الموجودة في المنهج بطريقة سهلة وتدريب اختيار من متعدد (Choose) وكذلك تصحيح الخطأ (Read and correct)

Unit 7

I Past simple

الماضي البسيط

A. Affirmative statements :

الجملة الإيجابية البسيطة

Subject (الفاعل) + the verb (التصريف الثاني للفاعل)

ex.: - He bought a new car last week.

B. Negative statements :

الجملة السلبية البسيطة

Subject (الفاعل) + didn't + Inf. (المصدر)

ex.: - He didn't buy a new car last week.

C Past time expressions

We use past time expressions to say when something happened.

نستخدم التعبيرات الزمنية السابقة للقول متى حدث شيء ما

- ex: - I went to the zoo last week Sunday month year
- I was bowling an hour four days five months ago.
- Ali saw his brother Abdullah yesterday.
- In 2013, Salma was born.

2 Asking questions (Yes / No questions / Wh questions)

توجيه الأسئلة (الأسئلة بـهل / الأسئلة بأدوات الاستفهام)

1- Yes, No question

(السؤال - هل)

- Did you go to the park? Yes, I did. / No, I didn't
- Have you got a camera? Yes, I have. / No, I haven't.
- Can she speak English? Yes, she can. / No, she can't.

2- Wh-question

الأسئلة بأداة استفهام مثل:

- What are you doing now? - I am reading a story.
ex: - When do you go to school? - At seven o'clock.
- Where did Salma go yesterday? - To the market.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- It was my birthday Saturday. (SB page 3)
a. next b. ago c. last d. in
- I a haircut two weeks ago. (SB page 3)
a. have b. had c. has d. have had
- I bowling last weekend. (SB page 2)
a. go b. goes c. have gone d. went
- He the bus to the city last Sunday. (WB page 71)
a. takes b. take c. took d. has taken
- They the sports centre two weeks ago. (WB page 71)
a. visited b. visits c. had visited d. visit

- you go to the park? - Yes, I did. (SB page 71)
a. Have b. Did c. Do d. Were
- did you go to the museum? - Four days ago. (WB page 71)
a. How b. What c. When d. Why
- do you go to school? - At 7:00 a.m. (WB page 72)
a. Where b. How c. What time d. Why
- go shopping last weekend? (WB page 72)
a. Are you b. Do you c. Have you d. Did you

4 Read and correct the underlined words:

- I ride the big wheel last weekend. (SB page 2) { ... }
- I went to the museum a week past. (SB page 3) { ... }
- Yesterday, it were my friend Dalia's birthday. (WB page 71) { ... }
- Do you go to the park yesterday? (SB page 71) { ... }

Unit 8

(Comparative and superlative adjectives)

صفات المقارنة والتفصيل

- I live in a big city.

قبل الاسم الموصوف

- الصفة تصف الاسم وتأتي

- My city is big.

بعد to be

Comparing adjectives

1 للمقارنة بين اثنين أو شيئين باستخدام الصفة القصيرة نستخدم:

adj + er + than + الصفة القصيرة

- Cairo is noisier than the countryside.

2 للمقارنة بين اثنين أو شيئين باستخدام الصفة الطويلة نستخدم:

more / less + adj + than + الصفة الطويلة

- The countryside is more relaxing than the city.

عند المقارنة بين فرد / شيء ومجموعة باستخدام الصفة القصيرة يستخدم
the + adj القصيرة + est

- Cairo is the biggest city in Africa

عند المقارنة بين فرد / شيء ومجموعة باستخدام الصفة الطويلة يستخدم
the most / the least + adj الطويلة

- The lion is the most dangerous animal.

6. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. ☒ My friend lives _____ to the school than me. (page 15)
a. nearest b. near c. nearer d. as near

2. ☒ Cheese is _____ for you than sweets. (page 78)
a. good b. as good c. better d. best

3. ☒ I think the blue dress is _____ than the red dress. (page 78)
a. nice b. nicer c. nicest d. the nicest

4. ☒ The museum is usually _____ crowded on Saturday than on Sunday. (page 78)
a. more b. many c. the most d. most

5. ☒ My cousins felt _____ after they moved to a new flat. (page 78)
a. happier b. happiest c. more happier d. most happiest

6. ☒ Mountain climbing is _____ dangerous sport of all. (page 17)
a. the b. the most c. more d. less

7. ☒ My sister is the _____ in our family. (page 17)
a. tallest b. tall c. taller d. as tall

8. ☒ Some people think that maths is the _____ difficult subject. (page 17)
a. more b. less c. as d. most

9. ☒ Vegetables are the _____ food. (page 79)
a. healthy b. healthier c. healthiest d. less healthy

Read and correct the underlined words:

1. ☒ An elephant is big than a camel. (page 78) ()

2. ☒ Adel is tall than Rami. (page 78) ()

3. ☒ Cairo is crowded than Aswan. (page 15) ()

4. ☒ The local markets are the noisy places. (page 79) ()

5. ☒ I think going to the museum is the good place for a holiday. (page 79) ()

Unit 9

1 "be going to + inf." for future plans.

1. استخدام (be going to + inf.) للخطط المستقبلية.

We use (be going to) when we already know our plans for the future.

نستخدم (be going to) عندما نكون على دراية بخططنا للمستقبل.

ex.: - I'm going to visit Sinai.

- What are you going to do?

- Are you going to try rock climbing?

- Yes, I am. - No, I am not.

2 Reflexive Pronouns:

2. الضمائر المنعكسة:

- تستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة:

(1) للتأكيد.

(2) عندما يكون المفعول هو نفسه فاعل الجملة.

I	→	myself	You	→	yourself
He	→	himself	We	→	ourselves
She	→	herself	They	→	themselves
It	→	itself			

ex.: - Soha painted the picture herself.

- Nobody helped me. I did it myself.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I am going to go hiking. (page 23)
a. am b. do c. are d. is
2. I am going to visit Sinai. (page 24)
a. visits b. visit c. visited d. visiting
3. Is she going to go trekking this afternoon? (page 23)
a. go b. going c. goes d. going to
4. Who is going to cook your meal last week? (page 84)
a. last week b. yesterday c. this evening d. a week ago
5. No, I am not going to walk. (page 84)
a. am b. isn't c. am not d. aren't
6. We enjoyed ourselves when we went sailing. (page 27)
a. myself b. herself c. yourselves d. ourselves
7. Would you like to make yourself a cup of tea? (page 27)
a. yourself b. itself c. ourselves d. themselves
8. He put on a hat to protect himself. (page 27)
a. himself b. herself c. themselves d. itself
9. The birds sleep in caves to protect themselves. (page 86)
a. themselves b. ourselves c. yourselves d. itself
10. My sister and I like taking photos of ourselves. (page 86)
a. myself b. ourselves c. themselves d. herself

Read and correct the underlined words:

1. What are you going to wears tomorrow? (page 84) ()
2. Are you going to do your homework last evening? (page 84) ()
3. Ahmed are going to go trekking next year. (page 24) ()
4. Sara has a jacket to keep myself warm. (page 86) ()
5. They made the cake myself. (page 86) ()



Unit 10

1 (be made of) to describe the material of an object

أ. نستخدم (be made of) لوصف المادة التي تصنع منها الأشياء.

ex.: The chair is made of wood.
The cushions are made of cotton.
What is the bag made of?

2 Using "will" and "won't" for future predictions

ب. نستخدم (will) و (won't) للتنبؤات المستقبلية.

Usage: الاستخدام

- نستخدم "will" عند التنبؤ بما سيحدث في المستقبل بدون دليل.
- I will be late for school.
- نستخدم "won't" عند التنبؤ بما لن يحدث في المستقبل بدون دليل.
- I think we won't live on the moon.

Formation: التكوين

Subject + will / won't + Inf. مصدر الفعل
المفعول

- I think we will live in space stations in the future.
- Electric cars won't use petrol in the future.

Interrogative: صيغة الاستفهام

a. Yes / No question

Will + subject + Inf. مصدر الفعل
المفعول ؟

ex.: Will we have small electric cars in the future?

Yes, we will.

No, we won't.

b. Wh / question

Question word + will + subject + Inf. مصدر الفعل
المفعول ؟

ex.: Where will you go at the weekend?
To the funfair.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The cushions are made of cotton. (page 84)
a. make b. made c. making d. makes

Interrogative: هل / ألم؟

A. Yes - No question

ex: ... a ten-minute break?

Yes, you should

- No, you shouldn't

B. Wh-question

Question word + should / shouldn't + subject + Inf = ?

ex: What ... to learn new vocabulary?

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If you touch a jellyfish, it ... you. (Page 45)
a. sting b. stings c. stung d. stinging
2. The octopus swims away fast ... it's in danger. (Page 45)
a. what b. where c. how d. when
3. When I ... ill, I go to bed. (Page 100)
a. feel b. feeling c. feels d. felt
4. If my sister ... a lot of TV, she feels tired. (Page 100)
a. watch b. watches c. watching d. watched
5. If I don't water the plants in our garden, they ... (Page 100)
a. died b. dying c. die d. dies
6. We ... play games on roads. (Page 47)
a. must b. should c. mustn't d. have to
7. You ... share your ideas with others. (Page 49)
a. can't b. should c. shouldn't d. mustn't
8. We ... be angry with people you don't agree with. (Page 49)
a. mustn't b. must c. should d. can
9. When you cross a road, you ... find a safe place to cross. (Page 101)
a. shouldn't b. must c. mustn't d. can't
10. You mustn't run across the road. You ... walk. (Page 101)
a. mustn't b. shouldn't c. can't d. must

Read and correct the underlined words:

1. When it be very cold, water turns to ice. (Page 101) ()
2. When my grandfather is tired, he went to bed. (Page 100) ()
3. We mustn't save our planet! (Page 46) ()
4. The animals must eat plastic. It is very bad for them. (Page 46) ()
5. We should use plastic bags just once. (Page 47) ()

Unit 12

1 Relative pronoun (Who)

تعبير الوصل (who)

يمكنك الربط بين جملتين من فاعليهما خافض باستخدام صيرير الوصل

ex.: - The teacher is a person. He teaches students.

The teacher is a person who teaches students.

ex.: - A businessman is someone who works in an office.

2 Question Tag :

السؤال التكميلي

Formation : التكوين

[صيرير فاعل + فعل مساعد مثبت / صيرير فاعل + فعل مساعد منفي] ؟

الزوال التعديل يكون يسمى أليس كذلك. لاحظ أن يكتب بصيغة مختصرة وليست كاملة.

does not he ? → , doesn't he ?

- أصبحت الزوال التعديل للخطأ أو التأكيد من شئ نعرفه
- She is clever, isn't she ? - They aren't lazy, are they ?
- Yes, she is. - No, they aren't.
- Mona speaks English, doesn't she ? - Hala wrote the lesson, didn't she ?
- He has a black car, doesn't he ? - He has written the lesson, hasn't he ?
- She never plays tennis, does she ?

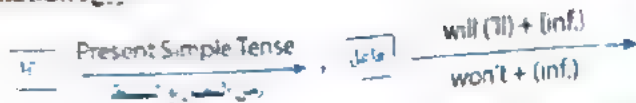
لاحظ إذا كانت (has / have) أعمال أساسية يكون لـ الزوال التعديل لها باستخدام "does / do".

لاحظ الجملة العنيفة يجاب عنها بـ "Yes" والجملة السلبية يجاب عنها بـ "No".

الحالة الشرطية الأولى

3 The first conditional

Formation : التكوين



• نستخدم هذه الحالة عند التحدث عن شيء في المستقبل
• لاحظ إذا وضعت (I) في بداية الجملة نضع (+) بعد علامة الجملة التي إذا جاءت في العنصر
لا نضع (-)

- If Adel studies hard, he will pass the test.
- If it is windy tomorrow, they won't go to the beach.
- You won't pass the exam if you don't study hard.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A pilot is a person flies a plane. (Page 55)
a. who b. where c. when d. which
2. A photographer is a person takes photos. (Page 55)
a. which b. whose c. when d. who
3. A teacher is a person teaches students. (Page 55)
a. which b. whose c. who d. when
4. Hany is the boy lives next door to me. (Page 107)
a. which b. where c. who d. when
5. My best friend is a person is very good at sport. (Page 107)
a. where b. which c. when d. who
6. She wants to be a marine biologist, she ? (Page 108)
a. does b. isn't c. don't d. doesn't
7. Your name is Nawal, it ? (Page 108)
a. aren't b. isn't c. can't d. is
8. There weren't many people at the match, there ? (Page 108)
a. weren't b. aren't c. were d. is

9. You don't like fish, you ? (Page 57)
a. don't b. does c. have d. do
10. You won't forget to phone me, you ? (Page 57)
a. will b. are c. can d. do

Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Mohamed Salah is a footballer when scores a lot of goals. (Page 57)
2. Mr Gamal is the teacher where teaches us maths. (Page 107)
3. It is cold in England, is it ? (Page 108)
4. Your grandfather lived in a big city, doesn't he ? (Page 108)
5. She never speaks French, doesn't she ? (Page 108)

General Exercises on Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. All had lunch with his sister Sara
a. tomorrow b. next week c. yesterday d. now
2. Did you watch the match yesterday ? - Yes, I
a. was b. did c. do d. have
3. Akram is going Calro tomorrow.
a. visit b. visited c. to visit d. visiting
4. The queen welcomed us.
a. himself b. themselves c. itself d. herself
5. If you your lessons well, you will get high marks.
a. studied b. studies c. study d. studying
6. Mrs Hala thanked all the teachers, she ?
a. did b. doesn't c. didn't d. isn't
7. Alexandria is the beaut ful city in Egypt.
a. more b. more than c. most d. less

8. If you boil water, it turns into steam.
a. turns b. turns c. turning d. will turn
9. Hassan got the gold medal where.
a. where b. where c. Where d. Who
10. Sir James is going to cut himself.
a. himself b. himself c. themselves d. itself
11. Tomorrow they're going to send the e-mails to us.
a. going b. went c. go d. gone
12. How was your weekend? - It was great.
a. are b. was c. were d. is
13. We shouldn't help old people.
a. shouldn't b. should c. mustn't d. don't have to
14. Chairs are made of wood.
a. am b. is c. are d. was
15. There will be electric cars in the future.
a. will b. have c. has d. had
16. A doctor is a person who looks after sick people.
a. who b. when c. where d. whose
17. Ali has a car, doesn't he?
a. does b. doesn't c. hasn't d. has
18. What's your shirt made of?
a. on b. of c. up d. into
19. Tamer has got less orange juice in class.
a. less b. least c. the least d. little
20. English is more difficult than Arabic.
a. difficult b. most difficult c. the most difficult d. more difficult
21. Ibrahim is taller than Reta.
a. tall b. taller c. tallest d. the tallest
22. You mustn't make noise in hospitals.
a. mustn't b. must c. have to d. should
23. I have something to drink when I'm thirsty.
a. have b. has c. hasn't d. had

2 Read and correct the underlined words :

- Mr Khalid is a person where teaches us social studies. ()
- Judy will visit the Pyramids tomorrow, will she? ()
- I think she won't had a mobile. ()
- The blue car is the more modern of all. ()
- Mona is more beautiful then Salma. ()
- Pupils must studies their lessons. ()
- Lama is going to visiting the park. ()
- When are you go to visit the zoo? ()
- Salma and Sama are twins, don't they? ()
- I think it will rains tomorrow. ()
- What will happens if you run fast? ()
- Mr Khalid visited his daughter 3 days tomorrow. ()
- Where does the match start? - At five o'clock. ()
- The bag was cheapest than the desk. ()
- The traffic is most crowded today than yesterday. ()
- You mustn't be quiet in the library. ()
- Did you go to the zoo? - No, I can't. ()
- She can ride her bike himself. ()
- The dog can see themselves in water. ()
- What should you did if it is cold? ()
- What are the shirts make of? ()
- The ground became wet if it rains. ()
- The door are made of wood. ()
- I have a haircut two weeks ago. ()

Important Paragraphs

Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

يكتب الطالب موضوعاً إنشائياً من ثمانين كلمة ويشرح هذا السؤال من الناحية التي يحتاج إلى مزيد من التدريب ولذلك يقدم لك موضوعات إنشائية هامة لكل وحدة كما يمكنك إيجاد موضوعات أخرى لإكمالها النموذجية في نهاية كتاب الشرح

Unit 7

1

"A new house"

Last month our family moved to a new house in Cairo. The house is big and has a nice garden. I liked it very much. My family planted some trees and flowers in the garden. I went to buy a new school uniform for my new school. People there were nice and kind. I made many new friends in the school. My best friend is called Ahmed. He was friendly. We had lunch together in the school canteen. I was very happy.

2

"Your last weekend"

My last weekend was fantastic. I went to Ahmed's house on Sunday and we played football in the park. It was a lot of fun. We had lunch together. It was delicious. In the afternoon, we went to the sports centre. We played tennis. There was a really big swimming pool. We swam in it. We had a nice time at the sports centre. In the evening, we went shopping. I bought a T-shirt and shoes for my young sister.

3

"Music"

Music is very nice. I like music very much. There are many kinds of music like jazz, pop, rock and traditional. I like jazz music. I play the trumpet in a jazz band. When I was seven, I learned to play the piano. I like it too much. When I was ten, I learned the trumpet. I like the sound of the trumpet. I don't like pop or rock music. They are very loud. I want to be a musician one day. My favourite musician is Marvin Allstar.

4

"Your day"

Yesterday was a terrible day for me. My baby sister woke me up at 5 a.m. I felt so tired. I went to the kitchen, but there was no milk or bread. I went to buy food, but the shops were all closed. I didn't do my homework because my laptop stopped working. I planned to have a barbecue but there was a lot of wind. In the evening, I went to the stadium to watch a football match. My team lost the match. I was very sad.

Unit 8

5

"The Tahya Masr Bridge"

Tahya Masr Bridge is the world's widest suspension bridge. It opened in Cairo in May 2019. More than 4,000 people helped to build it. They started building it in 2016 and they finished it in 32 months later. The bridge crosses the Nile's Warraq Island. Many people enjoy walking across the bridge. It has a glass floor, so you can see the river under your feet. The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset.

6

"The Egyptian Museum"

The Egyptian Museum is the oldest museum in Cairo. It opened in 1835. There were more than 16,000 of Egypt's most valuable treasures on display. However, the museum didn't have space for 100,000 other objects. So we needed a new bigger museum. In 2019, the Grand Egyptian Museum welcomed its first visitors. It is further from the city centre than the old museum. But it is two km from the Pyramids at Giza. One of the most beautiful parts of the museum is the entrance.

7

"A wonderful holiday"

We had a wonderful holiday in Egypt. We visited the Valley of the Kings in Luxor. It is one of the most popular places for tourists. We saw many of them there. The place is quiet in the early morning but it gets busier later

during the day. The biggest place there is the Kamak Temple. There's a nice and quiet place called Habu Temple. It has columns similar to those at Karnak, but it is less crowded. I liked it most.

Unit 9

"A future plan for holiday"

Next year, I am going to go trekking across Sinai. It's going to be a great adventure. I'm going to go with my friends. We are going to sleep in a tent and stay with Bedouin families. We are going to have a guide to help us find the way and a camel to carry food and water. We are going to climb Mount Catherine. The journey is going to take me around forty five days.

9

"An adventure sport"

Last year, I went to South Africa with my family. It was beautiful there. Our first day was an adventure. We went trekking in the mountains. When we started, it was sunny. But when we reached the top of the mountain, there were dark clouds. After that, the rain began and there was a storm. The rocks were wet and my brother fell down and hurt himself. The following days, the weather was better. I went zip lining. I was a bit frightened, but I was excited.

Unit 10

10

"Deir el-Medina"

Deir el-Medina was a village in ancient Egypt. The people in this village worked in the Valley of the Kings. The doors of their houses were made of wood and the walls were made of bricks. The people painted their houses white and the doors red. The houses had a kitchen and a living room. People slept on the roof because there weren't any bedrooms. It was very hot at night. They got their water from the Nile valley because there weren't any taps.

"Technology in the future"

In the future, we will go to the moon for our holiday instead of the beach. There will be rockets that leave Earth every day. The rockets will be very fast, so the journey will take only around twelve hours. There will be also driverless cars. People will not drive a car. It will be safer. People will read a book or watch TV when the computer in the car drives it. There will be drones to bring food and parcels to the houses.

Unit 11

"Sea animals"

There are a lot of animals that live in the sea. Some sea animals are dangerous like sharks. The shark is one of the most dangerous sea animals in the ocean. A shark uses more than 20,000 teeth in its life. A stingray is a big, flat fish. When it knows a shark is coming, it jumps out of the water. A sea turtle has a hard shell to protect it. Some sea animals are poisonous and sting you when you touch them like the jellyfish.

13

"Plastic"

Plastic is important! We use it for many things. We must put the plastic in the trash bin. We mustn't throw plastic on the beaches. Plastic is poisonous when animals eat it. More than 100,000 sea animals and birds die from plastic. Plastic stays in the environment for a very long time. We must use other materials like paper and glass. Paper and glass are easier to recycle. We must do our best to save our planet.

14

"Planting a tree"

We plant trees to keep our environment clean. Trees make the air healthy. There are many steps to plant a tree. First, wash the plastic pot and dry it. Second, put some small stones at the bottom of the pot. Press your finger to make a hole and put the seed in the hole and cover it with

soul. Finally, put the pot outside in a warm place. Water it every day but don't give it too much water.

"Nature reserve"

15

We have nature reserves to protect our birds, plants and animals. Many animals live here so we must be careful about what we do. We mustn't make a lot of noise. Noise makes animals feel frightened. We mustn't leave the road through the reserve because there are animals and birds that live in the plants next to the road. We mustn't give any food to the animals or birds. We must take all our rubbish with us when we leave.

Unit 12

"My dream job"

16

My uncle has got a very interesting job. He is an engineer. An engineer is a person who designs machines and engines. My uncle designs engines for planes. I like his job so much. I'd like to be an engineer one day. I hope that I pass my exams so that I can go to university. I'm going to work hard to achieve my dream. I want to get a good job and do many projects.

"A marine biologist's job"

17

A marine biologist is a person who studies the ocean, the plants and animals in it. He is good at science and he loves the ocean. The ocean has many animals that are really beautiful and interesting. So the marine biologist does many researches to help protect the plants and animals in the ocean. In his job, every day is different! Some days, he goes diving around coral reefs. On other days, he tests water from the ocean in the laboratory.

AltFwok.com

Unit 7

Exercises Based on Vocabulary

Student's Book & Workbook

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I saw a / an about dolphins in the aquarium. (SB page 4)
a. funfair b. exhibition c. sports centre d. match
- It three hours to move from our house in Cairo to Alexandria. (SB page 4)
a. made b. took c. gave d. lost
- We had lunch together in the school (SB page 4)
a. laboratory b. library c. canteen d. uniform
- What of music do you like? - Jazz. (SB page 9)
a. colour b. type c. subject d. age
- One day a ship because there was a really terrible storm. (SB page 9)
a. thanked b. sank c. thought d. passed
- We learnt a lot about the Earth and the moon at the
a. funfair b. aquarium c. bowling alley d. planetarium (WB page 7)
- The balls are very heavy at the alley. (WB page 7)
a. aquarium b. planetarium c. bowling d. stadium
- What activities should they for Ismail's birthday? (WB page 7)
a. make b. do c. take d. give
- I like, but it is difficult to open them! (WB page 7)
a. bananas b. apples c. coconuts d. oranges
- A / An is the person who travels on ships or boats for a job. (WB page 7)
a. vet b. sailor c. nurse d. engineer

Exercises Based on Structures

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Hassan moved to Cairo in 2009. That was thirteen years ago.
a. tomorrow b. next week c. ago d. since (WB page 70)
- Did you go to the park? Yes, I did.
a. do b. did c. am d. does (WB page 71)
- I watched a film last night. It was interesting.
a. next week b. tomorrow c. now d. last night (WB page 72)
- What type of music does he like? He likes pop music.
a. When b. What c. Whose d. Where (WB page 73)
- Did you get a new school bag? No, I haven't.
a. Did b. Do c. Have d. Has (WB page 74)

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- Who did Adam did these things with? (SB page 51)
- What year is it four years ago? (WB page 70)
- It is terrible because my team lost 5 - 2. (SB page 9)
- You went to the beach next week. (WB page 74)

Unit 8

Exercise Based on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- How deep is Abraj Al-Bait Clock Tower in Saudi Arabia? - It's 601 m.
a. deep b. long c. high d. many (SB page 13)
- My friend lives further to school than me. He goes to school on foot.
a. heavier b. further c. nearer d. longer (SB page 15)

- The best time to cross the Tahya Masr Bridge is at sunset, for a beautiful view of the city.
a. space b. point c. sign d. view (SB page 16)
- It's important to be polite when you give your opinion.
a. make b. take c. give d. ask (SB page 18)
- There were more than 160,000 of Egypt's most valuable treasures on display.
a. pleasures b. treasures c. measures d. pressures (SB page 19)
- The 6th October Bridge links the two Nile banks.
a. cuts b. takes c. links d. opens (WB page 77)
- I think climbing is the most dangerous sport.
a. tree b. mountain c. wall d. cave (WB page 79)
- I spent two hours in Al-Azhar Park.
a. spent b. saved c. gave d. did (WB page 82)
- What's your opinion of making a sport every week?
a. making b. doing c. eating d. giving (WB page 80)

Exercises Based on Structures

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Cairo is more crowded than Aswan.
a. crowded b. most crowded c. more crowded d. the most crowded (SB page 15)
- Mountain climbing is the most dangerous sport of all.
a. dangerous b. more dangerous c. most dangerous d. the most dangerous (SB page 17)
- A lion is stronger than a horse.
a. stronger b. strongest c. strong d. the strongest (WB page 82)
- The Nile is the longest river in the world.
a. long b. the longest c. longer d. longest (SB page 21)

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- What is the better book you can think of? (SB page 181)

2. Adel is tall, but Ramy is taller. (SB page 17)
3. Ice skating is safest than skiing. (WB page 17)
4. The bigger place we went to was the Karnak Temple. (WB page 17)

Unit 9

Exercise Based on Vocabulary

Student's Book & Workbook

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- On his way down, Tamer fell over and hurt himself. (SB page 26)
a. took b. fell c. made d. gave
- It's difficult to respect older people. (WB page 115)
a. difficult b. important
c. ugly d. unimportant
- Imad made diving last year. (SB page 23)
a. made b. went c. gave d. took
- " Diving " is a sport or a hobby where one or two people travel in a narrow boat. (WB page 120)
a. Diving b. Kayaking c. Trekking d. Swimming
- You start really high, but you finish on the ground very fast in zip lining. (WB page 144)
a. swimming b. driving c. trekking d. zip lining

Exercise Based on Structures

Student's Book & Workbook

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Is Reem going to trekking this afternoon? (SB page 23)
a. going b. goes c. went d. go
- The birds sleep in caves to protect themselves from eagles. (WB page 147)
a. myself b. ourselves c. themselves d. yourselves
- We enjoyed ourselves when we went sailing. (SB page 27)
a. himself b. themselves c. ourselves d. myself

Unit 10

CamScanner

- I'd prefer playing tennis. (WB page 18)
a. playing b. play c. plays d. to play
- I'd rather play chess.
a. playing b. play c. plays d. to play

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- Whose about going to the park? (SB page 29) ()
- What is you going to wear tomorrow? (WB page 14) ()
- Mona drew himself a picture. (SB page 31) ()
- We're really enjoying herself on our holiday. (WB page 25) ()

Unit 10

Exercise Based on Vocabulary

Student's Book & Workbook

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The curtain is made of glass and plastic. (SB page 17)
a. curtain b. cup c. television d. sofa
- The televisions are made of cotton. (SB page 13)
a. televisions b. tables c. cushions d. lamps
- Teachers design new buildings. (SB page 38)
a. Teachers b. Doctors c. Carpenters d. Architects
- What will your future house look like? (SB page 42)
a. put b. take c. look d. make
- The shoe is made of metal. (WB page 14)
a. shoe b. dress c. jumper d. knife
- " Ovens " are used to cook food or bread. (WB page 14)
a. Fridges b. Ovens c. Taps d. TVs
- Some houses fell to the ground after the earthquake. (WB page 14)
a. achievement b. earthquake c. space d. description

Exercise Based on Structures

Student's Book & Workbook

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 What are the things in the photos made of? (SB page 34)
a am b is c are d was
- 2 I think we will live under the sea. (SB page 95)
a live b living c lives d live
- 3 Will she have a garden on the roof? (SB page 38)
a has b had c having d have
- 4 Will there be ordinary mobiles in the future? (SB page 39)
a is b are c be d were
- 5 In 2080, you will have go to the beach for your holiday. (SB page 39)
a won't b won't be c won't have d will have

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1 The wall are made of stone. (SB page 35) ()
- 2 What will holidays been like in the future? (WB page 98) ()
- 3 The journey will took only 12 hours. (SB page 39) ()
- 4 My bed is made up wood. (WB page 91) ()

Unit 11

Exercise Based on Vocabulary

Student's Book & Workbook

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The shark is one of the most dangerous sea animals in the ocean. (SB page 43)
a dolphin b turtle c shark d lizard
2. The octopus has got eight legs to help it swim fast. (SB page 45)
a turtle b octopus c jellyfish d whale
3. When a turtle is in danger, it goes into its shell. (SB page 43)
a climbs b goes c takes d makes
4. The jellyfish has a hard shell to protect it. (WB page 100)
a snake b jellyfish c fly d turtle

5 Earth is one of eight

a plants

b planes

that go around the sun

c planets

d plans

Exercises Based on Structures

Student's Book & Workbook

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We get water if it rains. (SB page 4)
a get b got c getting d gets
2. When it is very cold, water turns into ice. (WB page 11)
a turning b turns c turned d turn
3. We must save our planet. (SB page 44)
a saved b save c saves d saving
4. You should share your ideas with others. (WB page 112)
a should b shouldn't c mustn't d don't have to
5. What should I do first? (SB page 94)
a did b done c do d doing

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. When I'm hungry, I had something to eat. (SB page 45) ()
2. Leila feels ill if she travel on a boat. (WB page 106) ()
3. Why must we cleaned the beaches? (SB page 52) ()
4. You mustn't listen to other students' ideas. (WB page 170) ()

Unit 12

Exercise Based on Vocabulary

Student's Book & Workbook

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. An engineer is a person who designs machines and engines. (SB page 46)
a plays b acts c designs d cooks
2. It's not nice to go out in a boat for a ride when there's a storm. (WB page 113)
a diver b driver c ride d dive

- 1 You should hard to pass your exams (SB page 55)
 a do b make c work d give
- 4 It's important to your time well (SB page 11)
 a play b plan c plan d plant
- 5 The job is to look after people's teeth (SB page 107)
 a vet b scientist c engineer d dentist
- 6 Manam got the of her test. She did very well! (SB page 108)
 a desert b dessert c result d visit

Exercises Based on Structures Student's Book & Workbook

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A businessman is a man works in an office and goes to meetings (SB page 55)
 a whose b who c which d when
2. Sara wants to be a marine biologist, she? (WB page 108)
 a isn't b doesn't c does d didn't
3. If I don't work hard, I pass my exams (SB page 59)
 a won't b will c would d could
4. Where will you live if you get a good job? (WB page 109)
 a get b got c gets d getting
5. You like your job, you? (SB page 57)
 a doesn't b do c don't d didn't

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. A nurse is a person when looks after sick people. ()
 (SB page 55)
2. Your grandfather doesn't live in a big city, did he? ()
 (WB page 110)
3. It isn't hot today, doesn't it? ()
 (SB page 52)
4. Where would you go if you take a holiday? (WB page 111) ()

1. End of Term Practice

1. تدرّب على كتابك المدرسي

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع إلى ملفات واذكر الإجابة الصحيحة (أبجود) التي تسمع في نهاية الكتاب

1. What does the woman want to buy?
 a. A newspaper b. A new bag
 c. A new phone d. Some photographs
2. The thing she decides to buy is
 a. large and expensive b. small and expensive
 c. small and cheap d. large and cheap
3. What does the assistant ask the woman about?
 a. Her name b. Her job c. Her hobbies d. The price
4. The woman is a
 a. photographer b. painter
 c. journalist d. doctor

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Tarek: You're going to go to university in September, aren't you?

Ali: Yes, but (1) I go to university, I want to improve my English.

Tarek: How are you going to do that?

Ali: (2) I'm going to travel to England in the summer holidays. Then, I'm going to a language school.

Tarek: Why don't you go to the USA to learn English? In my (3) American English is easier.

Ali: I'm not (4) It's expensive to go there. I'd rather go to London.

Tarek: You went there before, didn't you? (5) was it there?

Ali: It was great. It was really interesting.

2. Governorates Exams

الامتحانات من المحافظات المختلفة

1. Cairo Governorate

El Basateen Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع إلى معلم واخذ الإجابة الصحيحة (تفوض الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

- Lina talks about her
a. birthday b. holiday c. weekend d. vacation
- Lina's team the match.
a. won b. lost c. got d. arrived
- Lina watched a match.
a. football b. basketball c. volleyball d. tennis
- Lina watched the match
a. on TV b. at school c. at the stadium d. at the park

B. Language Functions

2. Complete the following dialogue:

Tamer asks his friend Tarek about his favourite hobby.

Tamer : What's your favourite hobby?

Tarek : (1) _____

Tamer : When did you start playing music?

Tarek : (2) _____

Tamer : (3) _____ ?

Tarek : I like playing the trumpet.

Tamer : Why do you like it?

Tarek : (4) _____

Tamer : (5) _____ ?

Tarek : My uncle taught me to play the trumpet. He is a famous musician.

C. Reading Comprehension

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

There are many beautiful mosques, but perhaps the most unusual is the Great Mosque in Mali, Africa. It is not made of bricks like most mosques. It is made of something called mud. This is the brown soil you often find at the bottom of a river. It is very soft in water. If you dry it, it becomes very hard. The building is usually very strong, but there is a problem. People must put new mud on the building every year. If they don't, it will **collapse** when it rains! There are always enough people to do this because the people who help get respect for their work.

- a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- When it is dry, mud becomes
a. soft b. hard and strong
c. difficult to use d. very old
- What does the word "collapse" mean?
a. fall down b. get bigger c. disappear d. turn to water
- The underlined pronoun "it" refers to
a. the Great Pyramid b. the Great Mosque
c. Luxor Temple d. The Egyptian Museum

- b. Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of the passage?
- Do you think we should keep ancient buildings? Why? Why not?
- What is unusual about the Great Mosque in Mali?

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Khalid went to the park ten minutes
a. since b. then c. ago d. next
- Most windows are made of
a. wool b. glass c. cotton d. paper
- How your day?
a. were b. was c. be d. being

4. I loved the fish, but I didn't see any whales at the ...
a. planetarium b. park c. aquarium d. garden
5. I made this cake ...
a. ourselves b. myself c. himself d. herself
6. I gave a special ... to my father on his birthday party.
a. present b. prize c. value d. scene
7. We use ... to cook food.
a. ovens b. taps c. sofas d. cushions
8. We decided to play basketball at the sports ...
a. match b. wheel c. funfair d. centre
9. ... cars can go without a driver.
a. Driverless b. Electric c. Old d. Usual
10. A ... is the person who travels on ships or boats for a job.
a. vet b. sailor c. nurse d. engineer

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. A doctor is someone which looks after sick people. ()
2. You must listened to others' ideas. ()
3. There weren't some women in the party. ()
4. Trains are fast than buses. ()

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your future house"

موقع التفوق
ALTFwok

2 Giza Governorate

Zayed Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى مكالمة واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (بموضوع الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. Yesterday was ...
a. an adventure b. foggy c. terrible d. sunny
2. Is there a lot to do ?
a. Yes, there's. b. No, there isn't. c. Not in the text. d. I don't know.
3. They're on holiday in ...
a. Africa b. South Africa c. North Africa d. India
4. The weather is going to be better ...
a. tomorrow b. today c. next week d. before morning

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Mona and Dina are talking about music.

Mona: Do you like classical music, Dina ?

Dina : (1) ...

Mona: (2) ... ?

Dina : I will go to a concert next week.

Mona: (3) ... ?

Dina : Yes, I have the tickets.

Mona: Can I come with you ?

Dina : (4) ...

Mona: Thanks, Dina.

Dina : (5) ...

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

The British Museum in London is the oldest public museum in the world. It opened in 1759 and now has more than 13 million objects.

About six million visitors go there every year. The museum has the largest collection of Egyptian objects outside Egypt. One of its most important objects is the Rosetta Stone. This arrived at the museum in 1802. The writing on the stone is in three different languages. This allowed people to understand ancient Egyptian hieroglyphics for the first time.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. "Hieroglyphics" is a
a. statue b. language c. temple d. museum
2. The underlined word "there" refers to
a. visitors b. Italy c. Egypt d. the British Museum
3. London is a famous
a. museum b. city c. country d. statue

b. Answer the following questions:

4. What is the main idea of this passage?
5. Do you think museums are wonderful? Why?
6. When did the Rosetta Stone arrive at the British Museum?

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. On Sunday, we went to the planetarium but it was
a. closed b. moved c. opened d. arrived
2. Coconuts are large brown
a. nuts b. glasses c. cell's d. pots
3. Children usually enjoy
a. themselves b. herself c. himself d. ourselves

4. We decided to play basketball at the sports
a. wheel b. funfair c. centre d. match
5. We need to buy some more water, this bottle is
a. noisy b. important c. small d. crowded
6. My friend lives to the school than me.
a. near b. nearest c. nearer d. the nearest
7. Who cook your meal this evening?
a. will go b. would go c. is going to d. going to
8. I was born 2010.
a. at b. on c. in d. by
9. Enjoy your time and have
a. fan b. fun c. fine d. final
10. A/An has eight legs and it can swim fast.
a. whale b. jelly fish c. octopus d. shark

5. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. It's Wednesday today, so it was Tuesday this morning. ()
2. An elephant is big than a camel. ()
3. A doctor is someone which looks after sick people. ()
4. When I'm tired, I'm going to bed. ()

E. Writing

6. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"An adventure with your friends"

AltFwd.com موقع التفوق

Alexandria Governorate

Al Gomrok Educational Directorate

A. Listening

- 1** Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

أصغروا إلى التسجيل واختر الإجابة الصحيحة من بين الخيارات المعطاة

1. Amira goes to Dahab
 - a. alone
 - b. with her friends
 - c. with her family
 - d. by bus
2. Amira likes to go
 - a. fishing
 - b. diving
 - c. trekking
 - d. shopping
3. Amira loves the
 - a. ocean
 - b. aquarium
 - c. planetarium
 - d. museum
4. In the evening, Amira likes going to the
 - a. farm
 - b. sports centre
 - c. swimming pool
 - d. funfair

B. Language Functions

- 2** Complete the following dialogue:

Karim and Ali are talking about their plans for the future.

Karim: Hello Ali. How are you?

Ali: (1) _____

Karim: (2) _____?

Ali: I want to be a TV interviewer.

Karim: A TV interviewer! Wow! That's interesting. But why?

Ali: (3) _____ (4) _____?

Karim: I want to be a musician.

Ali: Really! Do you enjoy playing music?

Karim: (5) _____

Ali: Well, good luck.

C. Reading Comprehension

- 3** Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Egypt is a great country for tourists. It has a lot of historic places. When tourists arrive in Cairo, they like to see the Pyramids of Giza and the Sphinx. Besides, they visit the Egyptian Museum. There, they can see many old statues. They can also spend a great time shopping and buying souvenirs at Khan El Khalily. When they go to Luxor and Aswan, they enjoy visiting the Pharaohs' ancient temples. Some tourists like to go to Sharm El Sheikh to enjoy diving and doing water sports. Indeed, Egypt is a very rich country. It has a long history and great people. We should do all we can to make it the best country in the world.

- a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the passage is
 - a. Egypt is a tourist country
 - b. The Pyramids
 - c. The temples of Luxor
 - d. Souvenirs
2. The underlined pronoun "There" refers to
 - a. Cairo
 - b. the Pyramids
 - c. the Sphinx area
 - d. the Egyptian Museum
3. The opposite of the word "arrive" is
 - a. leave
 - b. come
 - c. stay
 - d. spend

- b. Answer the following questions:

4. Why do tourists like to visit Egypt?

5. Sea-loving tourists also enjoy visiting Egypt. How?

6. Why do you think we should all be proud of Egypt?

D. Vocabulary & Structure

- 4** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. On Fridays, I do Karate at a sports
 - a. funfair
 - b. centre
 - c. museum
 - d. theatre
2. They took two weeks to cross the desert. It was a very difficult
 - a. earthquake
 - b. journey
 - c. storm
 - d. exhibition

AlFurqan.com

3. make streets less crowded.
a. Towers b. Forests c. Fountains d. Bridges
4. Whales are animals in the world.
a. bigger b. the biggest c. big d. biggest
5. Rock climbing is a sport full of
a. tents b. guides c. Bedouins d. adventure
6. I received a friend's on my smart phone this morning.
a. letter b. email c. magazine d. equipment
7. In winter, people take hot drinks to keep
a. himself b. herself c. ourselves d. themselves
8. are used for making bread and baking cakes.
a. Bricks b. Ovens c. Wallers d. Walls
9. Yesterday, I needed some tea but there any sugar in the house.
a. weren't b. aren't c. wasn't d. isn't
10. To means to use things again.
a. sing b. throw away c. touch d. recycle

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. What are we go to do next Friday? ()
2. This shirt is make of cotton. It is very expensive. ()
3. Do you close the window, please? ()
4. If the weather becomes so cold, water turned into ice. ()

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Why I like my home"

AltForsk.com موقع التفوق

4 Qalyoubia Governorate

Benha Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلق واندر الإجابة الصحيحة (تطوّل الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. Where was the lighthouse?
a. In Aswan b. In Luxor c. In Siwa d. In Alex
2. What were in the sea at that time?
a. Few boats b. Lots of boats c. Few rocks d. Lots of rocks
3. Why was the lighthouse important at that time? - Because it was
a. warning boats b. sailing boats
c. diving boats d. floating boats
4. How was the sea at that time?
a. Safe b. Dangerous c. Good d. Sunny

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Mazen and Zeyad are talking about their favourite sport.

Mazen : What's your favourite sport?

Zeyad : (1)

Mazen : (2)

Zeyad : My favourite player is Mohamed Salah.

Mazen : (3)

Zeyad : He was born in Gharbia in 1992.

Mazen : Which team did he start to play for?

Zeyad : (4)

Mazen : Is he popular in England?

Zeyad : (5)

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

About 70% of the world is covered by water, and 97% of this water lies in the oceans and seas. There are four oceans; the Pacific, Atlantic,

Indian and Arctic. Fish are found both in fresh river water and in salty sea water. Small plants grow in shallow waters. Small organisms feed on these plants and in turn become food for small fish. The smaller fish are eaten by the larger ones. Warm waters are covered with coral reefs. There are areas in the seas which are very deep, so sunlight does not reach these areas. Ocean animals come in almost every shape and size. Sharks are actually fish! They do not have bones. They have sharp teeth. They have an excellent sense of smell, which helps them find food. Many sharks eat near the surface of the water, but will also dive down deeper in search of food. There are over 350 kinds of sharks, but only about 25 of those attack people.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined pronoun They refers to
a. turtles b. sharks c. fish d. whales
2. The underlined word shallow means not
a. deep b. long c. short d. low
3. Sharks have a strong sense of
a. taste b. sight c. touch d. smell

b. Answer the following questions:

4. What is the main idea in this passage?
5. How many oceans are there on the earth?
6. What do you think about shark? Why?

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Most windows are made of
a. wood b. glass c. cotton d. paper
2. You can usually paper, so don't throw it away.
a. recycle b. cycle c. heat d. hit
3. The teacher asked the students to work in pairs and a quiz.
a. throw b. do c. make d. let

4. The story is interesting, it?
a. does b. doesn't c. isn't d. is
5. Khalid went to the park ten minutes
a. since b. then c. ago d. next
6. The old car is than the new car.
a. noise b. more noise c. noisier d. noisiest
7. The is one of the most dangerous animals in the ocean.
a. duck b. donkey c. monkey d. shark
8. We sometimes go for two days or more, usually across the desert.
a. diving b. windsurfing c. trekking d. kayaking
9. The Taha Masr goes over the Nile in Cairo.
a. Pyramid b. Tunnel c. Tower d. Bridge
10. A/An designs machines and engines.
a. teacher b. accountant c. engineer d. sailor

5. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. My computer often stops and turns off by himself. (.....)
2. We mustn't be quiet in the classroom. (.....)
3. We went to the museum and see some old statues. (.....)
4. I think we would live on the moon; it is my dream. (.....)

E. Writing

6. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A sport you like"

موقع التفوق

5 Sharmia Governorate

East Zagazig Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع إلى صوتك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (اختر من بين a, b, c, d)

1. Dad likes
a. films b. sports c. books d. plays
2. Dad is very good at
a. football b. cooking c. running d. swimming
3. Mum loves
a. swimming b. running c. football d. cooking
4. My brother doesn't like the
a. countryside b. city c. school d. cinema

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Sameh is talking to Tamer about a party.

Sameh: Why didn't you come to the party yesterday?

Tamer: (1) _____

Sameh: (2) _____ ?

Tamer: Yes, I went to the doctor.

Sameh: (3) _____ ?

Tamer: He gave me some medicine.

Sameh: Will you go to school tomorrow?

Tamer: (4) _____

Sameh: I hope you get well soon.

Tamer: (5) _____

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

It was Mother's Day. My sister and I went to buy presents for our mother. I bought her a dress and my sister bought her a pair of shoes.

At home, we made a party. We invited our three cousins and many of our friends. The girls sang beautiful songs. We gave the presents to our mother who thanked us. All the guests ate cakes and drank tea. My mother was happy because all people loved her. At ten p.m. our guests left our house. They were very happy.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to the
a. girls b. cousins c. guests d. daughters
2. The guests left the house
a. in the morning b. in the afternoon
c. in the evening d. at 10 o'clock
3. The opposite of the underlined word "beautiful" is
a. surprising b. nice c. terrible d. friendly

b. Answer the following questions:

4. Give a suitable title for this passage.

5. What did the writer buy for his/her mother?

6. What do you think about the writer?

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Red Sea is famous for its colourful coral
a. camels b. reefs c. trees d. stars
2. A: Were you in Giza yesterday? B: Yes, I
a. am b. was c. have d. had
3. They were really sad because they got some news.
a. happy b. terrible c. amazing d. good
4. It's _____ for a little girl to walk alone at night.
a. nice b. wide c. safe d. dangerous

ALTfWOK.COM

1. He is a very high marks student. (write)
2. He is a very high marks student. (write)
3. He is a very high marks student. (write)
4. He is a very high marks student. (write)
5. He is a very high marks student. (write)
6. He is a very high marks student. (write)
7. He is a very high marks student. (write)
8. He is a very high marks student. (write)
9. He is a very high marks student. (write)
10. He is a very high marks student. (write)
11. He is a very high marks student. (write)
12. He is a very high marks student. (write)
13. He is a very high marks student. (write)
14. He is a very high marks student. (write)
15. He is a very high marks student. (write)
16. He is a very high marks student. (write)
17. He is a very high marks student. (write)
18. He is a very high marks student. (write)
19. He is a very high marks student. (write)
20. He is a very high marks student. (write)
21. He is a very high marks student. (write)
22. He is a very high marks student. (write)
23. He is a very high marks student. (write)
24. He is a very high marks student. (write)
25. He is a very high marks student. (write)
26. He is a very high marks student. (write)
27. He is a very high marks student. (write)
28. He is a very high marks student. (write)
29. He is a very high marks student. (write)
30. He is a very high marks student. (write)
31. He is a very high marks student. (write)
32. He is a very high marks student. (write)
33. He is a very high marks student. (write)
34. He is a very high marks student. (write)
35. He is a very high marks student. (write)
36. He is a very high marks student. (write)
37. He is a very high marks student. (write)
38. He is a very high marks student. (write)
39. He is a very high marks student. (write)
40. He is a very high marks student. (write)
41. He is a very high marks student. (write)
42. He is a very high marks student. (write)
43. He is a very high marks student. (write)
44. He is a very high marks student. (write)
45. He is a very high marks student. (write)
46. He is a very high marks student. (write)
47. He is a very high marks student. (write)
48. He is a very high marks student. (write)
49. He is a very high marks student. (write)
50. He is a very high marks student. (write)
51. He is a very high marks student. (write)
52. He is a very high marks student. (write)
53. He is a very high marks student. (write)
54. He is a very high marks student. (write)
55. He is a very high marks student. (write)
56. He is a very high marks student. (write)
57. He is a very high marks student. (write)
58. He is a very high marks student. (write)
59. He is a very high marks student. (write)
60. He is a very high marks student. (write)
61. He is a very high marks student. (write)
62. He is a very high marks student. (write)
63. He is a very high marks student. (write)
64. He is a very high marks student. (write)
65. He is a very high marks student. (write)
66. He is a very high marks student. (write)
67. He is a very high marks student. (write)
68. He is a very high marks student. (write)
69. He is a very high marks student. (write)
70. He is a very high marks student. (write)
71. He is a very high marks student. (write)
72. He is a very high marks student. (write)
73. He is a very high marks student. (write)
74. He is a very high marks student. (write)
75. He is a very high marks student. (write)
76. He is a very high marks student. (write)
77. He is a very high marks student. (write)
78. He is a very high marks student. (write)
79. He is a very high marks student. (write)
80. He is a very high marks student. (write)
81. He is a very high marks student. (write)
82. He is a very high marks student. (write)
83. He is a very high marks student. (write)
84. He is a very high marks student. (write)
85. He is a very high marks student. (write)
86. He is a very high marks student. (write)
87. He is a very high marks student. (write)
88. He is a very high marks student. (write)
89. He is a very high marks student. (write)
90. He is a very high marks student. (write)
91. He is a very high marks student. (write)
92. He is a very high marks student. (write)
93. He is a very high marks student. (write)
94. He is a very high marks student. (write)
95. He is a very high marks student. (write)
96. He is a very high marks student. (write)
97. He is a very high marks student. (write)
98. He is a very high marks student. (write)
99. He is a very high marks student. (write)
100. He is a very high marks student. (write)

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. He has a beautiful house. does she? ()
2. I went to university. I study science. ()
3. You shouldn't visit your relatives regularly. ()
4. My brother is old than my friend. ()

E. Writing

- 6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :
"A fantastic day"

AltFwok.com

Menoufia Governorate

Social Educational Committee

A. Listening

- 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Eman is in
a. Hurghada b. Dahab c. Soma d. Red Sea
2. She is with her
a. teachers b. friends c. family d. cousins
3. They are going to go
a. travelling b. trekking c. rock climbing d. zip lining
4. Rock climbing is
a. interesting b. exciting c. boring d. scary

B. Language Functions

- 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed is at a hotel to book a room.

Ahmed : Excuse me, can you help me?

Assistant : Yes, (1) ?

Ahmed : I'd like to book a room, please.

Assistant : Do you want a single or a double room?

Ahmed : (2) . I am alone.

Assistant : (3) ?

Ahmed : I am going to stay here for a week.

Assistant : OK sir. You have booked the room now.

Ahmed : How much does it cost?

Assistant : (4) .

Ahmed : Thank you.

Assistant : (5) .

C. Reading Comprehension

- 3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

The world's widest suspension bridge (Tahya Masr Bridge) opened in Cairo in May 2019. It is 67.36 metres wide and 543 m long.

More than 4200 people helped to build it. They started building it in 2016. They finally finished it in 32 months later. The bridge crosses the Nile Warraq Island. More than 100,000 people live on the island. Many people enjoy walking across the bridge. It has a glass floor, so you can see the river under your feet! The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to
a. Cairo b. Warraq Island
c. Tahya Masr Bridge d. The Nile

2. The bridge has a floor.
a. metal b. glass c. paper d. wool

3. The underlined word "started" means
a. began b. stopped c. ended d. finished

b. Answer the following questions:

4. What's the main idea of the passage?

5. What does the bridge cross?

6. What do you think of Tahya Masr Bridge?

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Car windows are made of
a. stone b. wool c. glass d. cotton
2. A _____ shape is a shape like a circle.
a. square b. triangle c. round d. rectangular
3. It's important to _____ your skin from the sun.
a. agree b. stop c. protect d. refuse
4. _____ there any guides in the museum?
a. Was b. Are c. Do d. Is



5. The Red Sea is famous for its ... reef.
a. moral b. coral c. flat d. corn
6. There were _____ animals in the park yesterday.
a. any b. some c. lots d. an
7. Naglaa is much _____ than I'm.
a. taller b. tallest c. as tall d. the tallest
8. Metal is a hard _____.
a. material b. subject c. time d. work
9. _____ in the desert is tiring but enjoyable.
a. Driving b. Trekking c. Windsurfing d. Swimming
10. You can see planets and stars at the _____.
a. museum b. planetarium c. aquarium d. funfair

5. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. They get home very late last night. ()
2. My bag is heaviest than yours. ()
3. We would travel in rockets in the future. ()
4. What do chairs made of? ()

E. Writing

6. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your last weekend"

AltFwok.com

7 Gharbia Governorate

East Tanta Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلقك واحذر الإجابة الصحيحة (توضيح الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

- Where was Mohamed Salah born ?
a. Alexandria b. Fayoum c. Cairo d. Gharbia
- Which team did Mohamed Salah start playing football for ?
a. Zamalek b. Ahly c. Masry d. Mokawloon
- When did Salah win the African player of the year ?
a. 2019 b. 2017 c. 1992 d. 2010
- What's Mohamed Salah's job ?
a. A footballer b. An engineer c. A teacher d. A farmer

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ayman is asking Ashraf about his last weekend.

Ayman : What did you do last weekend ?

Ashraf : (1) _____

Ayman : The funfair ! That's fantastic. Which ride did you love most ?

Ashraf : (2) _____

Ayman : (3) _____ ?

Ashraf : The big wheel ticket was 20 pounds.

Ayman : Fantastic ! (4) _____ ?

Ashraf : (5) _____

Ayman : I love popcorn. It's my favourite, too.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

One day, Ahmed was on the third floor of his house, mending a broken door. He had nearly finished, and he was pleased with his work.

Suddenly, he heard a voice below call "Hello !". When he looked down, Ahmed saw an old man in dirty clothes standing below. "What do you want ?" asked Ahmed.

"Come down and I'll tell you," said the man. Ahmed was angry, but he was a polite man, so he put down his tools. Carefully, he climbed all the way down to the ground. "What do you want ?" he asked, when he reached the ground. "Could you spare a little money for an old beggar ?" asked the old man. Ahmed thought for a minute. Then he said, "Come with me." He began climbing the ladder again. The old man followed him all the way to the top, when they were both sitting on the third floor, Ahmed turned to the beggar and said "No".

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Ahmed was _____ with his work.
a. unhappy b. sad c. angry d. pleased
- The underlined pronoun "he" refers to _____.
a. the beggar b. neighbour c. Ahmed d. no one
- The underlined word "spare" means _____.
a. take b. give c. express d. borrow

b. Answer the following questions :

- What was Ahmed doing when he heard a voice below ?
- Do you think Ahmed behaved well with the old man ?
- Give a suitable title for this passage.

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- I watched a wonderful play for Adel Emam in the _____.
a. museum b. cinema c. theatre d. funfair
- The homework was very difficult, so I _____.
a. failed b. fell c. felt d. filled
- There is a science _____ at school. I think Hany will win.
a. column b. expression c. competition d. collection

موقع التفوق

1. The Great Pyramids of Giza is situated _____ with _____
 2. _____ on the bus when it the _____
 3. After you do morning exercise, you should stretch your _____
 4. The wear sunglasses to _____ our eyes from the sun.
 5. _____ going to leave home by bus after school?
 6. _____ You are _____ Are you _____ You have _____
 7. Sama is wearing the _____ suit today.
 8. _____ more new _____ newer than _____ the newest _____ newest
 9. _____ your tennis racket for the exam last week?
 10. _____ were _____ Do _____

5. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. The ten o'clock bus left ten minutes past. ()
 2. Chocolate is bad for you than fruit. ()
 3. I'm going try rock climbing next weekend. ()
 4. You don't drive this car. It drives herself. ()

E. Writing

6. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"What kind of weather do you like best? Why?"

موقع القوقل من خزانة

Dakahlia Governorate

East Maryouta Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When did they go to the Grand Egyptian Museum? - On _____
 a. Saturday b. Sunday c. Friday d. Monday
 2. When did the GEM welcome its first visitors? - In _____
 a. 2000 b. 2010 c. 2015 d. 2019
 3. What's the most beautiful part of the museum? -
 a. The hall b. The tomb c. The entrance d. The gate
 4. How long is the distance between the GEM and the Pyramids? - It's _____
 a. ten kilometres b. two kilometres
 c. twenty kilometres d. four kilometres

B. Language Functions

2. Complete the following dialogue:

Logy and Sama are talking about what Sama did yesterday.

Logy: Hi, Sama. How are you?

Sama: Hi, Logy. (1) _____

Logy: (2) _____?

Sama: (3) _____

Logy: Great. (4) _____?

Sama: I rode on the big wheel.

Logy: Were you frightened of it?

Sama: No.

Logy: I know you are brave.

Sama: Thank you, Logy.

C. Reading Comprehension

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

One day, my wife saw a mouse running across her kitchen floor. She was afraid of mice, so she ran out of the house, got on a bus and went

down to the shops. She bought a mouse-trap. The shopkeeper said to her, "Put some cheese in it and you will soon catch that mouse!" She went home. She looked at the fridge, but she couldn't find any cheese in it. She cut a picture of some cheese out of a magazine and put that in the trap. The picture of the cheese was successful!

When she came down to the kitchen the next morning, there was a picture of a mouse in the trap beside the picture of the cheese!

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mice like eating
a. picture b. magazines c. traps d. cheese
2. The lady the mouse.
a. caught b. didn't catch c. killed d. ate
3. The underlined word "afraid" means
a. famous b. quiet c. frightened d. friendly

b. Answer the following questions:

4. What do you think about the story?
5. Give a suitable title for this passage.
6. What does the underlined word "it" refer to?

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I went across the desert.
a. sailing b. diving c. swimming d. trekking
2. I made a cup of tea.
a. itself b. herself c. myself d. himself
3. Paper and glass are to recycle.
a. hard b. difficult c. harder d. easier
4. Tourists go to Hurghada to see coral
a. roofs b. reefs c. leaves d. beliefs

5. The boy was strong, he couldn't carry the bag.
a. but b. because c. so d. when
6. How is the Cairo-Alexandria Desert Road? - 220 km.
a. old b. long c. tall d. high
7. panels produce electricity using the sun.
a. Moon b. Wind c. Sky d. Solar
8. I'd like to see this film again. It's very
a. excited b. interested c. bored d. interesting
9. She always comes early, she?
a. isn't b. doesn't c. does d. hasn't
10. Munir knows which job he wants to
a. make b. play c. take d. do

5. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. There aren't any phones in ancient Egypt. ()
2. Ayman is good than Heba. ()
3. This city is crowded by people. ()
4. Did there be electric cars in the future? ()

E. Writing

6. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your dream job"

موقع التفوق

A. Listening

- 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When did the Grand Egyptian Museum open?
 a. 2000 b. 2009 c. 2019 d. 2002
2. How far is the museum from the Pyramids at Giza?
 a. 10 kilometres b. 15 kilometres c. 20 kilometres d. 12 kilometres
3. What is the most beautiful part of the museum?
 a. The hall b. The main room
 c. The entrance d. The second floor
4. How big is the statue of Ramses II?
 a. 2 metres b. 12 metres c. 20 metres d. 22 metres

B. Language Functions

- 2 Complete the following dialogue:

Mazen is asking Zeyad about the article he is reading.

Mazen: What are you reading, Zeyad?

Zeyad: 1.

Mazen: Oh yes! Last year, I went diving in the Red Sea.

Zeyad: I'd love to do that. 2.

Mazen: I don't know. I think rock climbing is a bit dangerous.

Zeyad: I like trekking in the mountains. 3.

Mazen: I like the mountains. I want to visit Sinai with my family next holiday.

Zeyad: Are you going to try mountain biking, Mazen?

Mazen: 4.

Zeyad: 5. I'm going to try it one day.

C. Reading Comprehension

- 3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

There are lots of jobs in our life. There are farmers who work in fields.

There are carpenters who work in workshops. There are mechanics who work in garages. Among all of these jobs, the doctor's work is the most important than other jobs, because it is concerned with people's lives. There are many kinds of doctors who deal with different kinds of patients. The children's doctor deals with children who are sick. The eye's doctor deals with people whose eyes are ill, etc. In many times, the doctor doesn't sleep at night if someone calls him to see a patient. We should respect all doctors.

- a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the
 a. carpenter's b. mechanic's c. farmer's d. doctor's
2. The underlined word "patients" means
 a. old b. healthy c. sick d. strong
3. We must _____ our doctors.
 a. sink b. respect c. hate d. prevent

- b. Answer the following questions:

4. Where does a carpenter work?
5. Why do you think a doctor can't sleep at night?
6. What's the main idea of the passage?

D. Vocabulary & Structure

- 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She is a _____. She had piano lessons when she was eight.
 a. waiter b. musician c. sailor d. worker
2. We always _____ what to do at the weekend.
 a. travel b. make c. plan d. climb
3. Planting trees is very good for our _____ because they give us
 clean air.
 a. house b. street c. space d. environment

4. To be _____ means not to be dangerous.
a. deep b. safe c. cheap d. near
5. I love learning about sea life. I want to be a marine.
a. architect b. biologist c. engineer d. teacher
6. I _____ my lunch with my friend because he was hungry.
a. agreed b. shared c. took d. filled
7. People put _____ on windows to protect them from the sun.
a. lamps b. cushions c. scarfs d. curtains
8. We all looked at _____ in the school photo.
a. themselves b. yourself c. ourselves d. herself
9. You _____ take water when you go to the desert.
a. mustn't b. must c. has d. have
10. A scientist is a person _____ studies science.
a. where b. which c. who d. what

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. It is hot today, is it ? ()
2. Next year, I spent my holiday in Paris. ()
3. Sweets are bad for you than fruit. ()
4. If you doesn't run, you won't catch the bus. ()

E. Writing

**6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :
"Your last weekend"**

AltFwok.com موقع التفوق

10 Kafr El-Sheikh Governorate El-Hamoul Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى مكالمة واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. I am going to travel with my _____.
a. family b. teachers c. friends d. uncles
2. We are going to travel from _____ to Luxor.
a. Assuit b. Aswan c. Cairo d. Giza
3. We are going to leave Aswan in _____.
a. November b. December c. September d. April
4. We are going to _____ in Luxor in January.
a. leave b. live c. arrive d. stay

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Yara asks Tasneem about her weekend in Alexandria.

Yara : Good morning.

Tasneem : (1) _____

Yara : (2) _____ ?

Tasneem : I spent it in Alexandria.

Yara : How was the weather like there ?

Tasneem : (3) _____

Yara : Fantastic ! (4) _____ ?

Tasneem : I ate fish.

Yara : What else did you do there ?

Tasneem : (5) _____

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Many traditional houses in the past were round. Today, many modern houses are also round. Why is this ? There are lots of reasons. A round

shape means the building is very strong. This is important when there is an earthquake or strong winds. Also, heavy snow or rain will fall from the roof. A round house is also easier to keep warm or cool. It is also quieter inside a round building than a building that is a rectangle or a square. Finally, a round building uses fewer materials, so it is cheaper to make. It also has more space inside. How fantastic!

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined pronoun "It" refers to the
a. roof b. round house c. rain d. snow
- It is _____ inside a round house.
a. noisy b. quiet c. bad d. very cold
- It's important for houses to be strong when there is
a. wind b. rain c. an earthquake d. a, b and c

b. Answer the following questions:

- What's the best title for this passage?
- What's your opinion about round houses?
- Find a word in the passage which means "not old".

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- We went to the _____ to enjoy seeing planets and stars.
a. planetarium b. sports centre c. funfair d. aquarium
- I write what happens to me every day in a _____.
a. photo b. diary c. dairy d. search
- There will be a _____ over the river.
a. line b. road c. tunnel d. bridge
- We must protect our _____.
a. environment b. smoke c. fire d. dust

- Tourists usually have a _____.
a. passenger b. manager c. traveller d. guide
- I bought a/an _____ to cook food inside.
a. top b. spoon c. oven d. kitchen
- _____ are machines which can do many things for us.
a. Solar panels b. Turbines c. Robots d. Rabbits
- What must you _____ before exams?
a. do b. to do c. doing d. to doing
- She made a very nice cake, _____ she?
a. did b. didn't c. does d. don't
- I like playing football, _____ I don't like playing tennis.
a. and b. but c. because d. so

5. Read and correct the underlined words:

- There weren't some women in the party. (_____)
- My uncle is oldest than my father. (_____)
- You must write on the walls of the class. (_____)
- He read English books a lot, did he? (_____)

E. Writing

6. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your plans for your summer holiday"

ALT Fwdk.com موقع التفتوح

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 انتقل إلى مكالمة الهاتفية، وادرس الأسئلة في حصة اللغة.

1. Mam _____ enjoy walking across the Tahya Masr Bridge.
 a. animals b. birds c. people d. buses
2. It has a an _____ floor.
 a. wood b. glass c. iron d. rubber
3. You can see the _____ under your feet!
 a. river b. sea c. lake d. cars
4. The best time to cross the bridge is at _____.
 a. sunset b. night c. afternoon d. morning

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Dalia and Mai are talking about the weekend.

Dalia : How did you spend your weekend ?

Mai : I went to the funfair.

Dalia : (1) _____ ?

Mai : I went with my family. (2) _____ ?

Dalia : I stayed at home to watch a football match.

Mai : What about going to the stadium together next weekend ?

Dalia : (3) _____ !

Mai : (4) _____ .

Dalia : Ok. 7 o'clock is a good time. Where can we meet ?

Mai : (5) _____ .

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Every summer, Nada goes to the countryside for a month. She stays at her uncle's farm and helps him. She works very hard but she likes it.

She loves to spend time with her cousins. Every morning, she wakes up at six o'clock. First, she collects the eggs and feeds the chickens, then she has breakfast at 6:30. After breakfast, she helps her uncle's wife with the housework. Nada and her cousins always spend a great time together. They climb trees and pick fruits and flowers. They are always very tired at the end of the day. Nada and her cousins always watch TV before they go to bed.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Nada stays at her uncle's farm for _____ days.
 a. 15 b. 7 c. 60 d. 30
2. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to
 a. Nada and her father b. Nada and her cousins
 c. Nada and her friends d. Nada and her classmates
3. The opposite of the underlined word "hard" is
 a. easy b. carefully c. carelessly d. locally

b. Answer the following questions:

4. Why do you think Nada likes to go to her uncle's farm ?
5. What do Nada and her cousins do before they go to bed ?
6. Give a suitable title for this passage.

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. _____ cars don't need a driver; they can drive themselves.
 a. Driverless b. Drone c. Boat d. Motorbike
2. You _____ listen to your parents' advice.
 a. mustn't b. must c. can d. can't
3. A _____ is a tall narrow building.
 a. tour b. pyramid c. bridge d. tower
4. A cake is made from _____.
 a. plastic b. flour c. flower d. floor

5. A can fly, but it doesn't have a pilot.
 a. dream b. drone c. racket d. car
6. Cairo is a very big town.
 a. town b. village c. country d. city
7. My house is bigger than yours.
 a. big b. bigger c. the biggest d. biggest
8. I asked for help because I was lost.
 a. so b. because c. but d. and
9. Are you going to go to Ras El Bar next summer?
 a. go b. going c. going to d. will
10. We use taps to get water.
 a. balls b. taps c. taps d. ovens

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Are there any food in the fridge? (.....)
2. Where did he went yesterday? (.....)
3. Alaa is good than her sister. (.....)
4. You should are helpful. (.....)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Sports you do"



A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. My birthday was last
 a. Sunday b. Monday c. Tuesday d. Saturday
2. On my birthday, I went to the
 a. zoo b. museum c. tower d. pyramids
3. I went to the museum with my
 a. mum b. sister c. father d. uncle
4. My brother took us to his favourite
 a. library b. restaurant c. school d. club

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

- Sara and Mona are talking about materials.
 Sara : Hello Mona. Are you good at science?
 Mona : Hi Sara. (1)
 Sara : (2) ?
 Mona : Cars are made of metal .
 Sara : Good. (3) ?
 Mona : Chairs are made of glass.
 Sara : No, (4)
 Mona : You're right. I'm sorry.
 Sara : (5)

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

There are many kinds of houses. Most people in the United States live in houses made of wood or bricks. In Eritrea, the nomadic people build their houses of straw. The homes are small and cool. **They** can move their houses when they want to move. They take their animals to new places in order to find food. People who belong to Peru build their houses

of trees. They also live on islands that are made of trees! Their boats are made of trees too! About 2,000 people live on these man-made islands. They started to build their own islands about 500 years ago.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. People in Peru build their house of .
a. wood b. bricks c. straw d. glass
2. The underlined word "started" has the same meaning of .
a. began b. finished c. stopped d. included
3. The underlined pronoun "they" refers to .
a. homes b. nomads c. Americans d. bricks

b. Answer the following questions:

4. Give a suitable title for this passage.

5. Why do the nomads take their animals to new places?

6. What kind of houses do you prefer to live in?

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A _____ is a hole inside a mountain.
a. road b. valley c. hill d. cave
2. My grandfather made lots of great _____ during his life.
a. environments b. achievements
c. measurements d. nouns
3. The piano is a musical _____.
a. concert b. machine c. instrument d. equipment
4. It _____ ten minutes to walk to school.
a. goes b. takes c. spends d. plays
5. At the start of the trip, the weather was _____ and hot.
a. stormy b. foggy c. sunny d. snowy

6. You should _____ other people's opinion.
a. respected b. respecting c. respect d. respects
7. Some houses fell to the ground after the _____.
a. earthquake b. achievement c. space d. description
8. Trees are very good for our _____ because they give us clean air.
a. environment b. house c. space d. spring
9. There were _____ boys playing in the street.
a. a b. an c. any d. no
10. Mountain climbing is _____ dangerous than swimming.
a. the most b. the more c. most d. more

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Ghada drew himself a picture. ()
2. Dalia is the older in her family. ()
3. Books are making of paper. ()
4. Last weekend, we go to the club. ()

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your future job"



A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- What does the woman want to buy?
a. A newspaper
b. A new phone
c. A new bag
d. Some photographs
- The thing she decides to buy is
a. large and expensive
b. small and expensive
c. large and cheap
d. small and cheap
- What does the assistant ask the woman about?
a. Her name
b. Her job
c. Her hobbies
d. The price
- The woman is a
a. photographer
b. painter
c. journalist
d. doctor

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Manar asks Samya about her visit to Dalia last Friday.

Manar: Where were you last Friday?

Samya:

Manar: (2) ?

Samya: It was her birthday.

Manar: Who was at Dalia's house?

Samya: (3)

Manar: (4) ?

Samya: She's 12.

Manar: Did you give her a present?

Samya: (5)

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

New technology means that forms of communication are changing all

the time. For example, think about how phones have developed over the last 20 years. In the past, people used to type messages using special letters on their phones. Then, people started to touch the screens on their phones to type their messages.

Now, phones are able to understand people's voices and many people are speaking to their phones to send messages. Some scientists think that phones are going to know what people think in the future. Perhaps our phones will read our facial expressions before they send a message!

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined pronoun "they" refers to
a. messages
b. phones
c. people
d. scientists
- Phones are able to understand people
a. shapes
b. forms
c. voices
d. messages
- The underlined word "facial" means for the
a. brain
b. arm
c. hand
d. face

b. Answer the following questions:

- What is the best title for the passage?
- How did people use to send messages on a phone?
- Do you think that phones will know what we think in the future?

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I saw a/an about dolphins in the aquarium.
a. funfair
b. exhibition
c. sports centre
d. match
- My friend lives to school than me. He goes to school on foot.
a. heavier
b. further
c. nearer
d. longer
- We must put trash in the
a. bin
b. pin
c. ban
d. pan

4. " is a sport or a hobby where one or two people travel in a narrow boat.
 a. Diving b. Kayaking c. Trekking d. Swimming
5. What the things in the photos made of?
 a. am b. is c. are d. was
6. When a turtle is in danger, it into its shell.
 a. climbs b. goes c. takes d. makes
7. " are used to cook food or bread.
 a. Ovens b. Fridges c. Taps d. TVs
8. I'd rather chess.
 a. to play b. playing c. play d. plays
9. She made a very nice cake, she?
 a. didn't b. doesn't c. hasn't d. can't
10. The balls are very heavy at the alley.
 a. aquarium b. planetarium c. bowling d. stadium

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Who did Adam did these things with ? ()
2. Adel is tall, but Rami is tallest. ()
3. A nurse is a person when looks after sick people. ()
4. Where would you go if you take a holiday ? ()

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"The most important inventions in our life"

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. Basel was born in
 a. 2007 b. 2012 c. 2000 d. 2016
2. Basel is talking about the important in his life.
 a. accidents b. months c. events d. times
3. Basel was born in
 a. Luxor b. Cairo c. Alexandria d. Aswan
4. Basel school in 2012.
 a. started b. finished c. ended d. built

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Asem and Nabil are talking about last weekend.

Asem : Did you enjoy your last weekend ?

Nabil : (1)

Asem : (2)

Nabil : In a sports centre.

Asem : (3)

Nabil : With my friends.

Asem : What did you enjoy doing there ?

Nabil : (4)

Asem : Is there a swimming pool ?

Nabil : (5)

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

I don't know which job I want to do when I'm older, but education is very important. I hope that I pass my exams so that I can go to

AltFutk.com
 موقع التفوق

university. I'm going to work hard. If I go to university, I'll study math. It's my best subject. I don't like flying, so I don't want to travel around the world. I want to get a good job in Egypt. I want to teach maths. If I have enough money, I'll buy an apartment near the Red Sea. I'll get married, but how many children will I have? I don't know!

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. After finishing school, you can go to university.
a. primary b. preparatory c. secondary d. nursery
2. The underlined word "apartment" means a
a. flat b. park c. garden d. beach
3. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to
a. maths b. subject c. university d. work

b. Answer the following questions:

4. Give a suitable title for this passage.
5. What will he do if he has enough money?
6. Why do you think the writer wants to teach maths?

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I like mountain very much although it's difficult.
a. driving b. climbing c. diving d. riding
2. Buses, cars and trains are means of
a. railways b. stations c. transport d. machines
3. I gave a special to my father on his birthday party.
a. present b. prize c. value d. scene
4. The view from the top of the tower is very I like it.
a. dangerous b. fantastic c. terrible d. tiring
5. My teacher was angry because I a lot of mistakes.
a. gave b. made c. did d. took

6. The is at the top of a house or a building.
a. ground b. wall c. roof d. floor
7. cars won't need drivers.
a. Electric b. Driverless c. Traditional d. Modern
8. If you touch a Jellyfish, it you.
a. sting b. stings c. stung d. would sting
9. It isn't hot today,?
a. is it b. isn't it c. It isn't d. It is
10. When did they building it?
a. start b. started c. to start d. starting

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. The children made these toys itself. (.....)
2. Trains are fast than buses. (.....)
3. I'm going visit Sina. (.....)
4. Let's eating some apples. (.....)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your favourite sport"



15 Fayoum Governorate

Fayoum Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع إلى معلقك وأخير الإجابة الصحيحة أصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. How long did it take to finish the bridge?
a. 32 months b. 23 months c. 13 months d. 50 months
2. How long is it?
a. 630 m b. 455 m c. 540 m d. 513 m
3. In which city did they open it?
a. London b. Cairo c. Paris d. Tokyo
4. How many people helped to build it? - More than
a. 5.000 b. 2.000 c. 6.000 d. 4.000

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Rami is asking Ali if he went to Siwa.

Rami : Did you go to Siwa ?

Ali : (1) _____

Rami : When did you go there ?

Ali : (2) _____

Rami : (3) _____ ?

Ali : I swam in the lake.

Rami : (4) _____ ?

Ali : I slept in a tent in the desert.

Rami : What was your favourite food there ?

Ali : (5) _____

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Plastic is everywhere! We use it for many different things. The problem is, plastic stays in the environment for a very long time. Some of the plastic people find on beaches is about 100 years old! We can recycle some plastic, but most of it goes into the ocean. Plastic

is poisonous when animals eat it. Every year, more than 100.000 sea animals and birds die from plastic. Dolphins and sea birds also swim into plastic fishing lines.

We must try to use other materials such as paper and glass, for example, because these are easier to recycle.

When we use a plastic shopping bag, we should try to use it more than once. We mustn't throw away these bags.

It will take a long time to clean all the plastic rubbish from the beaches and the ocean. But we mustn't stop trying to help our planet!

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "these" refers to
a. dolphins b. paper and glass
c. fishing lines d. animals

2. The word "recycle" means
a. use again b. wash c. stay d. find out

3. It's better to use paper than
a. glass b. bags c. fishing d. plastic

b. Answer the following questions:

4. Give a suitable title for this passage.

5. What do you think about plastic?

6. Why is plastic dangerous for animals and birds?

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The birds sleep in caves to protect _____ from eagles.
a. yourselves b. themselves c. itself d. ourselves
2. We can't go _____ because there is no wind.
a. trekking b. diving c. biking d. windsurfing
3. Do you like to work with other people, or do you prefer working _____?
a. alike b. lonely c. alone d. along

5, 6 & 7

4. Let's go on a big wheel at the _____ this weekend.
a. stadium b. museum c. funfair d. aquarium
5. How _____ your weekend ?
a. did b. do c. does d. was
6. Earth is one of eight _____ that go round the sun.
a. plants b. plans c. planes d. planets
7. We _____ things by using the metre or kilometre.
a. measure b. guess c. count d. weigh
8. A/An _____ has eight legs.
a. jelly fish b. snake c. octopus d. turtle
9. A _____ can fly, but it doesn't have a pilot.
a. car b. plane c. drone d. metro
10. People _____ drive a car in 2080.
a. wouldn't b. won't c. don't d. didn't

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Will you going to visit your friends ? (.....)
2. The six o'clock train left ten minutes past. (.....)
3. He was the better player in the team. (.....)
4. You must to take turns to do the exercise. (.....)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"My last weekend"

AltFwd.com موقع التفوق

16 Minia Governorate

Minia Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Noha is a/an teacher.
a. math b. French c. English d. science
2. She teaches school students.
a. secondary b. primary c. preparatory d. high
3. She helps her students their lessons.
a. understand b. break c. damage d. forget
4. A : What does Miss Noha do when her students do well ?
B : She them.
a. punishes b. visits c. rewards d. hits

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Marwa and Jana are talking about Tahya Masr Bridge.

Marwa : Hi Jana.

Jana : Hi Marwa. (1) ?

Marwa : I went to enjoy the view across Tahya Masr Bridge.

Jana : Oh really. (2) ?

Marwa : It took 32 months to finish.

Jana : Do you know that it's the world's widest suspension bridge ?

Marwa : (3)

Jana : What is the best time to cross the bridge ?

Marwa : (4)

Jana : Do you like to go there together ?

Marwa : (5)

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Ann is from England. She is now in Egypt on holiday. She has spent two days in Aswan. She enjoys seeing the High Dam. She thinks that

people of Aswan are so friendly. She still has five more days in her holiday. Her friend Salma invited her to visit her village. Ann is going there tomorrow morning. She has decided to spend two days with her husband and her family. Salma will show her how Egyptian villagers live and spend their day. Then, she will go to Alexandria for a day. She intends to visit the place where the lighthouse was one day. She is going to stay the rest of her holiday in Cairo. She wants to visit the Egyptian Museum. She'd like to visit the Pyramids of Giza.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined pronoun "her" refers to
a. Ann b. Salma c. people d. holiday
- The underlined word "villagers" can have the same meaning as
a. engineers b. carpenters c. farmers d. teachers
- Ann is going to visit the place of the Lighthouse in
a. Aswan b. Cairo c. Giza d. Alexandria

b. Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of the passage?
- How long is Ann going to spend in Cairo?
- Why do you think Ann enjoyed her visit to Aswan?

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A teacher is a person _____ teaches students.
a. when b. where c. who d. whose
- There is no water in the glass. The glass is
a. narrow b. wide c. empty d. crowded
- "Ancient" is the opposite of _____.
a. expensive b. beautiful c. dangerous d. modern
- Maha likes the _____ of Ramses out of the museum.
a. statue b. bed c. room d. entrance

5. People have different

- | | | | |
|---|----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| a. opinions | b. classes | c. about music | d. mountains |
| 6. We went _____ in the mountains. | | | |
| a. diving | b. snorkelling | c. windsurfing | d. trekking |
| 7. Robinson Crusoe is a/an _____ story by Daniel Defoe. | | | |
| a. historical | b. scientific | c. adventure | d. geographical |
| 8. Reem is _____ than Rana. | | | |
| a. older | b. old | c. oldest | d. the oldest |
| 9. Cars are made of _____. | | | |
| a. cotton | b. paper | c. metal | d. leather |
| 10. It's cloudy, it _____ rain. | | | |
| a. going to | b. will | c. won't | d. is going to |

5. Read and correct the underlined words:

- The cat is cleaning myself. ()
- Adel didn't bought a car last week. ()
- Is there any friends in Soha's party? ()
- He is going to travel in bus. ()

E. Writing

6. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A new house"

ALT FWORD.COM موقع التقوي

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى مكالمة وادكر الإجابة الصحيحة (بخصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

- What's your uncle's job ?
a. a teacher b. an engineer c. a doctor d. a businessman
- What kind of engines does your uncle design ? - B : Engines for
a. ships b. buses c. cars d. planes
- Your aunt's job is
a. a nurse b. a pilot
c. a doctor d. a businesswoman
- Where does your aunt work ? - She works in a/an
a. school b. hospital c. office d. bank

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

A teacher is talking to a student who is late for his class.

Teacher : Why are you late, Salem ?

Salem : Sorry, Sir. There were too many cars in the road.

Teacher : (1) _____ ?

Salem : I came on foot.

Teacher : (2) _____ ?

Salem : (3) _____ . It is my second time.

Teacher : Second time ! (4) _____ .

Salem : I'm so sorry Sir, but we have a test today.

Teacher : Ok. Come in, but you must leave home earlier next time.

Salem : (5) _____ .

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

My name is Amir, I am twelve years old. We have a small toy shop. Fridays are the busiest days in our shop. So, my mom takes me there to help dad. That's why I like Fridays. We let children play with the toys in the store. My dad says I should watch the toys and make sure nothing is broken. Many children from my school come to the shop and look at our new toys. It is always noisy there because there are a lot of babies and small children. Little girls like to come to see dolls while boys come for cars. Some children just want to play with toys, but some others want to buy them. It's a bit tiring for me, but I like going to the shop and helping my father.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined word "them" refers to
a. boys b. girls c. toys d. parents
- The word "store" means a
a. house b. shop c. town d. school
- Amir is years old.
a. 7 b. 20 c. 8 d. 12

b. Answer the following questions:

- What is the passage about ?
- What do the girls like to do at the shop ?
- Why do you think Amir loves Fridays ?

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- My work is my home. So, I walk to work every day.
a. far b. near c. empty d. big
- We went to the to look at the stars.
a. stadium b. museum c. aquarium d. planetarium

1. We can get information from
a. books b. solar panels c. drones
2. Was Al. or his sister?
a. taller b. more tall c. tallest
3. Children usually play
a. alone b. herself c. himself d. themselves
4. We should
a. old things to save our environment b. send c. drink
5. He is going to go
a. across Sinai b. fishing c. swimming
6. A good book
a. you when you touch it b. hides c. covers d. protects
7. Is your birthday? It's in May
a. whose b. when c. who d. where
8. The teacher asked the students to work in pairs and
a. quiz b. throw c. do d. let

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. There were any boys at school yesterday. ()
2. My father bought a new car on 2021. ()
3. When we freeze water it turned into ice. ()
4. What do you do last weekend? ()

E. Writing

- 6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :
"An adventure sport"

AltFour.com موقع التتويج

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. My birthday was last
a. Sunday b. Monday c. Saturday d. Tuesday
2. On my birthday, my father bought me a new
a. museum b. restaurant c. mobile d. book
3. I went to the museum with my
a. mum and sister b. sister c. brother d. mum
4. My brother took me to his favourite
a. restaurant b. library c. playground d. museum

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Hana and Sama are talking about houses in China.

Hana : Did you travel to any place ?

Sama : (1)

Hana : (2)

Sama : They are round.

Hana : Strange! You mean they are looking like a circle.

Sama : Yes, because there is a strong wind.

Hana : (3)

Sama : Wood, but strong and cheap.

Hana : (4)

Sama : So, get an architect to do it for you.

Hana : (5)

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

In ancient Egypt, there was a village called Deir el-Medina. The people from that village worked in the Valley of the Kings. There were 60

houses. The walls of the houses were made of bricks and the doors were made of wood. The people painted their houses white, with red doors. The houses had a kitchen and a living room, but there were not any bedrooms. People usually slept on the roof because it was very hot at night. There was usually an oven for bread in the kitchen, but there were not any taps. People got their water from the Nile Valley, about two kilometres away.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Taps are used to
a. get water b. bake bread c. sleep on d. buy bread
2. People in Dair el-Medina used to sleep
a. in tents b. on the roofs
c. in the bedrooms d. in the kitchens
3. The underlined word "ancient" is the opposite of
a. colourful b. dangerous c. modern d. further

b. Answer the following questions:

4. Give a suitable title for this passage.

5. What do you think about life in that village?

6. What does the underlined word "There" refer to?

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We had lunch together in the school
a. laboratory b. library c. canteen d. uniform
2. Saima is going to the She loves riding the big wheel.
a. funfair b. museum c. planetarium d. aquarium
3. I think mountain is the most dangerous sport.
a. diving b. climbing c. building d. skiing
4. It's important to be polite when you your opinion.
a. make b. take c. give d. invite

5. "....." is a sport when we travel on a narrow boat.
a. Diving b. Trekking c. Swimming d. Kayaking
6. A/An shows places to tourists.
a. trainer b. guide c. driver d. adventurer
7. The is one of the most dangerous sea animals.
a. jellyfish b. turtle c. shark d. octopus
8. Did he the match yesterday?
a. watch b. watches c. watched d. watching
9. Tamer has got orange juice in class.
a. the fewest b. the least c. less than d. more than
10. Sahar bought the fruit by
a. himself b. itself c. myself d. herself

5. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. My bed is made up wood. ()
2. The journey will took only 12 hours. ()
3. When I'm hungry, I had something to eat. ()
4. Salma and Sama are twins, don't they? ()

E. Writing

6. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"My favourite job"

ALTFUCK.COM موقع التتويج



A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع إلى حوارات واختار الإجابة الصحيحة (انصت إلى الحوارات في بداية الكتاب)

- Robinson Crusoe was a/an
a. fireman b. sailor c. pilot d. engineer
- Robinson Crusoe's ship sank because there was a/an
a. water b. storm c. earthquake d. boat
- Robinson Crusoe swam to a nearby
a. island b. city c. town d. bridge
- Crusoe found _____ other people on the island.
a. one b. two c. three d. no

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Mustafa and Ahmed are talking about Mohamed Salah.

Mustafa: Do you know Mohamed Salah?

Ahmed: 1) _____

Mustafa: 2) _____?

Ahmed: He was born in 1992.

Mustafa: Where does he play now?

Ahmed: 3) _____

Mustafa: 4) _____?

Ahmed: He won the European Champions League in 2019.

Mustafa: Is he kind and helpful?

Ahmed: 5) _____

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

My name is Mustafa and I love playing games. Every weekend my family has a free day. We chat and play music but we also play a game

together. We have got lots of games like chess, dominos and some other video games. Last year, I learnt to play chess at school. I often play with my granddad. He is really good but I'm getting better. My younger sister, Mona cries because she can't play chess. Playing games is good because they are fun and sociable. I love winning and I hate losing. But I know that I can't always win. The most important thing about games is to enjoy playing them with your friends or family.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Mustafa often plays chess with
a. his sister b. his granddad c. his father d. his friend
- The underlined word "win" can be the opposite of
a. learn b. leave c. lose d. like
- The underlined pronoun "they" refers to
a. games b. family c. cousins d. sisters

b. Answer the following questions:

- Give a suitable title for this passage.
- What is the most important thing about games?
- Why do you think Mona cries?

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I _____ swimming last weekend.
a. went b. played c. did d. had
- His ship sank _____ there was a terrible storm.
a. but b. because c. so d. and
- How _____ is the Sohag-Assiut Desert Road?
a. deep b. high c. long d. many

4. This is the _____ popular book in the library.
a. more b. most c. little d. less
5. A _____ is a person who shows a place to tourists.
a. visitor b. guide c. pilot d. nurse
6. Retal taught _____ to speak French.
a. herself b. himself c. themselves d. ourselves
7. Some houses fell to the ground after the _____.
a. earthquake b. cloud c. fog d. igloo
8. Earth is one of the _____ that go around the sun.
a. planets b. plans c. plants d. planes
9. A/An _____ is someone who designs machines for us.
a. accountant b. engineer c. sailor d. teacher
10. The teacher was angry because all the students were very _____.
a. low b. noisy c. narrow d. wide

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. It is cold in England in winter, does it ? ()
2. The Nile is longest than the Amazon. ()
3. What are you go to do next Friday ? ()
4. You mustn't throwing rubbish in the park. ()

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"A fantastic day you had"

AltFwok.com موقع التفوق

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك وانظر الإجابة الصحيحة (معوض الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. Basant is _____ years old.
a. two b. twenty c. twelve d. ten
2. They went to the museum by _____.
a. car b. train c. plane d. bus
3. They saw the statues in the _____.
a. funfair b. cinema c. class d. museum
4. They went to the funfair in the _____.
a. morning b. night c. afternoon d. evening

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Heba and Hala are talking about music.

Heba : I like music very much, And you ?

Hala : (1) _____

Heba : (2) _____ ?

Hala : I prefer jazz.

Heba : (3) _____ ?

Hala : Hakim is my favourite singer.

Heba : Do you want to play music in a band ?

Hala : A band ! (4) _____

Heba : I will help you.

Hala : Really ! (5) _____

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Doctors are important because they care for people. Doctors are people who take care of others and help them get well when they are

sick. Doctors find out what is wrong with people when they are sick. Doctors help sick people get better by giving them the right medicine. They work in hospitals and doctor's offices. They are caring people. To be a doctor, you will have to go to college. You should like working with people and helping out others. You should be kind and helpful. If you are not kind, patients will not love you.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "They" refers to
a. doctors b. patients c. nurses d. colleges
2. If you are not a kind doctor, people will _____ you.
a. love b. like c. admire d. dislike
3. _____ means the same as the underlined word "sick".
a. Tall b. Happy c. Ill d. Thick

a. Answer the following questions:

4. What is the main idea of the passage?
5. What do doctors give to the sick people?
6. What do you think of the doctor's job?

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The _____ of Cairo is more than 10 million. It is crowded.
a. pollution b. schools c. towers d. population
2. Read my _____ to know how my weekend was.
a. diary b. dairy c. name d. photo
3. How _____ do you watch films? - Twice a week.
a. old b. many c. often d. long
4. We saw the stars and planets when we visited the _____.
a. funfair b. platform c. temple d. planetarium
5. We went _____ to buy a new school uniform.
a. shopping b. diving c. sailing d. trekking

6. Hamdy is the _____ player in the team.
a. better b. good c. bad d. best
7. The _____ was full of people watching the final match.
a. cafes b. theatre c. stadium d. planetarium
8. I have lost my mobile. It is a _____ day.
a. funny b. nice c. useful d. terrible
9. Which is _____ the Great Pyramid or the Red Pyramid?
a. taller b. tall c. tallest d. the tallest
10. _____ to do your homework.
a. Remind b. Remember c. Forget d. Don't remember

5. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. How many information do you have? ()
2. Have you get a car? ()
3. The film is the less interesting. ()
4. There didn't any cars in ancient Egypt. ()

E. Writing

6. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A visit to Cairo"



3. Governorates Exams for Al-Azhar students

٣. نماذج امتحانات خاصة لطلاب الأزهر

Al-Azhar Al-Sharif

Qalyubia Zone

A. Language Functions

- 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلتك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (بموضوع السماعات في نهاية الكتاب)

1. _____ can swim fast and it has got eight legs.
a. A shark b. A turtle c. A jellyfish d. An octopus
2. A sea turtle has a hard _____ to protect it.
a. back b. shell c. cover d. leather

- 2 Supply the missing parts in the following mini-dialogues :

1. Teacher : What are lamps made of ?

Student : _____

2. Ali : _____ ?

Ahmed : I think Maths is the most difficult of all.

B. Usage

- 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. People first played this type of music a long time _____.
a. later b. last c. ago d. now
2. We learnt a lot about the earth and the moon at the _____.
a. aquarium b. planetarium c. museum d. stadium
3. I got up at 6 o'clock and _____ breakfast with my family.
a. have b. has c. had d. having
4. I made _____ a cup of tea.
a. myself b. himself c. itself d. yourself
5. You _____ play games in the road.
a. must b. mustn't c. will d. won't
6. Earth is one of eight _____ that go around the sun.
a. planes b. plans c. plants d. planets

C. Reading Comprehension

- 4 Read the following passage , then answer the questions :

Last week I watched a TV programme about Robinson Crusoe Island. The author is Daniel Defoe. He wrote about a sailor who spent four years alone on this island. Defoe wrote this story after hearing about this man. The weather was hot on the island. Today about 800 people live on the island. Life is easier now on the island.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Who was the story Robinson Crusoe written by ?

2. How was life on the island in the past ?

3. Did Defoe meet the sailor ?

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. Crusoe spent _____ years on the island.
a. 3 b. 4 c. 5 d. 6
5. It was a _____ programme.
a. TV b. radio c. magazine d. newspaper

D. Writing

- 5 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on :

"Holiday plans"

موقع التقوى
ALTFuck.com

Al-Azhar Al-Sharif

Sharkia Zone

A. Language Functions

- 1** Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى مكالمة جاكس الزبالة الصديقة لخصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

- The bridge in the text is in
a. England b. India c. China d. Egypt
- The bridge has a floor.
a. plastic b. glass
c. cotton d. concrete

- 2** Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues :

1. Ahmed : What's the best book you like ?

Aly : _____

2. Samia : _____ ?

Mona : My clock is made of metal and plastic.

B. Usage

- 3** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The Cairo _____ is the tallest building in Egypt.
a. City b. Tunnel c. Tower d. Bridge
- We need to buy some more water. This bottle is _____.
a. low b. narrow c. crowded d. empty
- It is usually very _____ in August.
a. cloudy b. fog c. windy d. sunny
- If Dad _____ a new job, we will move to Cairo.
a. will get b. get c. gets d. got
- I'm _____ than my brother.
a. short b. shorter c. the shortest d. long
- I made _____ some salad for my lunch.
a. herself b. myself c. himself d. ourselves

C. Reading Comprehension

- 4** Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Last weekend, I watched a TV programme about "Robinson Crusoe Island". The author of Robinson Crusoe Daniel Defoe, wrote about this island because a real sailor called Alexander Selkirk spent four years alone here. Defoe wrote Robinson Crusoe after hearing about this man. Crusoe spent on the island twenty eight years. Today, about 800 people live on Robinson Crusoe's island. Life is easier now. Soon they are going to build a new school and hospital on the island. Those are things that Crusoe did not have.

- a. Answer the following questions :

- How long did Selkirk spend on the island ?
- How do we know that life on Robinson Crusoe's Island is easy today ?
- What does the underlined word "Those" refer to ?

- b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Alexander Selkirk was a _____.
a. pilot b. teacher c. sailor d. tailor
- Crusoe spent on the island _____ years.
a. 82 b. 28 c. 18 d. 8

D. Writing

- 5** Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on :
"Description of things in your home"

موقع التفوق
ALTFWOK.COM

Al-Azhar Al-Sharif

Alexandria Zone

A. Language Functions

1 Listen and complete the following dialogue :

يستمع إلى حوار، يكمل الكلمات المفقودة

Doctor : What's wrong with you ?

Doaa : I have a headache.

Doctor : When did it start ?

Doaa : Yesterday.

Doctor : Do you take aspirin ?

Doaa : Yes I do.

Doctor : You should take this medicine twice a day.

Doaa : When can I come back ?

Doctor : 4 weeks.

2 Supply the missing parts in the following mini-dialogues :

1. Ahmed : How do you go to school ?

Sam :

2. Heba : ?

Soha : I live in Alexandria.

B. Usage and Writing

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I met my friend, Ahmed 3 days

- a. next b. ago c. last d. fast

2. Cairo streets are always with people.

- a. empty b. crowded c. long d. narrow

3. I saw myself in the

- a. mirror b. pan c. pot d. pen

4. Car windows are made of

- a. glass b. stone c. glasses d. wool

5. The Nile River is river in the world.

- a. long b. longer c. the longest d. longest

C. Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Ahmed is thirteen years old. He was born in Dar El Salam. He goes to a preparatory school. He has got school from Saturday to Thursday. He speaks Arabic and English. He goes to school at seven and comes back home at two. His father is thirty seven. He is a teacher in a big school. His mother is a doctor.

a. Answer the following questions :

- How old is Ahmed ?
- What time does he go to school ?
- How many days does he go to school ?

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. Ahmed's mother works in a

- a. school b. hospital c. shop d. villa

5. Ahmed can speak languages.

- a. one b. two c. three d. four

6. Ahmed's father is a

- a. teacher b. doctor c. student d. vet

D. Writing

5 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences about :

"Your dream job"

الموقع الإلكتروني
AltFwd.com



Al-Azhar Al-Sharif

Menoufia Zone

A. Language Functions

- 3 Listen to the text and choose the correct answer :

استمع إلى النص ثم اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. We have English a week.
2. I watch TV doing the homework.

- 2 Supply the missing parts in the following mini-dialogues :

1. Samia :
Shana : My weekend was great.
2. Hana : What are your socks made of ?
Safa :

B. Usage

- 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. My grandfather likes music. He usually listens to old songs.
a. pop b. jazz c. traditional d. rock
2. I think mountain climbing is sport.
a. the most dangerous b. more dangerous than
c. less dangerous than d. as dangerous as
3. Yesterday was an adventure. We went in the mountains.
a. climbing b. flying
c. shopping d. trekking
4. I think we more robots in our schools in 2050.
a. have b. will have c. had d. has
5. Children play with knives.
a. mustn't b. can c. should d. can't
6. My mother works in a bank. She is a/an
a. architect b. teacher c. accountant d. dentist

C. Reading Comprehension

- 4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Samir was walking beside the river one day. It was early in the morning. Most of people were still asleep. Suddenly he heard a cry for help. He turned round, but he could not see any body. Again he heard someone in the river. He ran towards the water. He saw a small boy holding to a piece of wood and floating on the water, but he could not swim. Samir jumped into the river, swam and saved the boy. The boy thanked Samir for saving him. Samir carried the boy to the police station to return him to his family.

- a. Answer the following questions :

1. What did Samir hear ?
2. Where did Samir take the boy to ?
3. What did Samir see in the river ?

- b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. Samir jumped into the river to
a. save the boy b. talk to the boy
c. listen to the boy d. play with the boy
5. The police will try to
a. float in the water b. find the boy's parents
c. catch the boy d. save Samir

D. Writing

- 5 Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences about :
"Your last weekend"

AltFwdk.com موقع التقوية

A. Language Functions

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. Ali : you meet your friend at school.

Ramy :

Good night

b. How are you?

c. Happy birthday

2. Mona : Is your mobile new?

Sama :

Yes, it is

b. No, it was

c. I can

3. Ola : When do you go to school?

Hend :

On Friday

b. In the morning

c. By bus

B. Vocabulary and structures

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This car is made metal.

a. in

b. from

c. by

d. of

2. The computer is than the laptop.

a. bigger

b. smaller

c. light

d. small

3. How sisters have you got?

a. many

b. long

c. often

d. much

4. The works in the science lab.

a. baker

b. engineer

c. scientist

d. mechanic

5. My friends very clever.

a. am

b. has

c. are

d. is

6. We need to live.

a. oil

b. metal

c. tea

d. water

C. Reading Comprehension

3. Read the sentences under each picture and put (✓) or (X):



1. These are flowers.

()



2. He is eating an orange. ()



3. He is playing football.

()

4. Finish the sentences from the list:

(eat - of - tired - shopping - laptop - football)

1. I like playing in my free time.

2. My father bought a new

3. My mother is going

4. I'm very , so I'll go to bed early.

5. My bag is made leather.

6. We should oranges.

5. Rearrange the words to make meaningful sentences:

1. he - stories - Does - read?

2. is - The Internet - very - important.

3. like - and - I - fruit - eating - vegetables.

A. Language Functions

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. Where did you go last weekend?

- a. I like pop music.
- b. I went to the museum.
- c. I'm swimming.

2. What's your favourite sport?

- a. I like fish.
- b. I like tennis.
- c. I like art.

3. What are books made of?

- a. Paper.
- b. Plastic.
- c. Cotton.

B. Vocabulary and structures

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. _____ is a kind of music.

- a. Rock
- b. Football
- c. Meat

2. How _____ is the Cairo Tower?

- a. fast
- b. tall
- c. heavy

3. I'm going to _____ Aswan.

- a. visited
- b. visit
- c. visiting

4. A/An _____ is a sea animal which has eight legs.

- a. octopus
- b. shark
- c. whale

5. _____ was your weekend? It was great.

- a. When
- b. What
- c. How

6. _____ work on ships and travel to many countries.

- a. Sailors
- b. Pilots
- c. Teachers

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the sentence under each picture and put (✓) or (X):



1. I like playing basketball. ()



2. A T-shirt is made of cotton. ()



3. He is a pilot. ()

4 Finish the sentences with words from the list:

(cave - Did - go - faster - technology - aquarium)

1. Trains are _____ than cars.

2. A/An _____ is a hole in the mountains.

3. Let's _____ to the zoo on Friday.

4. Modern _____ improves our life.

5. _____ you go to the park yesterday?

6. I saw some colourful fish in the _____.

5 Rearrange the words to make meaningful sentences:

1. live - We - on - Earth.

2. you - like - Egypt - Do?

3. in - swam - He - the sea.

Listening (Day 1)

1. In ancient Egypt, there weren't any bedrooms. People slept on roofs. There weren't also any taps. So people got their water from the Nile Valley.
2. Omar likes music. When Omar was 12 he learned the piano. When he was 14, he learned to play the trumpet. Omar likes jazz music.

End of term practice

Woman : Hello. I'd like to buy a new phone.

Assistant : Certainly. Which phone would you like?

Woman : I like this one. It's small enough to go in my bag, too. I hope it's not too expensive!

Assistant : No, it is a good price. Excuse me, could you tell me what job you do?

Woman : Well, I'm a person who takes photographs for a newspaper.

Assistant : Ah, you're a photographer, aren't you?

Woman : That's right!

Listening Tests of Governorate Exam

1 Cairo Governorate

El Basateen Educational Directorate

Lina had a wonderful weekend. She was at the stadium. She watched a football match for her favourite team. Lina's team won the match.

2 Giza Governorate

Zayed Educational Directorate

Yesterday was really terrible. There wasn't a lot to do. We were on holiday in India and the weather was stormy and rainy. The weather is going to be better next week.

3 Alexandria Governorate

Al Gomrok Educational Directorate

Amira goes to Dahab with her family every year. Amira likes to go trekking in the desert. She loves the aquarium. In the evening, she likes to go to the sports centre.

4 Qalyoubia Governorate

Benha Educational Directorate

In the past, the sea was dangerous. They built a lighthouse in Alexandria. There were lots of

rocks in the sea, so the lighthouse was important at that time. It was warning boats.

5 Sharkia Governorate

East Zagazig Educational Directorate

Dad likes sports. He is very good at football. Mum loves swimming. My brother doesn't like the countryside.

6 Menoufia Governorate

Sadat Educational Directorate

Eman is in Dahab. She is with her family. They are going to go trekking in the mountains. Rock climbing is exciting for Eman.

7 Gharbia Governorate

East Tanta Educational Directorate

Mohamed Salah is a great Egyptian footballer. He was born in Gharbia. He started playing football for Mokawloon team. He won the African player of the year in 2019.

8 Dakahlia Governorate

East Mansoura Educational Directorate

Our school went on a trip to the Grand Egyptian Museum last Friday. The GEM welcomed its first visitors in 2019. It is only two

kilometres from the Pyramids of Giza. The most beautiful part of the museum is the entrance.

9 Beheira Governorate

El Rahmanya Educational Directorate

The Grand Egyptian Museum opened in 2019. The GEM is farther from the city centre than the old Museum, but only two kilometres from the Pyramids of Giza. The most beautiful part of the museum is the entrance. The statue of Ramsis II is 12 metres high.

10 Kafr El-Sheikh Governorate

El Hamoul Educational Directorate

I am going to travel with family from Aswan to Luxor. We are going to leave Aswan in December. We are going to arrive in Luxor in January.

11 Damietta Governorate

El-Serre Educational Directorate

Many people enjoy walking across the Tahya Masr Bridge. The bridge has a glass floor. You can see the river under your feet. The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset.

12

Ismailia Governorate

Ismailia Educational Directorate

My birthday was last Monday. On my birthday I went to the museum. I went to the museum with my mum. My brother took us to his favourite restaurant.

13

Port Said Governorate

South Educational Directorate

The woman wants to buy a new bag. It is small and cheap. The assistant asks the woman about her job. The woman is a journalist.

14

Beni Suef Governorate

Beni Suef Educational Directorate

Basel was born in 2007. Basel was born in Cairo. Basel started school in 2012. Basel is talking about the important events in his life.

15

Fayoum Governorate

Fayoum Educational Directorate

Tahya Masr Bridge is the world's widest suspension bridge. It opened in Cairo. It is 540 m long. More than 4,000 people helped to build it. It took 32 months to finish the bridge.

16

Minia Governorate

Minia Educational Directorate

Noha is an English teacher. She teaches primary school students. She helps her students understand their lessons. Miss Noha rewards her students when they do well.

17

Assiut Governorate

Assiut Educational Directorate

My uncle's job is an engineer. He designs engines for cars. My aunt is a nurse. She works in a hospital.

18

Qena Governorate

Qena Educational Directorate

My birthday was last Monday. On my birthday, my father bought me a new mobile. I went to the museum with my mum and sister. My brother took me to his favourite restaurant.

19

Sohag Governorate

Sohag Educational Directorate

Robinson Crusoe was a sailor. Robinson Crusoe's ship sank because there was a storm. Robinson Crusoe swam to a nearby island. Crusoe found no other people on the island.

20

Aswan Governorate

Aswan Educational Directorate

Basant is twelve years old. For her birthday, her friends went to the museum by bus. They saw the statues in the museum. They went to the funfair in the evening.

Listening Texts of Al-Azhar Exams

1

Al-Azhar Al-Sharif

Qalyubia Zone

An octopus can swim fast and it has got eight legs. A sea turtle has a hard shell to protect it.

2

Al-Azhar Al-Sharif

Sharkia Zone

The Tahya Masr Bridge is in Egypt. It has a glass floor.

CamScanner

Listening Texts

3

Al-Azhar Al-Sharif

Alexandria Zone

Doctor: What's wrong with you?

Doaa: I have a headache.

Doctor: When did it start?

Doaa: Yesterday.

Doctor: Do you take aspirin?

Doaa: Yes, I do.

Doctor: You should take this medicine twice a day.

Doaa: When can I come back?

Doctor: Next week.

4

Al-Azhar Al-Sharif

Menoufia Zone

We have English four times a week. I watch TV before doing the homework.

5

Al-Azhar Al-Sharif

Minia Zone

Crusoe walked on the beach yesterday. He saw no one.

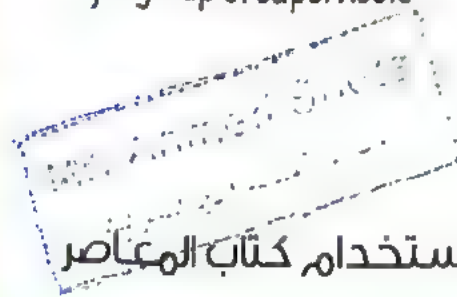




EL-MOASSER

New Hello!

By a group of supervisors



دليلك لاستخدام كتاب المعاصر
لتدريس فعال و مبدع

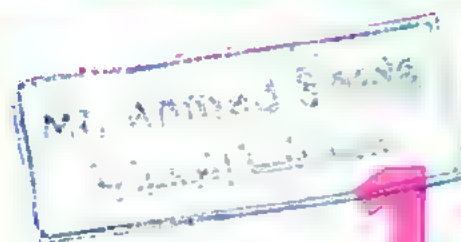
Teacher's

ORGANIZER

Your Guide To Creative and Effective Teaching

المعاصر من
سلسلة كتب المعاصر

اهداء من
سلسلة كتب المعاصر



1st
Prep.
2023

SECOND TERM

SECTION 2

Answers of The Main Book (1st Prep)

إجابات كتاب الشرح المعاصر للصف الأول الإعدادي

Unit (7)

Lessons 1 & 2

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1. a. exhibition | 2. a. funfair |
| 3. c. Museum | 4. b. nervous |
| 5. c. haircut | 6. a. closed |
| 7. c. planetarium | 8. b. diary |
| 9. c. solution | 10. d. canteen |
| 11. d. uniform | 12. b. aquarium |
| 13. d. stadium | 14. c. aged |
| 15. c. went | |

Exercises on (Language)

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|---------------|---------------|
| 1. a. moved | 2. c. feel |
| 3. c. ago | 4. b. Did |
| 5. c. had | 6. c. was |
| 7. b. watched | 8. c. visited |
| 9. b. was | 10. d. see |
| 11. d. bought | |

- Read and correct the underlined words :

- | | |
|----------|-------------|
| 1. sit | (sat) |
| 2. go | (went) |
| 3. did | (was) |
| 4. went | (go) |
| 5. today | (yesterday) |

- | | |
|-----------|-----------|
| 6. did | (do) |
| 7. don't | (wasn't) |
| 8. didn't | (weren't) |
| 9. took | (take) |
| 10. last | (ago) |
| 11. do | (did) |
| 12. see | (saw) |

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|--------------|----------------|
| 1. a. sports | 2. c. salads |
| 3. c. sister | 4. a. swimming |

- Complete the following dialogue :

- Yes. I did.
- I spent it in a sports centre.
- Who did you go with ?
- I enjoyed swimming.
- Is there a swimming pool ?

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|-------------------|---------------|
| 1. b. friendly | 2. c. statues |
| 3. d. funfair | 4. b. stadium |
| 5. c. make | 6. b. canteen |
| 7. d. planetarium | 8. b. took |
| 9. b. swam | 10. d. eat |

- Read and correct the underlined words :

- | | |
|----------|--------|
| 1. hurts | (hurt) |
| 2. is | (was) |
| 3. next | (last) |
| 4. have | (had) |



5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answers.

Lessons 3 & 4

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|--------------------|----------------|
| 1. a. sailor | 2. c. storm |
| 3. b. jungle | 4. d. opinion |
| 5. c. adventure | 6. a. sinks |
| 7. b. terrible | 8. c. voice |
| 9. c. type | 10. c. share |
| 11. c. bad | 12. b. island |
| 13. c. interviewer | 14. a. through |
| 15. b. diary | |

Exercises on (Language)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|---------------|---------------|
| 1. d. does | 2. b. go |
| 3. d. Did you | 4. c. haven't |
| 5. d. Why | 6. a. often |
| 7. a. Is | 8. d. Which |
| 9. a. Has | 10. c. Whose |

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

- | | |
|------------|----------|
| 1. we | (she) |
| 2. Where | (How) |
| 3. likes | (like) |
| 4. am | (am not) |
| 5. haven't | (have) |
| 6. Does | (Do) |
| 7. Why | (How) |
| 8. Who's | (Whose) |

- | | |
|---------|--------|
| 9. many | (much) |
| 10. How | (What) |

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

1. Complete the following dialogue :

1. I like pop music.
2. No, I don't.
3. Do you like listening to songs ?
4. I like to play the piano.
5. Who taught you to play the piano ?

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|-----------------|---------------|
| 1. a. adventure | 2. a. music |
| 3. c. rocks | 4. c. nuts |
| 5. b. write | 6. b. opinion |
| 7. d. musician | 8. c. What |
| 9. b. Who | 10. c. Are |

3. Read and correct the underlined words :

- | | |
|------------|-----------|
| 1. play | (to play) |
| 2. Do | (Can) |
| 3. studied | (study) |
| 4. does | (has) |

4. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answers.

Lessons 5 & 6

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|---------------|-------------|
| 1. a. peppers | 2. b. hotel |
|---------------|-------------|

- | | |
|----------------|-----------------|
| 3. a. thoughts | 4. c. Olive |
| 5. d. theatre | 6. d. woke |
| 7. c. writer | 8. a. kind |
| 9. d. terrible | 10. a. includes |
| 11. b. tired | 12. c. windy |
| 13. c. on | 14. b. working |
| 15. b. have | 16. d. for |

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. a. My father | 2. c. Saturday |
| 3. d. an hour | 4. c. terrible |

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. Yes, I do.
2. What type of music do you like ?
3. Can you play musical instruments ?
4. I play the piano.
5. My father.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|---------------|----------------|
| 1. a. Olive | 2. b. hope |
| 3. b. windy | 4. d. kind |
| 5. c. concert | 6. b. stayed |
| 7. b. remind | 8. a. although |
| 9. b. was | 10. b. took |

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

- | | |
|-------------|-------------|
| 1. is | (was) |
| 2. get | (got) |
| 3. Tomorrow | (Yesterday) |
| 4. go | (went) |

5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answer.

Test on Unit 7

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. watching sports
2. b. science
3. c. 5
4. d. busy

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. Me, too.
2. What kind of music do you prefer ?
3. Who is your favourite singer ?
4. Yes, I do.
5. It's kind of you. / Thank you.

3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. wife
2. a. Stop
3. c. the new wife

b. Answer the following questions :

4. The story of Cinderella.
5. No, because the woman was so wicked and cruel.
6. By the help of a magician woman.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1. c. sinks | 2. a. take |
| 3. a. terrible | 4. b. Traditional |
| 5. b. decisions | 6. b. Museum |
| 7. d. rode | 8. b. watched |
| 9. a. did | 10. b. because |

5. Read and correct the underlined words :

- | | |
|----------|-----------|
| 1. is | (was) |
| 2. go | (went) |
| 3. and | (but) |
| 4. don't | (haven't) |

6. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answer.

February assessment

A. Listening

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|---------------|---------------|
| 1. a. car | 2. c. twelve |
| 3. b. statues | 4. c. funfair |

B. Language Functions

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. I went to Al Azhar Park.
2. Who did you go with ?
3. What did you see there ?
4. Yes, I did.
5. Yes. We had a nice time.

C. Reading Comprehension

3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|---------------|------------|
| 1. a. doctors | 2. b. hate |
| 3. c. worse | |

b. Answer the following questions :

4. I should be good at science.
5. Because they care about people.
6. Doctor's job.

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|-------------------|---------------|
| 1. d. planetarium | 2. d. crowded |
| 3. b. more | 4. b. subject |
| 5. a. shark | 6. c. sailors |
| 7. b. Were | 8. c. richest |
| 9. d. competition | 10. d. of |

5. Read and correct the underlined words :

- | | |
|------------|----------|
| 1. arrived | (arrive) |
| 2. best | (better) |
| 3. less | (least) |
| 4. didn't | (aren't) |

E. Writing

6. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :

Students' own answer.

Unit (8)

lessons 1 & 2

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|----------------|------------------|
| 1. c. Road | 2. b. crowded |
| 3. b. country | 4. a. population |
| 5. d. Bridge | 6. a. empty |
| 7. d. capital | 8. a. ancient |
| 9. a. tourists | 10. a. visitors |
| 11. c. links | 12. b. Depth |
| 13. d. tunnel | 14. c. give |
| 15. b. for | |

Exercises on (Language)**1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1. c. more crowded | 2. c. longer |
| 3. d. higher | 4. c. better |
| 5. c. noisier | 6. a. than |
| 7. b. more useful | 8. d. colder than |
| 9. b. warmer | 10. c. than |
| 11. d. nearer | |

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

- | | |
|------------|---------------------|
| 1. easy | (easier) |
| 2. longest | (longer) |
| 3. tallest | (taller) |
| 4. good | (better) |
| 5. strong | (stronger) |
| 6. nicest | (nicer) |
| 7. most | (more) |
| 8. far | (further / farther) |
| 9. most | (more) |
| 10. then | (than) |

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2**1. Complete the following dialogue :**

1. Yes, of course.
2. How high is the Great Pyramid ?
3. How many people live in Tokyo ?
4. The Nile.
5. Thank you.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|-------------------|--------------|
| 1. c. the highest | 2. b. Tower |
| 3. a. worse | 4. b. taller |

- | | |
|---------------|----------------|
| 5. a. traffic | 6. d. describe |
| 7. b. many | 8. c. tourists |
| 9. b. crowded | 10. c. longer |

3. Read and correct the underlined words :

- | | |
|--------------|------------------|
| 1. empty | (emptier) |
| 2. hot | (hotter) |
| 3. tall | (taller) |
| 4. beautiful | (more beautiful) |

4. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answer.

Lessons 3 & 4**Exercise on (Vocabulary)****• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- | | |
|--------------------|------------------|
| 1. a. achievements | 2. b. climbing |
| 3. c. view | 4. b. suspension |
| 5. d. polite | 6. b. floor |
| 7. c. insect | 8. b. expensive |
| 9. a. wide | 10. b. sunset |
| 11. a. Dangerous | 12. b. Ugly |
| 13. b. across | 14. d. with |
| 15. d. of | |

Exercises on (Language)**1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. a. widest | 2. c. the biggest |
| 3. d. the most difficult | |
| 4. d. the most expensive | |
| 5. c. largest | 6. b. than |
| 7. b. tallest | |
| 8. d. the most boring | |
| 9. d. the most exciting | |
| 10. b. best | |

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

- | | |
|------------|---------------|
| 1. busiest | (the busiest) |
| 2. least | (less) |
| 3. better | (best) |
| 4. more | (most) |
| 5. tall | (the tallest) |
| 6. fast | (faster) |
| 7. shorter | (shortest) |
| 8. most | (the most) |
| 9. further | (furthest) |
| 10. young | (youngest) |

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| 1. c. widest | 2. a. May |
| 3. c. wide | 4. c. Island |

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. d. dangerous | 2. c. give |
| 3. b. agree | 4. b. biggest |
| 5. c. more | 6. c. floor |
| 7. c. to | 8. a. like |
| 9. c. opinion | 10. c. protect |

3. Read and correct the underlined words :

- | | |
|---------|----------|
| 1. more | (most) |
| 2. much | (many) |
| 3. more | (most) |
| 4. good | (better) |

4. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answer.

Lessons 5 & 6

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. c. treasures | 2. d. public |
| 3. b. guidebook | 4. c. display |
| 5. d. welcomed | 6. d. statue |
| 7. b. space | 8. c. fountain |
| 9. c. reviews | 10. c. unknown |
| 11. c. entrance | 12. b. museum |
| 13. b. reason | 14. a. to |
| 15. a. why | |

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|----------------|----------------|
| 1. b. Kings | 2. a. tourists |
| 3. b. quietest | 4. c. later |

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------|
| 1. d. Hieroglyphics | 2. b. objects |
| 3. a. competition | 4. a. guidebook |
| 5. c. motorbike | 6. c. oldest |
| 7. b. valuable | |
| 8. b. most difficult | 9. a. easiest |
| 10. b. the highest | |

3. Read and correct the underlined words :

- | | |
|------------|------------|
| 1. most | (more) |
| 2. fast | (faster) |
| 3. better | (best) |
| 4. quieter | (quietest) |

4. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answer.

Test on Unit 8**1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- | | |
|--------------|------------------|
| 1. c. 1759 | 2. d. 6,000,000 |
| 3. a. London | 4. b. 13 million |

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. I went to Tahya Masr Bridge.
2. It is in Cairo.
3. Is it old ?
4. When did it open ?
5. It's made of glass.

3. Read the following, then answer the questions :**a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- | | |
|------------------|-------------|
| 1. a. the bridge | 2. d. glass |
| 3. b. Warraq | |

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Tahya Masr Bridge.
5. At sunset.
6. Because we have a lot of great projects and achievements.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|--------------------|-----------------|
| 1. d. Bridge | 2. c. crowded |
| 3. d. ugly | 4. b. Quiet |
| 5. c. space | 6. d. treasures |
| 7. c. columns | 8. b. quieter |
| 9. d. the nicest | |
| 10. d. easier than | |

5. Read and correct the underlined words :

- | | |
|------------|---------------|
| 1. high | (higher) |
| 2. long | (the longest) |
| 3. older | (oldest) |
| 4. tallest | (taller) |

6. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answer.

Unit (9)**Lessons 1 & 2****Exercise on (Vocabulary)****• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- | | |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| 1. c. tent | 2. a. windsurfing |
| 3. c. Rock climbing | |
| 4. b. trekking | 5. a. sailing |
| 6. b. diving | 7. b. adventure |
| 8. b. scary | 9. b. plans |
| 10. a. Bedouins | 11. a. guide |
| 12. c. wind | 13. b. went |
| 14. b. try | 15. b. On |

Exercises on (Language)**1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- | | |
|------------------------|----------------|
| 1. c. are going to | 2. b. going |
| 3. c. are | 4. d. go |
| 5. b. is going to | 6. c. going to |
| 7. c. is going to rain | |
| 8. b. are going to go | |
| 9. c. is going to | 10. b. am |

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

- | | |
|--------------|------------|
| 1. sleeping | (sleep) |
| 2. go | (going) |
| 3. yesterday | (tomorrow) |
| 4. has | (is) |
| 5. trying | (to try) |
| 6. bought | (buy) |

- | | |
|-----------|------------|
| 7. visit | (to visit) |
| 8. don't | (am not) |
| 9. Will | (Are) |
| 10. going | (am going) |

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. In Dahab.
2. c. With her family.
3. b. Rock climbing.
4. a. This afternoon.

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. I am going to the desert.
2. Why are you going to the desert ?
3. Do you think trekking is tiring ?
4. I'll take a bag, some foods and drinks.
5. I am going to try diving.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|--------------------------|------------------|
| 1. a. trekking | 2. b. Sailing |
| 3. c. exciting | 4. b. zip lining |
| 5. b. Bedouin | |
| 6. c. windsurfing | |
| 7. b. journey | |
| 8. a. 'm going to travel | |
| 9. d. are not going | |
| 10. b. Are | |

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

- | | |
|-------------|------------|
| 1. last | (next) |
| 2. sleeping | (to sleep) |
| 3. from | (of) |
| 4. go | (going) |

Lessons 3 & 4

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|-----------------|---------------|
| 1. b. railway | 2. a. weather |
| 3. a. article | 4. a. fire |
| 5. b. challenge | 6. d. snow |
| 7. b. mirror | 8. c. wind |
| 9. c. foggy | 10. c. made |
| 11. c. keep | 12. b. sunny |
| 13. c. came | 14. b. put |
| 15. c. sounds | |

Exercises on (Language)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|------------------|------------------|
| 1. c. ourselves | |
| 2. d. themselves | |
| 3. d. myself | 4. c. herself |
| 5. a. yourself | 6. a. himself |
| 7. b. herself | 8. c. yourselves |
| 9. b. themselves | 10. b. herself |
| 11. a. yourself | 12. a. myself |

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

- | | |
|----------------|--------------|
| 1. yourself | (ourselves) |
| 2. on | (by) |
| 3. themselves | (herself) |
| 4. myself | (itself) |
| 5. herself | (yourself) |
| 6. itself | (themselves) |
| 7. himself | (herself) |
| 8. with | (by) |
| 9. himself | (yourself) |
| 10. themselves | (myself) |

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4**1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------|
| 1. a. Yesterday | 2. c. Sunny |
| 3. a. Yes, we did. | |
| 4. c. Dark clouds. | |

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. a. myself | 2. b. yourself |
| 3. b. herself | 4. b. made |
| 5. c. snow | 6. b. wet |
| 7. b. made | 8. c. hurt |
| 9. a. challenge | 10. b. article |

3. Read and correct the underlined words :

- | | |
|---------------|-------------|
| 1. itself | (himself) |
| 2. herself | (yourself) |
| 3. herself | (itself) |
| 4. themselves | (ourselves) |

4. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answer.

Lessons 5 & 6**Exercise on (Vocabulary)****• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- | | |
|-------------------|---------------|
| 1. c. magazines | 2. b. station |
| 3. b. album | 4. a. special |
| 5. b. mistakes | 6. b. visit |
| 7. c. respect | 8. c. sounds |
| 9. b. Dear | 10. a. forms |
| 11. a. advantages | |

12. b. do

13. c. made

14. c. to play

15. c. looking

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6**1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- | | |
|----------------|------------------|
| 1. b. Maher | 2. b. Alexandria |
| 3. c. Tomorrow | 4. a. train |

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. Let's play basketball.
2. Yes, I am. 3. Yes, I do.
4. Where do you practise it ?
5. How often do you practise it ?

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1. d. Emails | 2. a. station |
| 3. d. introduction | 4. a. made |
| 5. a. excited | 6. b. forms |
| 7. c. do | 8. b. go |
| 9. c. How about | 10. d. themselves |

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

- | | |
|-------------|-----------|
| 1. see | (seeing) |
| 2. playing | (to play) |
| 3. in | (at) |
| 4. spending | (spend) |

Test on Unit 9**1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- | | |
|---------------------|----------------|
| 1. b. South Africa | 2. a. tomorrow |
| 3. a. Yes, there's. | |
| 4. b. an adventure | |

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. I'm going to travel.
2. To Paris.

3. Are you going to travel alone ?
4. How long will you stay there ?
5. Thank you.

3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. hope 2. c. grandad
3. d. a, b & c

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Karim's visit to his friend Maher.
5. Maher's new home is by the beach.
6. Yes, I think so as the album has many photos of the family.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. guide 2. b. adventure
3. c. zip 4. c. trekking
5. b. skill 6. a. equipment
7. d. towel
8. d. myself
9. d. 'm going to
10. d. is she going to

5. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. doing (do)
2. go (going)
3. me (myself)
4. flying (fly)

6. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answer.

Unit (10)

Lessons 1 & 2

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. bricks 2. c. ovens
3. b. tap 4. a. stone
5. b. wallet 6. d. paint
7. c. seats 8. a. Leather
9. b. Cushions 10. b. glass
11. b. Wool 12. d. roof
13. c. plastic 14. d. metal
15. b. away

Exercises on (Language)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. is 2. d. wasn't
3. b. weren't 4. b. was
5. a. made 6. c. weren't
7. c. are 8. c. were
9. d. it's 10. a. weren't

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. were (was)
2. make (made)
3. were (weren't)
4. When (What)
5. aren't (weren't)
6. Is (Are)
7. some (any)
8. is (are)

Mr. Ahmed Sheta

معلم لغة إنجليزية

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2**1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- | | |
|-------------|---------------|
| 1. a. metal | 2. c. windows |
| 3. a. seats | 4. a. plastic |

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|---------------|---------------|
| 1. b. Metal | 2. b. wood |
| 3. c. ancient | 4. d. Age |
| 5. a. oven | 6. b. village |
| 7. a. leather | 8. c. were |
| 9. c. any | 10. c. of |

3. Read and correct the underlined words :

- | | |
|---------|-----------|
| 1. by | (of) |
| 2. is | (are) |
| 3. was | (were) |
| 4. were | (weren't) |

4. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answer.

Lessons 3 & 4**Exercise on (Vocabulary)****Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1. b. Solar panels | 2. b. electric |
| 3. b. Driverless | 4. d. accidents |
| 5. a. drone | 6. d. warm |
| 7. c. materials | 8. a. architect |
| 9. c. teachers | 10. c. special |
| 11. c. cool | 12. a. earthquake |
| 13. b. igloo | 14. b. keep |
| 15. d. make | |

Exercises on (Language)**1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- | | |
|-------------|--------------|
| 1. b. use | 2. c. bring |
| 3. c. will | 4. b. get |
| 5. c. be | 6. b. won't |
| 7. d. will | 8. c. will |
| 9. d. have | 10. a. will |
| 11. b. will | 12. d. won't |

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

- | | |
|--------------|-------------|
| 1. being | (be) |
| 2. goes | (go) |
| 3. took | (take) |
| 4. been | (be) |
| 5. having | (have) |
| 6. Last | (Next) |
| 7. call | (will call) |
| 8. Do | (Will) |
| 9. happens | (happen) |
| 10. to build | (build) |

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4**1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- | | |
|---------------------|---------------|
| 1. c. in the future | |
| 2. c. Robots | 3. b. plastic |
| 4. c. cheap | |

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. I am an architect.
2. What does an architect do ?
3. I'm designing a new house.
4. It will be on the roof.
5. Why ?

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|------------------|-------------------|
| 1. b. Yurt | 2. a. electricity |
| 3. b. sun | 4. d. Rockets |
| 5. b. earthquake | 6. c. drone |
| 7. a. chargers | 8. c. will have |
| 9. c. be | 10. b. go |

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

- | | |
|------------|------------|
| 1. would | (will) |
| 2. have | ('ll have) |
| 3. goes | (go) |
| 4. to have | (have) |

5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answer.

Lessons 5 & 6

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|------------------|--------------------|
| 1. b. timeline | 2. d. amazing |
| 3. c. technology | 4. a. explain |
| 5. a. won | 6. c. Compare |
| 7. d. shapes | 8. c. tasks |
| 9. c. country | 10. a. creative |
| 11. a. born | 12. c. Imagination |
| 13. b. Round | 14. b. detail |
| 15. b. moved | |

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|-------------|-------------------|
| 1. b. 2018 | 2. b. the Red Sea |
| 3. a. Cairo | 4. c. ride |

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|---------------------|----------------|
| 1. a. Imagination | 2. a. plan |
| 3. b. decided | 4. a. fun |
| 5. b. climb | 6. b. creative |
| 7. a. in | |
| 8. c. will you have | |
| 9. c. will be | |
| 10. b. look | |

3. Read and correct the underlined words :

- | | |
|--------|--------|
| 1. is | (was) |
| 2. had | (have) |
| 3. on | (in) |
| 4. on | (down) |

4. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answer.

Test on Unit 10

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. Cairo
2. a. El Mokawloon
3. c. 1992
4. a. Basel

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. They are made of leather.
2. When did you buy them ?
3. My mother.
4. Why ?
5. Sure.

3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|------------------|-------------|
| 1. b. at the top | 2. a. round |
| 3. b. shapes | |

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Round houses around the world.
5. Yes, I think so as we use few materials to build them.
6. Heavy snow or rain will fall from the roof.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|--------------|---------------|
| 1. b. panels | 2. a. amazing |
| 3. c. modern | 4. b. painted |
| 5. c. work | 6. d. Valley |
| 7. a. oven | 8. c. will |
| 9. a. any | 10. d. travel |

5. Read and correct the underlined words :

- | | |
|---------|-------|
| 1. used | (use) |
| 2. some | (any) |
| 3. is | (are) |
| 4. been | (be) |

6. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answer.

March assessment**A. Listening****1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- | | |
|----------------|--------------|
| 1. b. Dahab | 2. c. family |
| 3. b. trekking | 4. d. scary |

B. Language Functions**2. Complete the following dialogue :**

1. Yes, I do.
2. Where was he born ?
3. What team does he play for ?

4. Yes, he is.

5. I think he is kind.

C. Reading Comprehension**3. Read the following, then answer the questions :****a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- | | |
|--------------|-------------|
| 1. c. Marwan | 2. d. angry |
| 3. c. clever | |

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Because he woke up late.
5. What happened to Marwan last Sunday ?
6. Because she knew that Marwan is a good student.

D. Vocabulary & Structures**4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

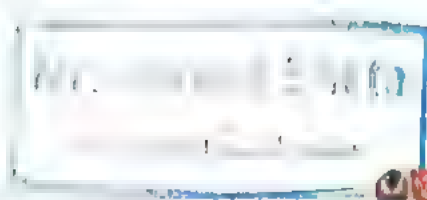
- | | |
|----------------|----------------|
| 1. d. trekking | 2. b. sank |
| 3. d. Are | 4. c. any |
| 5. b. Drones | 6. b. yourself |
| 7. c. make | 8. b. mirror |
| 9. c. ovens | 10. a. respect |

5. Read and correct the underlined words :

- | | |
|------------|--------------|
| 1. been | (be) |
| 2. himself | (themselves) |
| 3. spent | (spend) |
| 4. make | (made) |

E. Writing**6. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :**

Students' own answer.



Unit (11)

Lessons 1 & 2

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1. b. environment | 2. b. whale |
| 3. c. poisonous | 4. d. jellyfish |
| 5. c. turtle | 6. d. tails |
| 7. c. shark | 8. c. rubbish |
| 9. d. teeth | 10. c. sting |
| 11. a. planets | |
| 12. c. throw away | |
| 13. b. octopus | 14. b. from |
| 15. d. in | |

Exercises on (Language)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|-------------|----------------|
| 1. b. go | 2. c. touch |
| 3. c. have | 4. c. watches |
| 5. b. When | 6. b. becomes |
| 7. c. see | 8. c. if |
| 9. a. melts | 10. b. happens |

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

- | | |
|------------|---------|
| 1. died | (die) |
| 2. Where | (When) |
| 3. turned | (turns) |
| 4. falling | (falls) |
| 5. boil | (boils) |
| 6. going | (go) |
| 7. eats | (eat) |
| 8. where | (when) |
| 9. be | (is) |
| 10. made | (make) |

Exercises on (Language)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|---------------|---------------|
| 1. b. mustn't | 2. a. do |
| 3. d. do | 4. a. be |
| 5. d. mustn't | 6. a. put |
| 7. c. should | 8. a. mustn't |
| 9. b. must | 10. a. must |

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

- | | |
|---------------|-----------|
| 1. made | (make) |
| 2. must | (mustn't) |
| 3. came | (come) |
| 4. plays | (play) |
| 5. must | (mustn't) |
| 6. mustn't | (must) |
| 7. cleaned | (clean) |
| 8. mustn't | (must) |
| 9. used | (use) |
| 10. shouldn't | (should) |
| 11. tidies | (tidy) |

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

1. Complete the following dialogue :

- I think it is the shark.
- Where do sharks live ?
- What is a turtle ?
- Because it protects the turtles from danger .
- No, it doesn't.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|---------------------------|---------------|
| 1. b. planet | |
| 2. c. use something again | |
| 3. a. stings | 4. a. octopus |

5. b. environment
6. d. teeth
8. a. should
10. d. rains
7. c. turtles
9. c. save

3. Read and correct the underlined words :

- | | |
|------------|---------|
| 1. felt | (feel) |
| 2. mustn't | (must) |
| 3. shouted | (shout) |
| 4. cleaned | (clean) |

4. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answer.

Lessons 3 & 4

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|---------------------|----------------|
| 1. c. seed | 2. b. hole |
| 3. b. frighten | 4. a. soil |
| 5. c. reserves | 6. d. pay |
| 7. c. knives | 8. d. wash |
| 9. c. phone call | 10. d. healthy |
| 11. c. warm | 12. d. ground |
| 13. c. Fishing line | 14. b. Making |
| 15. c. with | |

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|-------------|--------------|
| 1. c. save | 2. b. planet |
| 3. a. Trees | 4. b. air |

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. I went to a nature reserve.
2. I went by car.

3. What did you see there ?
4. No, I didn't.
5. Why is this place important ?

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|---------------|----------------|
| 1. b. soil | 2. b. reserves |
| 3. a. healthy | 4. c. empty |
| 5. b. hole | 6. c. seed |
| 7. d. Cover | 8. a. listen |
| 9. c. mustn't | 10. a. must |

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

- | | |
|------------|-----------|
| 1. found | (find) |
| 2. sharing | (share) |
| 3. watered | (water) |
| 4. must | (mustn't) |

5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answer.

Lessons 5 & 6

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. b. writer | 2. d. snack |
| 3. a. headphones | 4. c. respect |
| 5. b. folded | 6. d. suggested |
| 7. b. brave | 8. a. role |
| 9. a. weak | 10. d. teach |
| 11. a. summarise | 12. d. skeleton |
| 13. a. fisherman | 14. c. to pull |
| 15. b. up | |

Exercise 1 on lessons 5 & 6

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. fisherman 2. c. catch
3. c. One day
4. a. at the end of

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. I'm reading a story.
2. What is it about ?
3. It tells us about a brave fisherman.
4. Yes, he did.
5. Could he sell the fish at the market ?

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. comments 2. b. Respect
3. d. Brave 4. c. tiny
5. a. weak 6. c. gloves
7. d. real 8. b. must
9. d. mustn't 10. a. clean

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. mustn't (must)
2. doing (to do)
3. study (to study)
4. threw (throw)

5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answer.

Test on Unit 11

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. The shark
2. b. The shark
3. b. A new one grows
4. c. 20,000

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. What was it about ?
2. I learnt about sharks.
3. Are they dangerous ?
4. At the bottom of the sea.
5. You're right.

3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. paper and glass
2. a. reuse
3. d. plastic

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Recycling plastic.
5. Because they are easier to recycle.
6. Because plastic is poisonous when animals eat it.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. skeleton
2. d. Throw away
3. d. planet 4. b. environment
5. a. centre 6. c. character
7. c. nature 8. b. goes
9. c. mustn't 10. b. should I do

5. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. tidies (tidy)
2. must (mustn't)
3. we should (should we)
4. rained (rains)

6. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answer.

Unit (12)**Lessons 1 & 2****Exercise on (Vocabulary)**

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. architect
2. c. businessman 3. a. writer
4. c. designs 5. b. laboratory
6. c. computer programmer
7. d. reefs
8. b. volunteered
9. b. accountant
10. d. photographer
11. d. engine
12. d. scientist
13. b. a marine biologist
14. b. look 15. b. advised

Exercises on (Language)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. who 2. a. speaks
3. d. won't 4. a. who
5. d. aren't you 6. a. doesn't she
7. d. who 8. c. don't
9. c. didn't 10. b. can't you
11. d. aren't they 12. c. aren't

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. don't (didn't)
2. doesn't (don't)
3. don't (won't)
4. whose (who)
5. doesn't (is)

6. did (didn't)
7. is (isn't)
8. does (doesn't)
9. when (who)
10. this (who)

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. marine biologist
2. a. the ocean
3. b. animals
4. c. ocean

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. Fine, thanks.
2. Good idea.
3. What are your favourite subjects ?
4. What do you want to be ?
5. I want to be an engineer.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. test 2. b. scores
3. a. advice 4. c. photographer
5. b. Nurses 6. b. terrible
7. d. results 8. a. who
9. b. doesn't he
10. d. isn't he

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. whose (who)
2. isn't she (aren't they)
3. isn't (wasn't)
4. do (don't)

5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answer.

Lessons 3 & 4

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. b. earn | 2. d. workshop |
| 3. b. Education | 4. d. university |
| 5. c. apartment | 6. b. skills |
| 7. c. pass | 8. c. get |
| 9. b. local | 10. b. Making |
| 11. b. workshop | 12. c. Culture |
| 13. a. Basket | 14. b. catch |
| 15. b. have | |

Exercises on (Language)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| 1. b. see | 2. a. take |
| 3. c. have | 4. d. If |
| 5. a. stays | 6. b. will punish |
| 7. a. get | 8. c. will |
| 9. a. be | 10. b. have |
| 11. b. will you feel | |

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

- | | |
|------------|--------------|
| 1. lived | (live) |
| 2. swam | (swim) |
| 3. buys | (buy) |
| 4. ate | (eat) |
| 5. speak | (will speak) |
| 6. send | (will send) |
| 7. gets | (get) |
| 8. being | (be) |
| 9. would | (will) |
| 10. didn't | (don't) |

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|---------------|-------------|
| 1. c. baskets | 2. a. earn |
| 3. b. Ghana | 4. b. women |

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1. b. got | 2. c. drive |
| 3. b. pass | 4. a. modern |
| 5. b. adult | 6. a. repairing |
| 7. a. jewellery | 8. d. 'll study |
| 9. a. visit | 10. a. don't have |

3. Read and correct the underlined words :

- | | |
|------------|--------|
| 1. Would | (Will) |
| 2. do | (will) |
| 3. 'm | ('ll) |
| 4. will be | (is) |

4. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answer.

Lessons 5 & 6

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. a. technology | 2. b. injury |
| 3. b. illnesses | 4. b. exciting |
| 5. c. disappear | 6. c. engineering |
| 7. c. hopeful | 8. c. introduce |
| 9. d. description | |
| 10. d. personal information | |
| 11. a. countryside | |
| 12. b. cure | 13. c. app |
| 14. b. make | 15. a. In |

Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|--------------|-----------------|
| 1. b. plans | 2. a. guitar |
| 3. c. design | 4. c. Next year |

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| 1. a. Technology | 2. a. practise |
| 3. c. make | 4. a. Electric |
| 5. b. hopeful | 6. b. revise |
| 7. c. countryside | 8. a. does she |
| 9. d. who | 10. b. won't catch |

3. Read and correct the underlined words :

- | | |
|-----------|---------|
| 1. going | (go) |
| 2. drives | (drove) |
| 3. is | (isn't) |
| 4. got | (gets) |

4. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answer.

Test on Unit 12

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | |
|--------------------|
| 1. b. An engineer |
| 2. c. In a factory |
| 3. d. b & c |
| 4. a. Yes, it is. |

2. Complete the following dialogue :

- I'm a marine biologist.
- A marine biologist usually studies the ocean.

- What do you do ?
- To study them.
- Do you like diving ?

3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- c. secondary.
- a. flat
- b. science

b. Answer the following questions :

- The importance of education.
- I think he is still a student.
- A science teacher.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- c. diving
- a. apartment
- c. traditional
- b. earn
- b. pass
- a. cures
- c. accountant
- d. doesn't she
- d. will they
- c. drives

5. Read and correct the underlined words :

- | | |
|----------|-----------|
| 1. 'd | ('ll) |
| 2. got | (gets) |
| 3. isn't | (doesn't) |
| 4. which | (who) |

6. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answer.

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
معلم لغة إنجليزية

Sample Test

Sample Tests
ما نموذج اختبار على المنهج بالكامل.

A. Listening

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In 2080, people will have cars.
a. electric b. small c. driverless d. electronic
2. Driverless cars will be
a. safer b. cleaner c. more dangerous d. faster
3. In 2080, there won't be car accidents.
a. any b. many c. some d. no
4. A drives a driverless car.
a. driver b. computer c. laptop d. mobile

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed is at a hotel to book a room.

Ahmed : Excuse me, can you help me?

Assistant : Yes, (1) of course

Ahmed : I'd (2) like to book a room, please.

Assistant : Do you want a single or (3) double room?

Ahmed : A single room, please. I am alone.

Assistant : How long will you stay?

Ahmed : I am going to stay here for a (4) week

Assistant : OK sir. You have booked the room now.

Ahmed : How (5) much does it cost?

Assistant : A week here costs you 900 pounds.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Ann is from England. She is now in Egypt on holiday. She has spent two days in Aswan. She enjoys seeing the High Dam. She thinks the people of Aswan are so friendly. She still has five more days in her holiday. Her friend, Rahma, invited her to visit her village. Ann is going there tomorrow morning. She has decided to spend two days with her friend and her family. Rahma will show her how Egyptian villagers live and spend their day. Then, she will go to Alexandria for a day. She intends to visit the place where the Lighthouse was one day. She is going to stay the rest of her holiday in Cairo. She wants to visit the Egyptian Museum. Also, she'd like to visit the Pyramids of Giza.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What's the main idea of the passage?

A visit to Egypt.

2. How long is Ann going to spend in Cairo?

One day.

3. What do you think of Rahma ?

I think she is friendly.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The underlined pronoun "her" refers to

- a. Ann b. Rahma c. Rahma's mum d. holiday

5. The phrase "intends to visit" means

- a. is going to visit b. visited
c. didn't visit d. is not going to visit

6. Ann wants to see the at Giza.

- a. High Dam b. Pyramids c. Cairo Tower d. villagers.

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The car can't go into this street. It's very

- a. wide b. narrow c. deep d. low

2. We went in the mountains.
a. diving b. snorkelling c. windsurfing d. trekking
3. I can't see while driving in a morning.
a. hot b. sunny c. foggy d. snowy
4. In the past, people usually slept on the to enjoy the cool weather at night.
a. beds b. roof c. floor d. attics
5. I write what happens to me every day in a
a. photo b. diary c. dairy d. search
6. A has three sides.
a. square b. triangle c. circle d. cube
7. My teacher was angry as I a lot of mistakes in the classroom.
a. gave b. made c. did d. took
8. If you touch a stingray, it you.
a. stung b. 'd sting c. sting d. stings
9. There a lot of traditional houses in the past.
a. is b. are c. were d. was
10. I can see in the mirror.
a. me b. myself c. mine d. I

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Hala didn't pass her exams, does she?
2. You must play with a knife.
3. What does Janna going to do on her weekend?
4. Yesterday, I draw a nice picture.

(did she)
(mustn't)
(is)
(drew)

E. Writing

- 6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :**
"An adventure sport"

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
م. أحمد شيتا

Sample Test

2

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. My birthday was last
 a. Sunday b. Monday c. Saturday d. Tuesday
2. On my birthday, I went to the
 a. museum b. Pyramids c. zoo d. tower
3. I went to the museum with my
 a. mum b. sister
 c. mum and sister d. father
4. In the evening, my brother took us to his favourite
 a. restaurant b. library c. playground d. museum

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Nour asks his friend Ahmed about what he is doing.

Nour : Hi, Ahmed.

Ahmed : Hello, Nour.

Nour : What are you drawing ?

Ahmed : I'm drawing the (1) map of Egypt.

Nour : What (2) colour will you use ?

Ahmed : Blue, (3) white and green.

Nour : (4) Who asked you to draw it ?

Ahmed : My geography teacher.

Nour : Why did he ask you to draw it ?

Ahmed : (5) Because he will teach us a lesson about Egypt tomorrow.

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
معلمة إنجليزية

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

The world's widest suspension bridge (Tahya Masr Bridge) opened in Cairo in May 2019. It is 67.36 metres wide and 540 m long. More than 4,000 people helped to build it. They started building it in 2016. They finally finished it in 32 months later. The bridge crosses the Nile's Warraq Island. More than 100,000 people live on the island. Many people enjoy walking across the bridge. It has a glass floor, so you can see the river under your feet! The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset.

a. Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

Tahya Masr Bridge.

2. What does the bridge cross?

The Niles Alwarraq island.

3. What do you think of Tahya Masr Bridge?

It's a greet bridge.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to

a. Cairo

b. Warraq Island

c. Tahya Masr Bridge

d. The Nile

5. The bridge has a floor.

a. metal

b. glass

c. paper

d. wool

6. The underlined word "started" means

a. began

b. stopped

c. ended

d. finished

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Robinson Crusoe is a / an story by Daniel Defoe.

a. historical

b. scientific

c. adventure

d. geographical

2. He used a to write down what happened to him.

a. dairy

b. diary

c. dialogue

d. diagram

3. We couldn't come on time because the streets were very
 a. quiet b. crowded c. modern d. wide
4. I am of my country. I like it very much.
 a. proud b. worried c. pleased d. frightened
5. When we go camping in the desert, we sleep in a
 a. tin b. tent c. team d. train
6. The lamp is made of
 a. stone b. leather c. glass d. metal
7. When a turtle is in danger, it into a shell.
 a. will go b. went c. go d. goes
8. A / An helps tourists to find new and exciting places.
 a. teacher b. cook c. engineer d. guide
9. A dentist is someone looks after your teeth.
 a. what b. which c. where d. who
10. Cairo is than Assuit.
 a. big b. biggest c. the biggest d. bigger

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. You must washing your hands before eating food. (Wash)
2. Adel didn't bought a car last week. (buy)
3. I'm 12 years old, am not I ? (aren't)
4. There isn't a school here two years ago. (wasn't)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your future house"

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
 معلم لغة إنجليزية

Sample Test

3

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

مع إلى معلمك واختار الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. I am going to travel with my
 a. family b. teachers c. friends d. uncles
2. We are going to travel from to Luxor.
 a. Assuit b. Aswan c. Cairo d. Giza
3. We are going to leave Aswan in
 a. November b. December c. September d. April
4. We are going to in Luxor in January.
 a. leave b. live c. arrive d. stay

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Naglaa suggests doing some activities with her friend Mona.

Naglaa : Are you free today, Mona ?

Mona : Yes, I am.

Naglaa : So what (1) about going swimming ?

Mona : I am sorry. I (2) don't know how to swim.

Naglaa : OK. (3) why don't we go to the park ?

Mona : To the park ? What will we do there ?

Naglaa : We can sit by the fountain, there.

Mona : I (4) don't like this. How about going to the club ?

Naglaa : Great. (5) idea.

Mona : OK. Let's go then.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Last weekend, I watched a TV programme about Robinson Crusoe Island. The author of Robinson Crusoe, Daniel Defoe, wrote about this island because a real sailor called Alexander Selkirk spent four years

alone there. Defoe wrote Robinson Crusoe after hearing about this man. However, Crusoe's adventures were different to Mr Selkirk's. Crusoe spent much longer on the island (28 years) and the weather was much hotter than on the real island. Today, about 800 people live on Robinson Crusoe's Island. Life is easier now, although people still have to look after themselves. The nearest land, Chile, is 24 hours away by boat. Soon they are going to build a new school and a hospital on the island. Those are things that Crusoe did not have!

a. Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.

Robinson Crusoe

2. How do we know that life on Robinson Crusoe Island is hard today?

It's hot and far from land.

3. What does the underlined word "Those" refer to?

Things that Crusoe didn't have

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The nearest land, Chile, is 24 away by boat.

a. days b. weeks c. months d. hours

5. They are going to a school and a hospital on the island.

a. hit down b. break up c. damage d. build

6. The underlined word "spent" means

a. stayed b. went c. travelled d. came back

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A: What do you about my new phone?

B: It's fantastic.

a. agree b. dislike c. think d. disagree

2. We need to buy some more water. This bottle is

a. empty b. low c. noisy d. crowded

3. To means to get money by working.

a. fly b. grow c. feed d. earn

4. I like the coral in the Red Sea.
 a. fish b. plastic c. lines d. reefs
5. The circle has a shape.
 a. square b. triangular c. rectangular d. round
6. Houses and buildings are made of
 a. stone b. leather c. glass d. metal
7. I'll be happy if he me.
 a. help b. will help c. helps d. helped
8. I a fantastic weekend last week.
 a. has b. have c. am having d. had
9. How is the road ? - 12 m wide.
 a. wide b. widest c. wider d. width
10. can do many things for us. Some of them can talk.
 a. Robots b. Rabbits c. Rules d. Rockets

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Don't waste yourself time. (Your)
2. Are you like football ? (Do)
3. It isn't a car, does it ? (is)
4. He is going to travel in bus. (by)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Sea animals"

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
 م. أحمد شتا

Sample Test

4

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. When did you watch the TV programme ?
a. Last weekend b. Next week c. Yesterday d. Tomorrow
2. is the author of Robinson Crusoe.
a. Shakespeare b. Daniel Defoe c. Charles Dickens d. Conan Doyle
3. Alexander Selkirk was a
a. teacher b. doctor c. sailor d. carpenter
4. Alexander Selkirk spent years on the island alone.
a. forty b. fourteen c. four d. three

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Sami is talking to Adel about his visit to Sinai.

Sami : Where are you going ?

Adel : I am going to Sinai.

Sami : (1) Why do you visit Sinai?

Adel : To spend some time there.

Sami : (2) What are you going to do there ?

Adel : I am going to go mountain climbing.

Sami : Oh, no . It's (3) dangerous

Adel : I know, but I'd (4) like to try.

Sami : So, is your bag ready for this ?

Adel : (5) yes, it is .

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

We had a wonderful holiday in Egypt. These are my opinions about three of the most interesting places. The Valley of the Kings in Luxor is one of the most popular places for tourists to visit. We went early

because that is the quietest time. My brother said, "This is fantastic!" I am sure it gets busier later on during the day.

The biggest place we went to was the Karnak Temple. My favourite part was the Hypostyle Hall, a 5,000-square-metre "room" with 134 stone columns. I think it was more crowded than the Valley of the Kings.

In my opinion, the best and quietest place we visited was Habu Temple. It has columns similar to those at Karnak, but because it is less crowded, you can study them for longer.

a. Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

A holiday in Egypt.

2. What are the places mentioned in the passage?

The valley of the kings, Habu Temple and

3. Why do you think people like to visit these places? Karnak Temple

Because it's wonderful places

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "fantastic" means

- a. harmful b. traditional c. wonderful d. expensive

5. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to

- a. the Karnak Temple b. the holiday
c. the stone d. the Hypostyle Hall

6. Many people visit the Valley of the Kings

- a. early in the morning b. late in the evening
c. during the day d. early at night

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Most windows are made of

- a. wool b. glass c. cotton

2. It is important to older people.

- a. recycle b. respect c. design

d. paper

d. imagine

3. A/An is someone who is good at numbers.
 a. architect b. accountant
 c. computer programmer d. sailor
4. Basem is 22. He is a/an
 a. child b. adult c. baby d. old man
5. A/An is a very large sea.
 a. coral reef b. laboratory c. ocean d. result
6. Earth is one of eight that go around the sun.
 a. plants b. stars c. planets d. machines
7. It never in Egypt but it often rains.
 a. snows b. blows c. pours d. drips
8. If we add red and yellow, we orange colour.
 a. gets b. got c. getting d. get
9. This is the dentist looks after people's teeth.
 a. what b. which c. where d. who
10. Cairo is one of cities in Africa.
 a. big b. biggest c. the biggest d. bigger

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. You must to wash your hands before eating food.
 2. Ashraf doesn't buy an ice cream yesterday.
 3. Ayman is a pupil, isn't she ?
 4. Are there any friends in yesterday's party ?

(must)
 (didn't)
 (he)
 (Were)

E. Writing

- 6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :
 "Transport today"

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
 معلم لغة إنجليزية

Sample Test

5

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. We are going to visit the nature reserve
 a. today b. yesterday c. tomorrow d. next week
2. Many things live in the nature reserve.
 a. unimportant b. important
 c. dangerous d. wild
3. Plants, animals and birds live in the
 a. home b. sea
 c. nature reserve d. house
4. We must be of what we do.
 a. careful b. careless c. angry d. sad

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Bassem asks Mazen about his interests.

Bassem : How is your school ?

Mazen : It's a good one.

Bassem : (1) which subject is the easiest one ?

Mazen : I think English is the easiest.

Bassem : I (2) disagree with you. I think maths is the easiest.

Mazen : So what do you (3) think about sports ?

Bassem : (4) I think football is the most popular sport.

Mazen : I (5) agree with you, most people like it.

Bassem : Do you play it ?

Mazen : Of course.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

I don't know which job I want to do when I'm older, but I think that education is very important. I hope that I pass my exams so that I can go to university. I'm going to work hard. If I go to university, I'll study maths. It's my best subject. I don't like flying, so I don't want to travel around the world. I want to get a good job in Egypt. I want to teach maths. If I have enough money, I'll buy an apartment near the Red Sea. I'll get married but, how many children will I have ? I don't know!

a. Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

Education is very important.

2. What do you think about the writer ?

He likes education.

3. What is the writer's favourite job ?

His favourite job is teaching.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. After finishing school, you can go to university.

- a. primary b. preparatory c. secondary d. nursery

5. The underlined word "apartment" means a

- a. flat b. park c. garden d. beach

6. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to

- a. maths b. subject c. university d. work

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I like playing on the big at the funfair.

- a. wall b. whale c. wheel d. hole

2. Terrible means very

- a. good b. relaxed c. bad d. relaxing

3. To earn means to get money by
 a. working b. stealing c. playing d. drinking
4. Assuit is not a very big
 a. country b. city c. town d. island
5. The is the person who shows a place to tourists.
 a. sailor b. engineer c. guide d. farmer
6. It is usually very in August.
 a. sunny b. windy c. foggy d. stormy
7. You can turn the to get water.
 a. top b. tap c. tape d. lap
8. There trains in 1900, but there weren't any TVs.
 a. was b. were c. are d. is
9. I think we more robots in our schools.
 a. had b. have c. will have d. would have
10. was your weekend? – It was great.
 a. How b. What c. When d. Why

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. She doesn't want to travel, didn't she ?
2. Last weekend, we go to the club.
3. I passed the exam so it was difficult.
4. Mona is oldest than Hala.

(does)
 (went)
 (but)
 (older)

E. Writing

- 6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :
 "How to protect our environment"

Mr. Ahmed Sh-
 محمد أحمد ش-

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. Where did Dareen spend her holiday? - In
a. Sydney b. Delhi c. Cairo d. Tokyo
2. Did they climb the bridge?
a. Yes, they did. b. No, they didn't. c. I don't know. d. Sure.
3. Dareen water sports.
a. loves b. doesn't love c. dislikes d. hates
4. Dareen went
a. swimming b. trekking c. sailing d. windsurfing

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Roaa and Ayman are talking about nature.

Roaa : What are you doing?

Ayman : I am (1) reading a book .

Roaa : What is the book (2) about?

Ayman : It is about nature.

Roaa : So , do you like nature?

Ayman : Yes, I do.

Roaa : (3) What must we do to protect animals in danger?

Ayman : We must put them in a nature (4) reserve

Roaa : What is a nature reserve?

Ayman : It is an area of land where we can (5) Protect endangered animals and plants.

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
معلم لغة إنجليزية

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Many traditional houses in the past were round. Today, many modern houses are also round. Why is this? There are lots of reasons!

A round shape means the building is very strong. This is important when there is an earthquake or strong winds. Also, heavy snow or rain will fall from the roof. A round house is also easier to keep warm or cool. It is also quieter inside a round building than a building that is a rectangle or a square. Finally, a round building uses fewer materials, so it is cheaper to make. It also has more space inside. How fantastic!

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the best title for this passage?

A round houses

2. What's your opinion about round houses?

It's Strong, Cool and warm

3. Find a word in the passage which means "not old".

modern

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to

a. roof

b. a round house

c. rain

d. snow

5. It is inside a round house.

a. noisy

b. quiet

c. bad

d. very cold

6. It is important for houses to be strong when there is

a. wind

b. rain

c. an earthquake

d. a, b and c

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We can see a lot of ancient objects in a

a. supermarket

b. hospital

c. gym

d. museum

2. People have different about music.

a. opinions

b. classes

c. rocks

d. mountains

3. Cairo is very amazing with its view from its top.

a. Bridge

b. Tower

c. Tour

d. Tunnel

4. How long is the Cairo-Alexandria desert ?
 a. street b. way c. line d. road
5. It's not polite to tell a girl that she is
 a. harmful b. amazing c. fantastic d. ugly
6. Rock climbing is very I am afraid to do it.
 a. scary b. easy c. interesting d. exciting
7. are used in cooking or heating food.
 a. Fridges b. Washing machines
 c. Ovens d. Turbines
8. If we work hard, Egypt the richest country in the world.
 a. is b. will be c. was d. were
9. What about the Pyramids at Giza?
 a. visits b. visited c. visiting d. to visit
10. Do you and your brother do the washing ?
 a. yourself b. ourselves c. themselves d. yourselves

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. He went shop yesterday.
 2. Sally is the taller girl in the class.
 3. Books are making of paper.
 4. Toka likes pop music, does she?

(shopping)
 (tallest)
 (made)
 (doesn't)

E. Writing

- 6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :**
 "Life in the future"

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
 معلم لغة إنجليزية

Sample Test

7

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

(استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

- What is the important part of African culture? - Making
a. shirts b. gloves c. baskets d. pots
- Making baskets is a way to money.
a. earn b. lose c. waste d. spend
- What is the African country mentioned in the passage?
a. Somalia b. Ghana c. Guinea d. Egypt
- There are a lot of who make and sell baskets in Ghana.
a. boys b. men c. women d. children

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Nour asks Adel some questions about materials.

Nour : Hi Adel. Are you good at science?

Adel : Hi Nour. Yes, I am (1) good

Nour : Do you know about materials?

Adel : Yes, I do.

Nour : (2) what are cars made of?

Adel : Most parts are made of (3) metal

Nour : Good! What are coats made of?

Adel : Coats are made of (4) wool

Nour : (5) where do we get wool?

Adel : We get wool from sheep.

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
معلم لغة إنجليزية

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Sunday 8th May

Yesterday, our family moved to our new house in Alexandria. It took three hours to drive from our old house in Cairo.

Monday 9th May

This morning, mum and I went shopping to buy a new school uniform for me. I hope students are friendly in my new school!

Tuesday 10th May

Today, I went to my new school. I was quite nervous, but I sat next to a boy called Sami and he was friendly. We had lunch together in the school canteen.

Adam

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
معلم لغة إنجليزية

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the main idea in this email ?

Adam's diary.

2. What do you think Adam felt at the end of Tuesday? Why?

He felt happy because his friend was kind.

3. Why did Adam and his mum go shopping?

To buy a new school uniform.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The underlined word "nervous" means very

- a. worried b. happy c. relaxed d. quiet

5. The canteen is the place where we can

- a. practise sports b. read books
c. have meals or drinks d. sleep

6. The underlined pronoun "he" refers to

- a. Adam b. Adam's father c. Sami d. a student

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. What is about your school?

- a. cheap b. special c. fast d. expensive

2. Is your house or modern?

- a. traditional b. colourful c. technological d. big

3. There is a over the river .

- a. bridge b. city c. pyramid d. tunnel

4. We can get water from at home.
a. tapes b. taps c. canals d. clouds
5. My father married in 1994.
a. gave b. made c. got d. passed
6. The is the most dangerous sea animal in the ocean.
a. camel b. shark c. jellyfish d. octopus
7. Walaa saw the of Ramses II out of the museum.
a. statue b. bed c. room d. entrance
8. It is cloudy, it rain.
a. going to b. will c. won't d. is going to
9. Kareem will buy a car for Shimaà , he?
a. don't b. isn't c. won't d. didn't
10. I will get a reward if I first in the final exam.
a. comes b. came c. coming d. come

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. I was sad so my team lost the game. (because)
2. What will you do last weekend? (did)
3. Dalia is the older in our family. (oldest)
4. The cat is cleaning myself. (itself)

E. Writing

- 6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:**
"Your plans for your summer holiday"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Sample Test

8

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. When did you first go to your new school? - Last
 a. Sunday b. Monday c. Tuesday d. Thursday
2. You were quite
 a. nervous b. pleased c. happy d. sad
3. Who did you sit by?
 a. Sami b. Sam c. Samir d. Seif
4. What meal did you have with Sami?
 a. Breakfast b. Dinner c. Lunch d. Snack

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ramy asks Hany about his visit to the zoo.

Ramy : Good morning.

Hany : Good morning .

Ramy : Did you (1) visit the zoo?

Hany : Yes , I did.

Ramy : What did you see there?

Hany : A lot of (2) monkeys

Ramy : Were there any elephants?

Hany : (3) No, there were Did you know that elephants eat (4) a lot of plants ?Ramy : No, I (5) didn't.

Hany : Thanks for your time.

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
 معلم لغة إنجليزية

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

The oldest museum in Cairo opened in 1835. There were more than 160,000 of Egypt's most valuable treasures on display. However, the

museum didn't have space for 100,000 other objects. In 2002, there was a competition to design a bigger and more modern museum. The competition had 1,575 designs from more than 80 different countries. The Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM) welcomed its first visitors in 2019. It is further from the city centre than the old museum, but only two kilometres from the Pyramids at Giza. It has more space for valuable objects. More people can see them and it is able to look after the objects really well.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

The Grand Egyptian museum

2. What do you think of The Grand Egyptian Museum?

It has more space for many objects.

3. How old is the oldest museum?

187 years

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

4. The underlined word "further" is the opposite of

a. nearer b. far c. open d. ancient

5. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to

a. GEM b. Giza
c. the old museum d. the city centre

6. The museum is a place to keep on display.

a. pyramids b. treasures c. visitors d. designs

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I like the of Amr Diab. He sings well.

a. voice b. noise c. silence d. sound

2. There are a lot of in the mountains of Sinai.

a. carpets b. materials c. Islands d. caves

3. "Ancient" is the opposite of "....."

a. expensive b. beautiful c. dangerous d. modern

The Valley of the Kings is one of the most places for tourists to visit in Egypt.

- a. popular b. crowded c. empty d. quickest

A/An can swim fast and has got eight legs.

- a. shark b. jellyfish c. octopus d. coral reef

When I am, I have something to eat.

- a. hot b. tired c. hungry d. thirsty

Cars are made of

- a. cotton b. paper c. metal d. leather

The person lives next door is my neighbour.

- a. who b. which c. what d. where

9. Tomorrow, Mrs Azza her students how to divide numbers.

- a. teaches b. will teach c. taught d. are teaching

10. Hala is a teacher, she?

- a. doesn't b. didn't c. can't d. isn't

Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Did you gave your uncle his jacket?

(give)

2. Adel are going to visit Luxor next week.

(is)

3. Hana and Asmaa washed the carpets herself.

(themselves)

4. You mustn't obey your teachers.

(must)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your favourite job"

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
معلم لغة إنجليزية

Sample Test

9

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. Hoda is a/an teacher.
 a. maths b. French c. English d. science
2. She works at a school.
 a. secondary b. primary c. preparatory d. kindergarten
3. She helps her students their lessons.
 a. understand b. work c. write d. read
4. A : What does Miss Hoda do when her students do well?
 B : She them.
 a. punishes b. visits c. rewards d. hits

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Rashad asks Ziad about his weekend in Alexandria.

Rashad : Good morning.

Ziad : (1) Good morning

Rashad : Where did you (2) spend your weekend?

Ziad : I spent it in Alexandria.

Rashad : How was the weather like there?

Ziad : It was (3) Sunny.

Rashad : Fantastic! What (4) kind of food did you eat there?

Ziad : I ate fish .

Rashad : What else did you do there?

Ziad : I (5) swam in the sea.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

To : Karim

From : Maher

Subject : Future plans

Dear Karim,

I am really excited that you are going to come and stay with us next week. I am looking forward to seeing you again. What time does your train arrive? We can meet at the station. Our new home is by the beach. We can go swimming every day. There are lots of other things to do, too. How about going windsurfing or diving? On Thursday, Grandad is going to visit us. Let's get him a special present. Why don't we take photos of ourselves and our cousins? We can make him a photo album.

See you on Saturday!

Maher

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
معلم لغة إنجليزية

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for this email.

Future Plans

2. When is Grandad going to visit Maher's family?

On Thursday

3. Why do you think they can go swimming every day?

Because Maher's home is by the beach.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The underlined word "him" refers to

a. Karim

b. Maher

c. Grandad

d. Maher's brother

5. Maher suggested going

a. only windsurfing

b. only diving

c. diving and swimming

d. none of them

6. The underlined words "What time" means

a. Where

b. Why

c. When

d. How

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. People can practise a sport in a sports

a. aquarium

b. funfair

c. centre

d. alley

2. A / An is a piece of land in a sea , a river or an ocean.
a. island b. field c. station d. uniform
3. He dug a under his house to leave in time of danger.
a. bridge b. city c. pyramid d. tunnel
4. There is no water in the glass. The glass is
a. narrow b. wide c. empty d. crowded
5. The Great Pyramid is 146 metres
a. wide b. high c. heavy d. long
6. Marwa married in 2011.
a. gave b. made c. got d. passed
7. Bags and shoes are made of
a. cotton b. paper c. metal d. leather
8. Abd el Rahman didn't bowling last week.
a. goes b. went c. go d. going
9. I like jazz, it's exciting.
a. because b. and c. or d. but
10. Reem is than Rana.
a. older b. old c. oldest d. the oldest

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. The street is 4 metres widest. (wide)
2. Menna made the bed himself. (herself)
3. Let's eating some apples. (eat)
4. An architect is someone which designs buildings. (who)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"How to plant a tree"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Sample Test

10

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. My was last Saturday.

- a. weekend b. birthday c. holiday d. wedding

2. Last Saturday, we went to the

- a. citadel b. museum c. pyramids d. park

3. I went there with my

- a. mum b. sister
c. mum and sister d. father

4. We saw some old there.

- a. statues b. birds c. tourists d. buildings

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Huda asks Mona about her first visit to Cairo.

Huda : Is this your first visit to Cairo ?

Mona : Yes, it is. Can you (1) tell me where Qasr El-Nil Bridge is ?

Huda : It's (2) in the city centre.

Mona : Is it near the River Nile ?

Huda : (3) yes, it is.

Mona : Is it only for cars and buses to go across it ?

Huda : No, people can (4) go across it , too.

Mona : (5) what do people enjoy there ?

Huda : People enjoy walking on its pavements.

Mona : Thanks for your help.

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
معلم لغة إنجليزية

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Plastic is everywhere! We use it for many different things. The problem is, plastic stays in the environment for a very long time.

Some of the plastic people find on beaches is about 100 years old! We can recycle some plastic, but most of it goes into the ocean. Plastic is poisonous when animals eat it. Every year, more than 100,000 sea animals and birds die from plastic. Dolphins and sea birds also swim into plastic fishing lines.

We must try to use other materials such as paper and glass, for example, because these are easier to recycle.

When we use a plastic shopping bag, we should try to use it more than once. We mustn't throw away these bags.

It will take a long time to clean all the plastic rubbish from the beaches and the ocean. But we mustn't stop trying to help our planet!

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

Plastic

2. What do you think about plastic ?

We use it for many things but it is

3. Why is plastic dangerous for animals and birds ? dangerous

Because it's poisonous when animals eat.

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined word "these" refers to

a. dolphins

b. paper and glass

c. fishing lines

d. animals

5. The word "recycle" means

a. use again

b. wash

c. stay

d. find out

6. It's better to use paper than

a. glass

b. bags

c. fishing

d. plastic

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. How long is the Cairo - Alexandria desert ?

a. way

b. road

c. street

d. land

2. Don't worry, there's enough to build your house.

a. piece

b. space

c. peace

d. sand

3. My brother likes mountain
 a. diving b. lining c. climbing d. sailing
4. I slept in a when I went camping in the desert.
 a. bedroom b. hostel c. tent d. hotel
5. He fell over as the street was very
 a. paved b. cloudy c. dry d. wet
6. My teacher was angry as I a lot of mistakes.
 a. gave b. made c. did d. took
7. That easy to practise your sport in your free time.
 a. sounds b. comes c. means d. makes
8. He's going to go
 a. sail b. sailed c. to sail d. sailing
9. There any children in the cinema.
 a. are b. aren't c. is d. isn't
10. You want to be an engineer, ?
 a. do you b. are you c. aren't you d. don't you

Read and correct the underlined words :

1. I'll study maths if I am going to the university. (go)
2. You mustn't to cross the road when the traffic light is red. (cross)
3. Did he hurts himself ? (hurt)
4. Salah is the good player in our national football team. (best)

E. Writing

- 6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"A day at school"

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
 معلمة إنجليزية

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. I'm going to Sinai next
 a. holiday b. Saturday c. Monday d. Tuesday
2. I'm going to Sinai with my
 a. friends b. brother c. family d. father
3. looks scary.
 a. Diving b. Climbing c. Zip lining d. Sailing
4. I'm going to zip lining.
 a. help b. try c. visit d. see

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Adam asks Esam about his favourite story.

Adam : What are you reading ?

Esam : I'm reading a (1) story.

Adam : What kind of story is it ?

Esam : It's an (2) adventure story.

Adam : Oh! I know you like adventure stories. What is it (3) about ?

Esam : "Robinson Crusoe".

Adam : Who is Robinson Crusoe ?

Esam : He is a (4) sailor. His ship sank and he swam to an island.

Adam : Were there any (5) person with him on the island ?

Esam : No, he was alone on the island.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Although Karim and Ramzy are twins, they are different in some ways. For example, Karim's favourite hobby is playing football. He plays it with

his friends at school and in a club near their school. He also watches football matches on TV at home after finishing his homework. On the other side, Ramzy is very interested in music. He plays it in a **band** at school. At home, he likes listening to music on the radio or plays the guitar. Their parents help **them** study hard for school and also let them enjoy their hobbies.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Where does Karim play football ?

In a club near his school.

2. Do you think Ramzy is interested in music ? How ?

Yes, Because he plays in a band at school.

3. What is the main idea of this passage ?

Different hobbies.

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. How are Karim and Ramzy different ?

a. In their hobbies.

b. They have different classes.

c. In their schools.

d. With their friends.

5. The underlined pronoun "**them**" refers to

a. schools

b. their parents

c. hobbies

d. the twins

6. A "**band**" is

a. some people who play music together

b. some people who play a sport together

c. some people who have the same sport

d. some people who cook together

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
م. أحمد شتا

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. We went to the to enjoy seeing planets and stars.

a. planetarium

b. sports centre

c. funfair

d. aquarium

2. I write what happens to me every day in a

a. photo

b. diary

c. dairy

d. search

3. There will be a over the river.

a. line

b. road

c. tunnel

d. bridge

4. We must protect our
 a. environment b. smoke c. fire d. dust
5. Tourists usually have a to show them where to go.
 a. passenger b. manager c. traveller d. guide
6. I bought a/an to cook food inside.
 a. top b. spoon c. oven d. kitchen
7. are machines which can do many things for us.
 a. Solar panels b. Turbines c. Robots d. Rabbits
8. What must you before exams?
 a. do b. to do c. doing d. to doing
9. She made a very nice cake, she?
 a. did b. didn't c. does d. don't
10. I like playing football, I don't like playing tennis.
 a. and b. but c. because d. so

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. What is the better time to walk across the bridge?
 2. Are you going trying rock climbing?
 3. My uncle Samy hurt themselves.
 4. This wallet is made by leather.

(best)
 (to try)
 (himself)
 (of)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"What job you want to do"

Mr. Ahmed Sheta

معلم لغة إنجليزية

Sample Test

12

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. Basel was born in
 a. 2007 b. 2012 c. 2000 d. 2016
2. Basel is talking about the important in his life.
 a. accidents b. months c. events d. times
3. Basel was born in
 a. Luxor b. Cairo c. Alexandria d. Aswan
4. Basel school in 2012.
 a. started b. finished c. ended d. built

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Asem asks his friend Nabil about his last weekend.

Asem : Did you enjoy your last weekend ?

Nabil : Yes, I (1) did .

Asem : Where did you spend it ?

Nabil : In a (2) Sport centre.

Asem : (3) who did you go with ?

Nabil : With my friends.

Asem : What did you enjoy doing there ?

Nabil : I enjoyed (4) Swimming and diving.

Asem : Is there a swimming (5) pool ?

Nabil : Yes, there is.

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
معلم لغة إنجليزية

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Next year, I'm going to go trekking across Sinai. It's going to be a big adventure! I'm going to travel nearly 500 kilometres through mountains

from Ras Shetan to Serabit el Khadem. I'm going to sleep in a tent and stay with Bedouin families. I'm going to have a guide to help me find the way and a camel to carry food and water. The journey is going to take me 43 days.

Here's my plan :

3rd March leaves Ras Shetan

14th March arrives at Ein Kidd

30th March arrives at St. Catherine

1st April climbs Mount Catherine

15th April arrives at Serabit el Khadem

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

A big adventure.

2. Do you like trekking ? Why ?

Yes, it's exciting.

3. What do you think about this journey ?

It's a nice journey.

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to

a. Sinai

b. trekking

c. next year

d. 500 km

5. The underlined word "Journey" means a

a. long trip.

b. short trip

c. stay

d. visit

6. The writer is going to sleep in a in Sinai.

a. tent

b. skyscraper

c. flat

d. room

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I like mountain very much although it's difficult.

a. driving

b. climbing

c. diving

d. riding

2. Buses, cars and trains are means of

a. railways

b. stations

c. transport

d. machines

3. I gave a special to my father on his birthday party.

a. present

b. prize

c. value

d. scene

4. The view from the top of the tower is very I like it.
 a. dangerous b. fantastic c. terrible d. tiring
5. The television is made of
 a. glass b. plastic
c. glass and plastic d. wood and plastic
6. The is at the top of a house or a building.
 a. ground b. wall c. roof d. floor
7. cars won't need drivers.
 a. Electric b. Driverless c. Traditional d. Modern
8. If you touch a jellyfish, it you.
 a. sting b. stings c. stung d. would sting
9. It isn't hot today, ?
a. is it b. isn't it c. it isn't d. it is
10. When did they building it ?
a. start b. started c. to start d. starting

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. The children made these toys itself.
 2. Trains are fast than buses.
 3. I'm going visit Sinai.
 4. You must play with the knives.

(themselves)
 (faster)
 (to visit)
 (mustn't)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your favourite sport"

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
 معلم لغة إنجليزية

Sample Test

13

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. Our planet is the
 a. Earth b. Mars c. Jupiter d. Uranus
2. trees keeps our air healthy.
 a. Buying b. Climbing c. Selling d. Planting
3. Throwing rubbish is
 a. safe b. healthy c. dangerous d. good
4. We should help to our planet.
 a. save b. throw c. plant d. draw

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Tamer asks his friend Tarek about his favourite hobby.

Tamer : What's your favourite hobby ?

Tarek : I (1) like playing music.

Tamer : When did you start playing it ?

Tarek : (2) when I was 7 years old.

Tamer : (3) what do you like playing ?

Tarek : I like playing the trumpet.

Tamer : Why do you like it ?

Tarek : Because it is (4) nice.

Tamer : Who (5) taught you to play the trumpet ?

Tarek : My uncle. He is a famous musician.

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
م. أحمد شتا

C. Reading

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

The British Museum in London is the oldest public museum in the world. It opened in 1759 and now has more than 13 million objects.

About six million visitors go there every year. The museum has the largest collection of Egyptian objects outside Egypt. One of its most important objects is the Rosetta Stone. This arrived at the museum in 1802. The writing on the stone is in three different languages. This allowed people to understand ancient Egyptian hieroglyphics for the first time.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the main idea of this passage ?

The British museum.

2. Do you think museums are wonderful ? Why ?

Yes, because it has many important objects.

3. When did the Rosetta Stone arrive at the British Museum ?

In 1802.

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. "Hieroglyphics" is a

- a. statue b. language c. temple d. museum

5. The underlined word "there" refers to

- a. visitors b. Italy
c. Egypt d. the British Museum

6. London is a famous in Europe.

- a. museum b. city c. country d. statue

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. There are trees in a park near my house, but in Al-Azhar Park, the trees are

- a. tall b. taller c. the tallest d. taller than

2. I made this cake

- a. ourselves b. myself c. himself d. herself

3. The pupils won't be late again, ?

- a. won't they b. don't they c. will they d. they will

4. I wrote the most important events in my life in a :
 a. calendar b. timetable c. timeline d. research
5. He put on a hat to himself from the sun.
 a. please b. protect c. find d. hurt
6. A : What's your about the new hotel ?
 B : Wonderful.
 a. hobby b. sight c. opinion d. view
7. are dangerous birds.
 a. Pigeons b. Eagles c. Flies d. Snakes
8. When was the Stone ?
 a. Statue b. Time c. Mountain d. Age
9. We use a to stir sugar and tea.
 a. teaspoon b. wallet c. knife d. bag
10. They wanted to make the walls more beautiful, so they them in bright colours.
 a. built b. moved c. painted d. stayed

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. They bought a new car because they have anyone before. (haven't)
2. You should takes care when walking in the street. (take)
3. She was here yesterday, isn't she ? (wasn't)
4. My brother is old than my friend. (older)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"The Egyptian Museum"

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
 معلم لغة إنجليزية

Sample Test 14

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. Marvin is a famous
 a. musician b. player c. writer d. teacher
2. Marvin songs.
 a. listens to b. sings c. writes d. records
3. He learned to play music when he was
 a. ten b. twelve c. eleven d. seven
4. He plays the in a jazz band.
 a. piano b. guitar c. trumpet d. drums

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Hana and Sama are talking about houses in China.

Hana : Did you travel to any place ?

Sama : Yes, I travelled to (1) China

Hana : What (2) kinds of houses are in China ?

Sama : They are (3) round

Hana : Strange! You mean they are looking like a circle.

Sama : Yes, because there is a strong wind.

Hana : What are they (4) made of ?

Sama : Wood, but strong and cheap.

Hana : I hope I can (5) built one.

Sama : So, get an architect to do it for you.

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
معلم لغة إنجليزية

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

In ancient Egypt, there was a village called Deir el-Medina. The people from that village worked in the Valley of the Kings. There were 68 houses. The walls of the houses were made of bricks and the doors were

made of wood. The people painted their houses white, with red doors. The houses had a kitchen and a living room, but there were not any bedrooms. People usually slept on the roof because it was very hot at night. There was usually an oven for bread in the kitchen, but there were not any taps. People got their water from the Nile Valley, about two kilometres away.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

Ancient Egypt

2. What do you think about life in that village?

It's beautiful.

3. What does the underlined word "There" refer to?

Houses in Deir-el-Medina.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. Taps are used to

a. get water

b. bake bread

c. sleep on

d. buy bread

5. People in Deir el-Medina used to sleep

a. in tents

b. on the roofs

c. in the bedrooms

d. in the kitchens

6. The underlined word "ancient" is the opposite of

a. colourful

b. dangerous

c. modern

d. further

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Many people use bags to put their things in.

a. wood

b. metal

c. glass

d. plastic

2. To build a house, you think of the design and the you will use.

a. rooms

b. roofs

c. materials

d. parts

3. They stood under the building to themselves from the rain.

a. help

b. protect

c. jump

d. walk

4. When they finish their work, they back home before sunset.
a. return b. turn c. wave d. learn
5. He bought a new modern camera to take the best photos. He is a good
a. programmer b. photographer c. designer d. architect
6. Last summer, I went in the Red Sea.
a. diving b. riding c. climbing d. flying
7. **WB** I loved the fish, but I didn't see any whales at the
a. planetarium b. park c. aquarium d. garden
8. A teacher is a person teaches students.
a. when b. where c. who d. whose
9. How your day? - It was nice.
a. were b. was c. be d. being
10. **WB** What the cities be like in the future?
a. have b. had c. are d. will

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

- There weren't some women in the party.
- My uncle is oldest than my father.
- You must write on the wall of the class.
- He reads English books a lot, did he?

(any)
(older)
(mustn't)
(doesn't)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your future job"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
م. أحمد شتا

Sample Test

15

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. Lina talks about her
 a. birthday b. holiday c. weekend d. vocation
2. Lina's team the match.
 a. won b. lost c. got d. arrived
3. Lina watched a match.
 a. football b. basketball c. volleyball d. tennis
4. Lina watched the match
 a. on TV b. at school
 c. at the stadium d. at the park

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Manar asks Samya about her visit to Dalia last Friday.

Manar : Where were you last Friday ?

Samya : At Dalia's house.

Manar : Why did you visit Dalia ?

Samya : It was her (1) birthday

Manar : (2) Who were there ?

Samya : All our (3) Friends.

Manar : How (4) old is she ?

Samya : She's 12.

Manar : Did you give her a present ?

Samya : Yes, I (5) did.

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
معلم لغة إنجليزية

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Dear Grandma,

We're really enjoying ourselves on holiday in South Africa! It's beautiful here and there's a lot to do.

Yesterday was an adventure day. We went trekking in the mountains. It was sunny when we started, but when we got to the top of the mountain, we saw dark clouds. On the way down, the rain started! Then there was a storm. The rocks were wet and Tamer fell over and hurt himself. But it's OK - his leg is better today.

Tomorrow, the weather is going to be better, so we're going to try zip lining! I'm a bit frightened, but I'm excited, too.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What's the main idea of this passage ?

Holiday in South Africa.

2. Why do you think that they are enjoying their holiday in South Africa ?

Because it's beautiful and there are a lot To do.

3. What happened to Tamer ?

He fell over and hurt himself.

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined word "frightened" means

a. afraid

b. strong

c. brave

d. weak

5. The underlined pronoun "We" refers to

a. Tamer

b. the writer

c. the writer and Tamer

d. grandparents

6. There was a storm

a. before it rained

b. after it rained

c. when it was sunny

d. after Tamer fell over

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A/An shows places to tourists.

a. trainer

b. guide

c. driver

d. adventurer

2. We sat by the fire to keep ourselves

a. angry

b. hot

c. warm

d. cold

3. My new jumper is made of

a. wood

b. wool

c. plastic

d. stone

4. **WB** What will the cities be in the future ?
 a. love b. want c. like d. give
5. My best is reading. I like it best.
 a. activity b. study c. hobby d. trip
6. The is everything around us. We must keep it clean.
a. environment b. sea c. planet d. plant
7. Our neighbours are We like them a lot.
 a. worried b. sad c. friendly d. nervous
8. did you feel at the end of the match ?
 a. When b. How c. Why d. Who
9. **SB** People won't all electric cars.
 a. used b. uses c. using d. use
10. **WB** When it is very cold, water into ice.
a. turns b. turning c. turned d. turn

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. My uncle helped his daughter with her homework tomorrow.
2. Aswan is hottest than Cairo.
3. Tomorrow, they will build the house ourselves.
4. You must listened to others' ideas.

Yesterday)
 (better)
themselves)
 (listen)

E. Writing

- 6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :**
"A day you spent with your friends"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

III Important Paragraphs

٣. أهم الفقرات الإنشائية

Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

يكتب الطالب موضوعاً إنشائياً من لمانين كلمة ويعتبر هذا السؤال من الأسئلة التي تحتاج إلى مزيد من التدريب ولذلك نقدم لك موضوعات إنشائية هامة لكل وحدة كما يمكنك مراجعة موضوعات أخرى بإجاباتها النموذجية في نهاية كتاب الشرح.

Unit 7

"A new house"

1 Last month our family moved to a new house in Cairo. The house is big and has a nice garden. I liked it very much. My family planted some trees and flowers in the garden. I went to buy a new school uniform for my new school. People there were nice and kind. I made many new friends in the school. My best friend is called Ahmed. He was friendly. We had lunch together in the school canteen. I was very happy.

"Your last weekend"

2 My last weekend was fantastic. I went to Ahmed's house on Sunday and we played football in the park. It was a lot of fun. We had lunch together. It was delicious. In the afternoon, we went to the sports centre. We played tennis. There was a really big swimming pool. We swam in it. We had a nice time at the sports centre. In the evening, we went shopping. I bought a T-shirt and shoes for my young sister.

"Music"

3 Music is very nice. I like music very much. There are many kinds of music like jazz, pop, rock and traditional. I like jazz music. I play the trumpet in a jazz band. When I was seven, I learned to play the piano. I like it too much. When I was ten, I learned the trumpet. I like the sound of the trumpet. I don't like pop or rock music. They are very loud. I want to be a musician one day. My favourite musician is Marvin Allstar.

4**"Your day"**

Yesterday was a terrible day for me. My baby sister woke me up at 5 a.m. I felt so tired. I went to the kitchen, but there was no milk or bread. I went to buy food, but the shops were all closed. I didn't do my homework because my laptop stopped working. I planned to have a barbecue but there was a lot of wind. In the evening, I went to the stadium to watch a football match. My team lost the match. I was very sad.

Unit 8**5****"The Tahya Masr Bridge"**

Tahya Masr Bridge is the world's widest suspension bridge. It opened in Cairo in May 2019. More than 4,000 people helped to build it. They started building it in 2016 and they finished it in 32 months later. The bridge crosses the Nile's Warraq Island. Many people enjoy walking across the bridge. It has a glass floor, so you can see the river under your feet. The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset.

6**"The Egyptian Museum"**

The Egyptian Museum is the oldest museum in Cairo. It opened in 1835. There were more than 16,000 of Egypt's most valuable treasures on display. However, the museum didn't have space for 100,000 other objects. So we needed a new bigger museum. In 2019, the Grand Egyptian Museum welcomed its first visitors. It is further from the city centre than the old museum. But it is two km from the Pyramids at Giza. One of the most beautiful parts of the museum is the entrance.

7**"A wonderful holiday"**

We had a wonderful holiday in Egypt. We visited the Valley of the Kings in Luxor. It is one of the most popular places for tourists. We saw many of them there. The place is quiet in the early morning but it gets busier later.

during the day. The biggest place there is the Karnak Temple. There's a nice and quiet place called Habu Temple. It has columns similar to those at Karnak, but it is less crowded. I liked it most.

Unit 9

"A future plan for holiday"

8

Next year, I am going to go trekking across Sinai. It's going to be a great adventure. I'm going to go with my friends. We are going to sleep in a tent and stay with Bedouin families. We are going to have a guide to help us find the way and a camel to carry food and water. We are going to climb Mount Catherine. The journey is going to take me around forty five days.

9

"An adventure sport"

Last year, I went to South Africa with my family. It was beautiful there. Our first day was an adventure. We went trekking in the mountains. When we started, it was sunny. But when we reached the top of the mountain, there were dark clouds. After that, the rain began and there was a storm. The rocks were wet and my brother fell down and hurt himself. The following days, the weather was better. I went zip lining. I was a bit frightened, but I was excited.

Unit 10

10

"Deir el-Medina"

Deir el-Medina was a village in ancient Egypt. The people in this village worked in the Valley of the Kings. The doors of their houses were made of wood and the walls were made of bricks. The people painted their houses white and the doors red. The houses had a kitchen and a living room. People slept on the roof because there weren't any bedrooms. It was very hot at night. They got their water from the Nile valley because there weren't any taps.

"Technology in the future"**11**

In the future, we will go to the moon for our holiday instead of the beach. There will be rockets that leave Earth every day. The rockets will be very fast, so the journey will take only around twelve hours. There will be also driverless cars. People will not drive a car. It will be safer. People will read a book or watch TV when the computer in the car drives it. There will be drones to bring food and parcels to the houses.

Unit 11**12****"Sea animals"**

There are a lot of animals that live in the sea. Some sea animals are dangerous like sharks. The shark is one of the most dangerous sea animals in the ocean. A shark uses more than 20,000 teeth in its life. A stingray is a big, flat fish. When it knows a shark is coming, it jumps out of the water. A sea turtle has a hard shell to protect it. Some sea animals are poisonous and sting you when you touch it like the jellyfish.

13**"Plastic"**

Plastic is important ! We use it for many things. We must put the plastic in the trash bin. We mustn't throw plastic on the beaches. Plastic is poisonous when animals eat it. More than 100,000 sea animals and birds die from plastic. Plastic stays in the environment for a very long time. We must use other materials like paper and glass. Paper and glass are easier to recycle. We must do our best to save our planet.

14**"Planting a tree"**

We plant trees to keep our environment clean. Trees make the air healthy. There are many steps to plant a tree. First, wash the plastic pot and dry it. Second, put some small stones at the bottom of the pot. Press your finger to make a hole and put the seed in the hole and cover it with

soil. Finally, put the pot outside in a warm place. Water it every day but don't give it too much water.

15

"Nature reserve"

We have nature reserves to protect our birds, plants and animals. Many animals live here so we must be careful about what we do. We mustn't make a lot of noise. Noise makes animals feel frightened. We mustn't leave the road through the reserve because there are animals and birds that live in the plants next to the road. We mustn't give any food to the animals or birds. We must take all our rubbish with us when we leave.

Unit 12

16

"My dream job"

My uncle has got a very interesting job. He is an engineer. An engineer is a person who designs machines and engines. My uncle designs engines for planes. I like his job so much. I'd like to be an engineer one day. I hope that I pass my exams so that I can go to university. I'm going to work hard to achieve my dream. I want to get a good job and do many projects.

17

"A marine biologist's job"

A marine biologist is a person who studies the ocean, the plants and animals in it. He is good at science and he loves the ocean. The ocean has many animals that are really beautiful and interesting. So the marine biologist does many researches to help protect the plants and animals in the ocean. In his job, every day is different! Some days, he goes diving around coral reefs. On other days, he tests water from the ocean in the laboratory.